KHAM.

ules Committed to Memory.

ce- | RULE 25.—The verbs which follow, *bid, dare*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

IN

FAMILIAR LECTURES:

EMBRACING A

NEW SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING, A NEW SYSTEM OF PUNCTUATION, EXERCISES IN FALSE SYNTAX, AND A SYSTEM OF PHILOSOPHICAL GRAMMAR;

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

A COMPENDIUM,

AN APPENDIX,

AND A KEY TO THE EXERCISES;

DESIGNED FOR

The use of Schools and Private Learners.

BY SAMUEL KIRKHAM.

Fourth Canadian, from the Sixtieth American Edition;
Enlarged and Improved.

TORONTO:
BREWER, McPHAIL & CO., 46, KING-STREET EAST.
1855.

Acc. No. 36732

A COMPENDIUM OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Designed not to be Studied, but to be spread before the Learner in Parsing, previous to

ETYMOLOGY.

NOUNS.

A NOUN is the name of any person, place, or thing.

A *common noun* is the name of a sort or species of things.

A *proper noun* is the name of an individual.

A noun signifying many, is called a *collective noun*, or *noun of multitude*.

The *masculine gender* denotes the male sex.

The *feminine gender* denotes the female sex.

The *neuter gender* denotes things which have no sex.

The *first person* denotes the speaker.

The *second person* denotes the person or thing which is spoken to.

The *third person* denotes the person or thing which is spoken of.

The *singular number* implies but one.

The *plural number* implies more than one.

The *nominative case* denotes the *actor* or *subject* of the verb.

The *possessive case* denotes the possessor of something.

The *objective case* expresses the object of an action or of a relation.

VERBS.

A VERB is a word which signifies to BE, to DO, or to SUFFER.

An *active verb* expresses action or energy.

An active verb is *transitive* when the action passes over from the subject or nominative, to an object.

An active verb is *intransitive* when the action does not terminate on an object.

A *passive verb* denotes action received or endured by the person or thing which is its nominative.

A *neuter verb* expresses neither action nor passion, but being, or a state of being.

Verbs are called *regular* when they form their imperfect tense of the indicative mood, and their perfect participle, by adding to the present tense *ed*, or *d* only when the verb ends in *e*.

Verbs are *irregular* when their imperfect tense and perfect participle do not end in *ed*.

The *indicative mood* simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question.

The *subjunctive mood* expresses action, passion, or being, in a doubtful or conditional manner

The *imperative mood* is used for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting.

The *potential mood* implies possibility, liberty, or necessity; power, will, or obligation.

The *infinitive mood* expresses action, passion, or being, in an unlimited manner, having no nominative; consequently, neither person nor number.

The *present tense* denotes an action or event in present time.

The *imperfect tense* denotes a past action or event, however distant.

The *perfect tense* denotes past time, and also conveys an allusion to the present.

The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action or event that transpired before some other past time specified.

The *first future tense* denotes a future action or event.

The *second future tense* represents a future action that will be fully accomplished, at or before the time of another future action or event.

ARTICLES.

An ARTICLE is a word prefixed to nouns, to limit their signification.

The *indefinite article* limits the noun to one of a kind, but to no particular one.

The *definite article* generally limits the noun to a particular object, or collection of objects.

ADJECTIVES.

An ADJECTIVE is a word added to a noun, to express its quality or kind.

The *positive degree* expresses the quality of an object without any increase or diminution.

The *comparative degree* increases or lessens the positive in signification.

The *superlative degree* increases or lessens the positive to the highest or lowest degree.

Words used in counting are called *numeral adjectives* of the *cardinal* kind.

Words used in numbering are called *numeral adjectives* of the *ordinal* kind.

PARTICIPLES.

A PARTICIPLE is a word derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of a verb, and also of an adjective.

The *present participle* denotes action or being continued, but not perfected

The *perfect participle* denotes action or being perfected or finished.

The *compound participle* implies action or being completed before the time referred to.

ADVERBS.

An ADVERB is a word used to modify the sense of a verb, a participle, an adjective, or another adverb.

PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a word which serves to connect words, and show the relation between them.

PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun, and generally to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS are those which denote the *persons* of the nouns for which they stand.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS are a kind of adjectives which point out nouns by some distinct specification.

The *distributive adjective pronouns* are those which denote the persons or things that make up a number, each taken separately and singly.

The *demonstrative* are those which precisely point out the subject to which they relate.

The *indefinite* are those which point out their subject in an indefinite or general manner.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS are such as relate, in general, to some word or phrase going before, which is called the antecedent.

CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences, joining two or more simple sentences into one compound sentence; it sometimes connects only words.

A *copulative conjunction* serves to connect and continue a sentence, by joining on a member which expresses an addition, a supposition, or a cause.

A *conjunction disjunctive* serves to connect and continue a sentence, by joining on a member which expresses opposition of meaning.

INTERJECTIONS.

An INTERJECTION is a word used to express some passion or emotion of the speaker.

RULES OF SYNTAX

RULE 1.—The article *a* or *an* agrees with its noun in the singular number only.

RULE 2.—The definite article *the* belongs to nouns in the *singular* or *plural* number.

RULE 3.—The nominative case governs the verb.

RULE 4.—The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.

NOTE 1.—Every verb, when it is not in the infinitive mood, must have a nominative expressed or implied.

2.—When a verb comes between two nouns, either of which may be considered as the subject of the action, it must agree with that which is the more nearly its subject.

RULE 5.—When an address is made, the name or pronoun addressed is put in the nominative case *independent*.

NOTE 1.—A noun is independent when it has no verb to agree with it.

2.—Interjections require the objective case of a pronoun of the *first* person after them, but the nominative noun or pronoun of the *second* or *third person*.

RULE 6.—A noun or pronoun placed before a participle, and being independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case *absolute*.

NOTE.—Every nominative case, except the case absolute and independent, should belong to some verb expressed or understood.

RULE 7.—Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, signifying the same thing, are put in apposition, in the same case.

RULE 8.—Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, in the singular number, connected by copulative conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns and pronouns, agreeing with them in the plural.

NOTE.—When *each* or *every* relates to two or more nominatives in the singular, although connected by copulative, the verb must agree with each of them in the singular.

RULE 9.—Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, in the singular number, connected by disjunctive conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns and pronouns agreeing with them in the singular.

NOTE 1.—When singular pronouns, or a noun and a noun, of different persons, are disjunctively connected, the verb must agree in person with that which is nearest to it.

2.—When a disjunctive occurs between a singular noun or pronoun and a plural one, the verb must agree with the plural noun or pronoun, which should generally be placed next to the verb.

RULE 10.—A collective noun, or noun of multitude, conveying *unity* of idea, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it in the *singular*.

RULE 11.—A noun of multitude conveying *plurality* of idea, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it in the *plural*.

RULE 12.—A noun or pronoun in the possessive case is governed by the noun it possesses.

NOTE 4.—Participles frequently govern nouns as nouns in the possessive case.

RULE 13.—Personal pronouns must agree with the nouns for which they stand in *gender*, *person*, and *number*.

NOTE.—*You*, though frequently employed to represent a singular noun, is always *plural in form*; therefore a verb connected with it should be plural.

RULE 14.—Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in *gender*, *person*, and *number*.

SH GRAMMAR, BY SAMUEL KIRKHAM.

in Parsing, previous to his having the Definitions and Rules Committed to Memory.

INTERJECTIONS.

NTERJECTION is a word used to express ssion or emotion of the speaker.

LES OF SYNTAX.

1.—Th article *a* or *an* agrees with nouns ngular number only.

2.—The definite article *the* belongs to the *singular* or *plural* number.

3.—The nominative case governs the

4.—The verb must agree with its nomi- number and person.

—Every verb, when it is not in the infinitive st have a nominative expressed or implied.

hen a verb comes between two nouns, either of ay be considered as the subject of the affirma- ust agree with that which is the more naturally t.

5.—When an address is made, the noun oun addressed is put in the nominative *dependent*.

.—A noun is independent when it has no verb with it.

erjections require the objective case of a pronoun *rst* person after them, but the nominative of a pronoun of the *second* or *third person*.

6.—A noun or pronoun placed before a e, and being independent of the rest of ence, is in the nominative case *absolute*.

—Every nominative case, except the case abso- independent, should belong to some verb ex- r understood.

7.—Two or more nouns, or nouns and s, signifying the same thing, are put, by on, in the same case.

8.—Two or more nouns, or nouns and s, in the singular number, connected by ve conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns, nouns, agreeing with them in the plural.

When *each* or *every* relates to two or more ves in the singular, although connected by a e, the verb must agree with each of them in the

9.—Two or more nouns, or nouns and s, in the singular number, connected by ve conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns, nouns agreeing with them in the singular.

—When singular pronouns, or a noun and pro- different persons, are disjunctively connected, must agree in person with that which is placed it.

hen a disjunctive occurs between a singular noun n and a plural one, the verb must agree with the un or pronoun, which should generally be placed he verb.

10.—A collective noun, or noun of mul- onveying *unity* of idea, may have a verb un agreeing with it in the *singular*.

11.—A noun of multitude conveying y of idea, may have a verb or pronoun with it in the *plural*.

12.—A noun or pronoun in the possessive governed by the noun it possesses.

.—Participles frequently govern nouns and pro- the possessive case.

13.—Personal pronouns must agree with ns for which they stand in *gender* and

—*You*, though frequently employed to represent r noun, is always *plural in form*; therefore the nected with it should be plural.

14.—Relative pronouns agree with their dents in *gender*, *person*, and *number*.

NOTE.—When the relative is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, the relative and the verb must agree in person with that antecedent which the sense requires.

RULE 15.—The relative is the nominative case to the verb, when no nominative comes between it and the verb.

RULE 16.—When a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the following verb, or by some other word in its own member of the sentence.

NOTE 1.—*Who*, *which*, *what*, the relative *that*, and their compounds, *whomever*, *whomsoever*, &c., though in the objective case, are always placed before the verb

2.—Every relative must have an antecedent to which it relates, either expressed or implied.

RULE 17.—When the relative pronoun is of the interrogative kind, it refers to the word or phrase containing the answer to the question for its *subsequent*, which subsequent must agree in case with the interrogative.

RULE 18.—Adjectives belong to, and qualify nouns, expressed or understood.

NOTE 1.—Adjectives frequently belong to pronouns.

2.—Numeral adjectives belong to nouns, which nouns must agree in number with their adjectives, when of the *cardinal* kind.

3.—Adjectives sometimes belong to a verb in the infinitive mood, or to a part of a sentence.

4.—Adjectives are often used to modify the sense of other adjectives, or the action of verbs, and to express the quality of things in connexion with the action by which that quality is produced.

5.—When an adjective is preceded by a preposition, and the noun is understood, the two words may be considered an adverbial phrase.

RULE 19.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns expressed or understood.

NOTE 1.—The demonstrative adjective pronouns must agree in number with their nouns.

2.—The pronominal adjectives, *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, *another*, and *one*, agree with nouns in the singular number only.

RULE 20.—Active-transitive verbs govern the objective case.

RULE 21.—The verb *to be* may have the same case after it as before it.

NOTE.—When nouns or pronouns next preceding and following the verb *to be* signify *the same thing*, they are *in apposition*, and therefore, in the *same case*.

RULE 22.—Active-intransitive and passive verbs, the verb *to become*, and other neuter verbs, have the same case after them as before them, when both words refer to and signify the same thing.

NOTE 1.—Active-intransitive verbs sometimes assume a transitive form, and govern the objective case.

2.—According to a usage too common in colloquial style, an agent not literally the correct one, is employed as the nominative to a passive verb, which causes the verb to be followed by an *objective* case without the possibility of supplying before it a preposition.

RULE 23.—A verb in the infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, participle, or pronoun.

RULE EXTRA.—A verb in the infinitive mood, refers to some noun or pronoun, as its subject or actor.

NOTE 1.—The infinitive mood absolute stands independent of the rest of the sentence.

2.—The infinitive mood is sometimes governed by conjunctions or adverbs.

RULE 24.—The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence, is frequently put as the nominative case to a verb, or the object of an active-transitive verb.

NOTE.—*To*, the sign of the infinitive mood, is sometimes properly omitted.

RULE 25.—The verbs which follow, *bid*, *dare need*, *make*, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, *help*, *let*, and their participles, are in the infinitive mood without the sign *to* prefixed.

RULE 26.—Participles have the same government as the verbs have from which they are derived.

NOTE.—The present participle with the definite article *the* before it, becomes a noun, and must have the preposition *of* after it. *The* and *of* must both be used or both be omitted.

RULE 27.—The present participle refers to some noun or pronoun, denoting the subject or actor.

RULE 28.—The perfect participle belongs, like an adjective, to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood.

NOTE 1.—Participles of neuter verbs, have the same case after them as before them.

2.—A participle with its adjuncts, may sometimes be considered as a substantive or participial phrase, which phrase may be the subject of a verb, or the object of a verb or preposition.

3.—As the perfect participle and the imperfect tense of irregular verbs, are sometimes different in their form, care must be taken that they be not indiscriminately used.

RULE 29.—Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

NOTE 1.—Adverbs are generally set before adjectives or adverbs, after verbs, or between the auxiliary and the verb.

2.—When the qualifying word which follows a verb, expresses *quality*, it must be an adjective, but when it expresses *manner*, an adverb should be used. If the verb *to be* can be substituted for the one employed, an adjective should follow, and not an adverb.

RULE 30.—Two negatives destroy one another, and are generally equivalent to an affirmative.

RULE 31.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

RULE 32.—*Home* and nouns signifying *distance*, time *when*, *how long*, &c., are generally governed by a preposition *understood*.

NOTE 1.—The prepositions *to* and *for* are often understood, chiefly before the pronouns.

2.—*To* or *unto* is understood after *like* and *unlike*.

3.—Nouns signifying extension, duration, quantity, quality, or value, are used without a governing word.

RULE 33.—Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case.

RULE 34.—Conjunctions generally connect verbs of like moods and tenses.

NOTE 1.—When different moods and tenses are connected by conjunctions, the nominative must be repeated.

2.—Conjunctions implying contingency or doubt, require the subjunctive mood after them.

3.—The conjunctions, *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *whether*, and *lest*, generally require the subjunctive mood after them.

4.—Conjunctions of a positive and absolute nature, require the indicative mood.

RULE 35.—A noun or pronoun following the conjunction *than*, *as*, or *but*, is nominative to a verb, or governed by a verb or preposition, expressed or understood.

NOTE 1.—The conjunction *as*, when it is connected with the pronoun such, many, or same, is sometimes called a *relative pronoun*.

2.—An ellipsis, or omission of some words, is frequently admitted, which must be supplied in the mind in order to parse grammatically.

3.—When the omission of words would obscure the sense, or weaken its force, they must be expressed.

4.—In the case of prepositions, and words that relate to each other, we should pay particular regard to the meaning of the words or sentences which they connect; all the parts of a sentence should correspond to each other, and a regular and clear construction throughout should be carefully preserved.

R
PE
131
K5
1855

THE
tured
have
son t
that
durin
extra
which
cause
the im
tionab

It i
impro
accura
advan
to dev
from t
fect h
hopes
perso
ward
and re
Not th
viewe
confid
ling t
he is
tages
may a
sent t

Th
dition
more

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE ELEVENTH EDITION.

THE Author is free to acknowledge, that since this Treatise first ventured on the wave of public opinion, the gales of patronage which have wafted it along have been far more favorable than he had reason to anticipate. Had any one, on its first appearance, predicted that the demand for it would call forth *twenty-two thousand* copies during the past year the author would have considered the prediction extravagant and chimerical. In gratitude, therefore, to that public which has smiled so propitiously on his humble efforts to advance the cause of learning, he has endeavoured, by unremitting attention to the improvement of his work, to render it as useful and as unexceptionable as his time and talents will permit.

It is believed that the *tenth* and *eleventh* editions have been greatly improved; but the author is apprehensive that his work is not yet as accurate and as much simplified as it may be. If, however, the disadvantages of lingering under a broken constitution, and of being able to devote to this subject only a small portion of his time, snatched from the active pursuits of a business life (*active* as far as his imperfect health permits him to be), are any apology for its defects, he hopes that the candid will set down the apology to his credit. This personal allusion is hazared with the additional hope that it will ward off some of the arrows of criticism which may be aimed at him, and render less pointed and poisonous those that may fall upon him. Not that he would beg a truce with the gentlemen critics and reviewers: any compromise with them would betray a want of self-confidence and moral courage which he would by no means be willing to avow. It would, moreover, be prejudicial to his interest; for he is determined, if his life be preserved, to avail himself of the advantages of any judicious and candid criticisms on his production that may appear, and, two or three years hence, *revise* his work, and present to the public another and better edition.

The improvements in the *tenth* edition consisted mainly in the addition of many important principles; in rendering the illustrations more critical, extensive, accurate, and lucid; in connecting more

closely with the genius and philosophy of our language the general principles adopted; and in adding a brief view of philosophical grammar, interspersed in notes. The introduction into the ELEVENTH EDITION of many verbal criticisms, of additional corrections in orthography and ortheopy, of the leading principles of rhetoric, and of general additions and improvements in various parts of the work, render *this edition*, it is believed, *far preferable* to any of the former editions of the work.

Perhaps some will regard the philosophical notes as a useless exhibition of pedantry. If so, the author's only apology is, that some investigations of this nature seemed to be called for by a portion of the community, whose minds, of late, appear to be under the influence of a kind of *philosophical mania;* and to such these notes are respectfully submitted, for just what *they* may deem their real value. The author's own opinion on this point is, that they proffer no *material* advantages to common learners; but that they may profitably engage the attention of the curious, and perhaps impart a degree of interest to the literary connoisseur.

New York, 22nd August, 1829.

PREFACE.

There appears to be something assuming in the act of writing, and thrusting into public notice a new work on a subject which has already employed many able pens; for who would presume to do this, unless he believed his production to be, in some respects, superior to every one of the kind which had preceded it? Hence, in presenting to the public this system of English Grammar, the author is aware that an apology will be looked for, and that the arguments on which that apology is grounded must inevitably undergo a rigid scrutiny. Apperhensive, however, that no explanatory effort, on his part, would shield him from the imputation of arrogance by such as are blinded by self-interest, or by those who are wedded to the doctrines and opinions of his predecessors, with *them* he will not attempt a compromise, being, in a great measure, indifferent either to their praise or their censure. But with the candid, he is willing to negotiate an amicable treaty, knowing that they are always ready to enter into it on honourable terms. In this negotiation he asks nothing more than merely to rest the merits of his work on its practical utility, believing that, if it prove uncommonly successful in facilitating the progress of youth in the march of mental improvement, *that* will be its best apology.

When we bring into consideration the numerous productions of those learned philologists who have labonred so long, and, as many suppose so successfully, in establishing the principles of our language; and, more especially, when we view the labours of some of our modern compilers, who have displayed so much ingenuity and acuteness in attempting to arrange those principles in such a manner as to form a correct and an easy medium of mental conference; it does, indeed, appear a little like presumption for a young man to enter upon a subject which has so frequently engaged the attention and talents of men distinguished for their erudition. The author ventures forward, however, under the conviction, that most of his predecessors are very deficient, at least in *manner*, if not in *matter;* and this conviction, he believes, will be corroborated by a majority of the best judges in community. It is admitted, that many valuable improvements have been made by some of our late writers, who have endeavoured to simplify and render this subject intelligible to the young learner, but they have all over-looked what the author considers a very important object, namely, *a systematic order of parsing;* and nearly all have neglected to *develope and explain* the principles in such a manner as to enable the learner, without great difficulty, to comprehend their nature and use.

By some this system will, no doubt, be discarded on account of its *simplicity;* whilst to others its simplicity will prove its principal recommendation. Its design is an humble one. It proffers no great advantages to the recondite grammarian; it professes not to instruct the literary connoisseur; it presents no attractive graces of style to charm, no daring flights to astonish, no deep researches to gratify him; but, in the humblest simplicity of diction, it attempts to accelerate the march of the juvenile mind in its advances in the path of science, by dispersing those clouds that so often bewilder it, and removing those obstacles that generally retard its progress. In this way it endeavours to render interesting and

delightful a study which has hitherto been considered tedious, dry, and irksome. Its leading object is to adopt a correct and an easy method, in which pleasure is blended with the labour of the learner, and which is calculated to excite in him a spirit of inquiry, that shall call forth into vigorous and useful exercise every latent energy of his mind; and thus enable him soon to become thoroughly acquainted with the nature of the principles, and with their practical utility and application.

Content to be useful, instead of being brilliant, the writer of these pages has endeavoured to shun the path of those whose aim appears to have been to dazzle, rather than to instruct. As he has aimed not so much at originality as utility, he has adopted the thoughts of his predecessors whose labours have become public stock, whenever he could not, in his opinion, furnish better and brighter of his own. Aware that there is, in the public mind, a strong predilection for the doctrines contained in Mr. Murray's grammar, he has thought proper, not merely from motives of policy, but from choice, to select his *principles* chiefly from that work; and, moreover, to adopt, as far as consistent with his own views, the language of that eminent philologist. In no instance has he varied from him, unless he conceived that, in so doing, some practical advantage would be gained. He hopes, therefore, to escape the censure so frequently and so justly awarded to those unfortunate innovators who have not scrupled to alter, mutilate, and torture the text of that able writer, merely to gratify an itching propensity to figure in the world as authors, and gain an ephemeral popularity, by arrogating to themselves the credit due to another.

The author is not disposed, however, to disclaim all pretensions to originality; for, although his principles are chiefly selected, (and who would presume to make new ones?) the manner of arranging, illustrating, and applying them, is principally his own. Let no one, therefore, if he happen to find in other works, ideas and illustrations similar to *some* contained in the following lectures, too hastily accuse him of plagiarism. It is well known that similar investigations and pursuits often elicit corresponding ideas in different minds; and hence it is not uncommon for the same thought to be strictly *original* with many writers. The author is not here attempting to manufacture a garment to shield him from rebuke, should he unjustly claim the property of another; but he wishes it to be understood, that a long course of teaching and investigation, has often produced in his mind ideas and arguments on the subject of grammar, exactly or nearly corresponding with those which he afterwards found had, under similar circumstances, been produced in the minds of others. He hopes, therefore, to be pardoned by the critic, even though he should not be willing to reject a good idea *of his own*, merely because some one else has, at some time or other, been blessed with the same thought.

As the plan of this treatise is far more comprehensive than those of ordinary grammars, the writer could not, without making his work unreasonably voluminous, treat some topics as extensively as was desirable. Its design is to embrace, not only all the most important principles of the science, but also exercises in parsing, false syntax, and punctuation, sufficiently extensive for all ordinary, practical purposes, and a key to the exercises, and, moreover, a series of illustrations so full and intelligible, as *completely to adapt the principles to the capacities of common learners:* Whether this design has been successfully or unsucessfully executed, is left for the public to decide. The general adoption of the work

into schools, wherever it has become known, and the ready sale of *forty thousand* copies, (though *without hitherto affording the author any pecuniary profit*,) are favourable omens.

In the selection and arrangement of principles for his work, the author has endeavoured to pursue a course between the extremes, of taking blindly on trust whatever has been sanctioned by prejudice and the authority of venerable names, and of that arrogant, innovating spirit, which sets at defiance all authority, and attempts to overthrow all former systems, and convince the world that all true knowledge and science are wrapped up in a crude system of vagaries of its own invention. Notwithstanding the author is aware that public prejudice is powerful, and that he who ventures much by way of innovation will be liable to defeat his own purpose, by falling into neglect; yet he has taken the liberty to think for himself, to investigate the subject critically and dispassionately, and to adopt such principles only as he deemed the least objectionable, and best calculated to effect the object he had in view. But what his system claims as improvements on others, consists not so much in bettering the principles themselves, as *in the method adopted of communicating a knowledge of them to the mind of the learner.* That the work is defective, the author is fully sensible; and he is free to acknowledge, that its defects arise, in part, from his own want of judgment and skill. But there is another and more serious cause of them, namely, the anomalies and imperfections with which the language abounds. This latter circumstance is also the cause of the existence of so widely different opinions on many important points; and, moreover, the reason that the grammatical principles of our language can never be indisputably settled. But principles ought not be rejected because they admit of exceptions. He who is thoroughly acquainted with the genius and structure of our language, can duly appreciate the truth of these remarks.

To conform, in our orthography and ortheopy, to some admitted standard, the author deems a consideration of sufficient importance to justify him in introducing into his work an article on each of these subjects, in which many words that are often mispelled or mispronounced, are corrected according to a work,* which, in his estimation, justly claims a decisive preference, in point of *accuracy*, to any other Dictionary of the English langnage.

*** Should parents object to the Compendium, fearing it will soon be destroyed by their children, they are informed that the pupil will not have occasion to use it one-tenth part as much as he will the book which it accompanies; and besides, if it be destroyed, he will find all the definitions and rules which it contains, recapitulated in the series of Lectures.

---

* The work alluded to, is "Walker's Dictionary," revised and corrected by Mr. Lyman Cobb.

Addre
A, an,
And .
Adject
Adver
Agree
Anom
Articl
Becau
But,
Case
No
Po
Ob
No
Nom
Ap
No
A
Con
Con
Der
Ety
Exc
—I
Fig
Ge
Go
Gr
Ha
Idi
Int
It
If
K
Le
Li
M
M

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Address to the learner..... 13
A, an, one..... 66, 123
And 123
Adjectives..... 37, 69
Adverbs..... 84
Agreement of words 53
Anomalies..... 159
Articles 64
Because..... 123
But, than, as....114, 122, 162
Case..... 41
  Nominative.....43, 154
  Possessive 49
  Objective.....55, 93
  Nominative case independent.....40, 127, 161, 174
Nominative case absolute 128, 175
  Apposition of cases.. 128, 175
  Nominative and objective after the verb *to be*.... 184
  Active, passive, and neuter nominatives 154
Conjunctions..... 117
Conjugation of regular verbs 140
Derivation (all the philosophical notes treat of derivation) 28, 37, 168
Etymology..... 27
Exercises in false syntax.. 174
—In punctuation..... 213
Figures of speech 227
Gender..... 35
Government 53
Grammar, general division of 17
  Philosophical..... 18
Have.....137, 151
Idioms 159
Interjections 124
It 161
If 120
Key to the exercises 231
Letters, sounds of..... 21
Like..... 75
Manner of meaning of words 28,73
Moods 131
  Signs of..... 139
  Subjunctive....132, 141, 152

Nouns .....PAGE 30
  Gender of 35
  Person of..... 38
  Number of..... 40
  Case of.....41, 55, 126
Orthography 19, 199
  Rules of 23
Parsing 51
Participles 79
Poetry transposed..... 163
Prepositions..... 92
Pronouns..... 96
  Personal 97
  Compound personal..... 100
  Adjective 105
  Relative 108
Pronunciation 201
Prosody 211
Provincialisms..... 207
Punctuation..... 212
Rhetoric 223
Rules of syntax..... 172
Sentences, definitions of simple and compound..... 117
  Transposition of.....122, 163
Standard of grammatical accuracy.....17, 76
Syntax 27
To 51
Tenses..... 135, 191
  Signs of the..... 139
The.....64, 65
That 65, 108
Terminations 20, 37, 49, 78, 133
Verbs 43, 47
  Active-transitive.....55, 57
  Active-intransitive..... 56
  Passive 153
  Neuter 44
  Defective 156
  Auxiliary 138, 150
  Regular 140
  Irregular 144
  Compound..... 95, 185
Versification 222
Worth.....75, 160
What, which, who 108, 110, 113
You 99

HINTS

TO TEACHERS AND PRIVATE LEARNERS.

As this work proposes a new mode of parsing, and pursues an arrangement essentially different from that generally adopted, it may not be deemed improper for the author to give some directions to those who may be disposed to use it. Perhaps they who take only a slight view of the order of parsing will not consider it *new*, but blend it with those long since adopted. Some writers have, indeed, attempted plans somewhat similar; but in no instance have they reduced them to what the author considers a *regular systematic order*.

The methods which they have generally suggested, require the teacher to *interrogate* the pupil as he proceeds; or else he is permitted to parse without giving any explanations at all. Others hint that the learned ought to apply definitions in a general way, but they lay down no systematic arrangement of questions as his guide. The *systematic* order laid down in this work, if pursued by the pupil, compels him to apply every definition and every rule that appertains to each word he parses, without having a question put to him by the teacher; and, in so doing, he explains every word fully as he goes along. This course enables the learner to proceed independently; and proves, at the same time, a great relief to the instructor. The convenience and advantage of this method are far greater than can be easily conceived by one who is acquainted with it. The author is, therefore, anxious to have the absurd practice, wherever it has been established, of causing learners to commit and recite difinitions and rules without any simultaneous application of them to practical examples immediately abolished. This system obviates the necessity of pursuing such a stupid course of drudgery; for the young beginner who pursues it, will have, in a few weeks, all the most important definitions and rules perfectly committed, simply by applying them in parsing.

If this plan be once adopted, it is confidently believed that every teacher who is desirous to consult either his own convenience, or the advantage of his pupils, will readily pursue it in preference to any former method. This belief is founded on the advantages which the author himself has experienced from it in the course of several years, devoted to the instruction of youth and adults. By pursuing this system, he can, with less labour, advance a pupil farther in a practical knowledge of this abstruse science, in *two months*, than he could in *one year* when he taught in the "old way." It is presumed that no instructor, who once gives this system a fair trial, will doubt the truth of this assertion.

Perhaps some will, on a first view of the work, disapprove of the transposition of many parts; but whoever examines it attentively, will find that, although the author has not followed the common "artificial and unnatural arrangement adopted by most of his predecessors," yet he has endeavoured to pursue a more judicious one, namely, "the order of the understanding."

The learner should commence, *not by committing and rehearsing*, but by reading attentively the first *two* lectures several times over. He

ought then to parse, according to the *systematic order*, the examples given for that purpose; in doing which, as previously stated, he has an opportunity of committing all the definitions and rules belonging to the parts of speech included in the examples.

The COMPENDIUM, as it presents to the eye of the learner a condensed but comprehensive view of the whole science, may be properly considered an "Ocular Analysis of the English language." By referring to it, the young student is enabled to apply all his definitions and rules from the very commencement of his parsing. To some, this mode of procedure may seem rather tedious; but it must appear obvious to every person of discernment, that a pupil will learn more by parsing *five* words critically, and explaining them fully, than he would by parsing *fifty* words superficially, and without understanding their various properties. The teacher who pursues this plan, is not under the necessity of hearing his pupils recite a single lesson of *definitions* committed to memory, for he has a fair opportunity of discovering their knowledge of these as they evince it in parsing. All other directions necessary for the learner in school, as well as for the *private learner*, will be given in the succeeding pages of the work. Should these feeble efforts prove a saving of much time and expense to those young persons who may be disposed to pursue this science with avidity, by enabling them easily to acquire a critical knowledge of a branch of education so important and desirable, the author's fondest anticipations will be fully realized; but should his work fall into the hands of any who are expecting, by the acquisition, to become grammarians, and yet, have not sufficient ambition and perseverance to make themselves acquainted with its contents, it is hoped, that the blame for their nonimprovement will not be thrown upon *him*.

To those enterprising and intelligent gentleman who may be disposed to lecture on this plan, the author takes the liberty to offer a few hints by way of encouragement.

Any judicious instructor of grammar, if he take the trouble to make himself familiar with the contents of the following pages, will find it an easy matter to pursue this system. One remark only to the lecturer is sufficient. Instead of causing his pupils to acquire a gnowledge of the nature and use of the principles by intense application, let him communicate it verbally; that is, let him first take up one part of speech, and, in an oral lecture, unfold and expla n all its properties, not only by adopting the illustrations given in th e book, but also by giving others that may occur to his mind as he pr ocee ds. After a part of speech has been thus elucidated, the class should be interrogated on it, and then taught to parse it, and correct errors in composition under the rules that apply to it. In the same manner he may proceed with the other parts of speech observing, however, to recapitulate occasionally, until the learners become thoroughly acquainted with whatever principles may have been presented. If this plan be faithfully pursued, rapid progress, on the part of the learner, will be the invitable result; and that teacher who pursues it cannot fail of acquiring distinction, and an enviable popularity in his profession.

S. KIRKHAM.

FAMILIAR LECTURES
ON
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

LECTURE I.

DIVISIONS OF GRAMMAR.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

TO THE YOUNG LEARNER.

You are about to enter upon one of the most useful, and, when rightly pursued, one of the most interesting studies in the whole circle of science. If, however, you, like many a misguided youth, are under the impression that the study of grammar is dry and irksome, and a matter of little consequence, I trust I shall succeed in removing from your mind all such false notions and ungrounded prejudices; for I will endeavour to convince you, before I close these lectures, that this is not only a pleasing study, but one of real and substantial utility; a study that directly tends to adorn and dignify human nature, and meliorate the condition of man. Grammar is a leading branch of that learning which alone is capable of unfolding and maturing the mental powers, and of elevating man to his proper rank in the scale of intellectual existence;—of that learning which lifts the soul from earth, and enables it to hold converse with a thousand worlds. In pursuing any and every other path of science, you will discover the truth of these remarks, and feel its force; for you will find, that, as grammar opens the door to every department of learning, a knowledge of it is indispensable; and should you not aspire at distinction in the republic of letters, this knowledge cannot fail of being serviceable to you, even if you are destined to pass through the humblest walks of life. I think it is clear, that, in one point of view, grammatical knowledge possesses a decided advantage over every other branch of learning. Penmanship, arithmetic, geography, astronomy, botany, chemistry, and so on, are highly useful in their respective places; but not one of them is so universally applicable to practical purposes as this. In every situation, under all circumstances, on all occasions;—when you speak,

read, write, or think, a knowledge of grammar is of essential utility.

Doubtless you have heard some persons assert, that they could detect and correct any error in language by the ear, and speak and write accurately without a knowledge of grammar. Now your own observation will soon convince you that this assertion is incorrect. A man of refined taste may, by perusing good authors, and conversing with the learned, acquire that knowledge of language which will enable him to avoid those glaring errors that offend the ear; but there are other errors equally gross; which have not a harsh sound, and, consequently, which cannot be detected without a knowledge of the rules that are violated. Believe me, therefore, when I say, that without the knowledge and application of grammar rules, it is impossible for any one to think, speak, read, or write with accuracy. From a want of such knowledge, many often express their ideas in a manner so improper and obscure as to render it impossible for any one to *understand* them: their language frequently amounts, not only to *bad* sense but *non*-sense. In other instances several different meanings may be affixed to the words they employ; and what is still worse, is, that not unfrequently their sentences are so constructed, as to convey a meaning quite the reverse of that which they intended. Nothing of a secular nature can be more worthy of your attention, then, than the acquisition of grammatical knowledge.

The path which leads to grammatical excellence, is not all the way smooth and flowery, but in it you will find some thorns interspersed, and some obstacles to be surmounted, or, in simple language, you will find, in the pursuit of this science, many intricacies which it is rather difficult for the juvenile mind completely to unravel. I shall, therefore, as I proceed, address you in plain language, and endeavour to illustrate every principle in a manner so clear and simple, that you will be able, *if you exercise your mind*, to understand its nature, and apply it to practice as you go along; for I would rather give you one useful idea, than fifty high-sounding words, the meaning of which you would probably be unable to comprehend.

Should you ever have any doubts concerning the meaning of a word, or the sense of a sentence, you must not be discouraged, but persevere, either by studying my explanations, or by asking some person competent to inform you, till you obtain a clear conception of it, and till all doubts are removed. By carefully examining, and frequently reviewing, the fol-

lowing lectures, you will soon be able to discern the grammatical construction of our language, and fix in your mind the principles by which it is governed. Nothing delights youth so much as a clear and distinct knowledge of any branch of science which they are pursuing; and, on the other hand, I know they are apt to be discouraged with any branch of learning which requires much time and attention to be understood. It is the evidence of a weak mind, however, to be discouraged by the obstacles with which the young learner must expect to meet, and the best means that you can adopt, in order to enable you to overcome the difficulties that arise in the incipient stage of your studies, is to cultivate the habit of *thinking methodically and soundly* on all subjects of importance which may engage your attention. Nothing will be more effectual in enabling you to think, as well as to speak and write, correctly, than the study of English grammar, according to the method of pursuing it as prescribed in the following pages. This system is designed, and, I trust, well calculated to expand and strengthen the intellectual faculties, in as much as it involves a process by which the mind is addressed, and a knowledge of grammar communicated in an interesting and familiar manner.

You are aware, my young friend, that you live in an age of light and knowledge;—an age in which science and the arts are marching onward with gigantic strides. You live, too, in a land of liberty;—a land on which the smiles of Heaven beam with uncommon refulgence. The trump of the warrior and the clangour of arms no longer echo on our mountains, or in our valleys; "the garments dyed in blood have passed away;" the mighty struggle for independence is over; and you live to enjoy the rich boon of freedom and prosperity which was purchased with the blood of our fathers. These considerations forbid that you should ever be so unmindful of your duty to your country, to your Creator, to yourself, and to succeeding generations, as to be content to grovel in ignorance. Remember that "knowledge is power;" that an enlightened and virtuous people can never be enslaved; and that, on the intelligence of our youth, rest the future liberty, the prosperity, the happiness, the grandeur, and the glory of our beloved country. Go on, then, with a laudable ambition, and an unyielding perseverance, in the path which leads to honour and renown. Press forward Go, and gather laurels on the hill of science; linger among her unfading beauties; "drink deep" of her crystal fountain; and then join in the

"march of fame." Become learned and virtuous, and you will be great. Love God and serve him, and you will be happy.

LANGUAGE.

LANGUAGE, in its most extensive sense, implies those signs by which men and brutes communicate to each other their thoughts, affections, and desires.

Language may be divided, 1. into natural and artificial; 2. into spoken and written.

NATURAL LANGUAGE consists in the use of those natural signs which different animals employ in communicating their feelings one to another. The meaning of these signs all perfectly understand by the principles of their nature. This language is common both to man and brute. The elements of natural language in man may be reduced to three kinds; modulations of the voice, gestures, and features. By means of these, two savages who have no common, artificial language, can communicate their thoughts in a manner quite intelligible: they can ask and refuse, affirm and deny, threaten and supplicate; they can traffic, enter into contracts, and plight their faith. The language of brutes consists in the use of those *inarticulate* sounds by which they express their thoughts and affections. Thus, the chirping of a bird, the bleating of a lamb, the neighing of a horse, and the growling, whining, and barking of a dog, are the language of those animals, respectively.

ARTIFICIAL LANGUAGE consists in the use of words, by means of which mankind are enabled to communicate their thoughts to one another.—In order to assist you in comprehending what is meant by the term *word*, I will endeavour to illustrate the meaning of the term.

Idea. The *notices* which we gain by sensation and perception, and which are treasured up in the mind to be the materials of thinking and knowledge, are denominated ideas. For example, when you place your hand upon a piece of ice, a sensation is excited which we call *coldness*. That faculty which notices this sensation, or change produced in the mind, is called *perception;* and the abstract notice itself, or notion you form of this sensation, is denominated an *idea*. This being premised, we will now proceed to the consideration of words.

Words are *articulate* sounds, used by common consent not as natural, but as artificial, signs of our ideas. Words have no meaning in themselves. They are merely the artificial representatives of those ideas affixed to them by compact or agreement among those who use them. In English, for instance, to a particular kind of metal we assign the name *gold*; not because there is, in that sound, any peculiar aptness which suggests the idea we wish to convey, but the application of that sound to the idea signified, is an act altogether arbitrary. Were there any natural connexion between the sound and the thing signified, the word *gold* would convey the same idea to the people of other countries as it does to ourselves, But such is not the fact. Other nations make use of different sounds to signify the same thing. Thus, *aurum* denotes the same idea in Latin, and *or* in French.—Hence it follows, that it is by custom only we learn to annex particular ideas to particular sounds.

Spoken Language or speech is made up of articulate sounds uttered by the human voice.

The voice is formed by air which, after it passes through the glottis, (a small aperture in the upper part of the wind-pipe,) is modulated by the action of the throat, palate, teeth, tongue, lips, and nostrils.

Written Language. The elements of written language consists of letters or characters, which, by common consent and general usage, are combined into words, and thus made the ocular representatives of the articulate sounds uttered by the voice.

—

GRAMMAR.

Grammar is the science of language.

Grammar may be divided into two species, universal and particular.

Universal Grammar explains the principles which are common to all languages.

Particular Grammar applies those general principles to a particular language, modifying them according to its genius, and the established practice of the best speakers and writers by whom it is used. Hence,

The established practice of the best speakers and writers of any language, is the standard of grammatical accuracy in the use of that language.

By the phrase, *established practice*, is implied reputable, national, and present usage. A usage becomes *good* and *legal*, when it has been long and generally adopted.

The best speakers and writers, or such as may be considered good authority in the use of language, are those who are deservedly in high estimation; speakers, distinguished for their elocution and other literary attainments; and writers, eminent for correct taste, solid matter, and refined manner.

In the grammar of a *perfect* language, no rules should be admitted, but such as are founded on fixed principles, arising out of the genius of that language and the nature of things; but our language being *im*-perfect, it becomes necessary, in a *practical* treatise, like this, to adopt some rules to direct us in the use of speech as regulated by *custom*. If we had a permanent and surer standard than capricious custom to regulate us in the transmission of thought, great inconvenience would be avoided. They, however, who introduce usages which depart from the analogy and philosophy of a language, are conspicuous among the number of those who form that language, and have power to control it.

Language is conventional, and not only invented, but, in its progressive advancement, *varied* for purposes of practical convenience. Hence it assumes any and every form which those who make use of it choose to give it. We are, therefore, as *rational* and *practical* grammarians, compelled to submit to the necessity of the case; to take the language as it *is*, and not as it *should be*, and bow to custom.

PHILOSOPHICAL GRAMMAR investigates and develops the principles of language, as founded in the nature of things and the original laws of thought. It also discusses the grounds of the classification of words, and explains those procedures which practical grammar lays down for our observance.

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR adopts the most convenient classification of the words of a language, lays down a system of definitions and rules, founded on scientific principles and good usage, illustrates their nature and design, and enforces their application.

PRINCIPLE. A principle in grammar is a peculiar construction of the language, sanctioned by good usage.

DEFINITION. A definition in grammar is a principle of language expressed in a definite form.

RULE. A rule describes the peculiar construction or circumstantial relation of words, which custom has established for our observance.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the English language with propriety.

GRAMMAR teaches us *how to use words in a proper manner.* The most important use of that faculty called speech, is, to convey our thoughts to others. If, therefore, we have a store of words, and even know what they signify, they will be of no real use to us unless we can also apply them to practice, and make them answer the purposes for which they were invented. *Grammar*, well understood, enables us to express our thoughts fully and clearly; and, consequently in a manner which will defy the ingenuity of man to give our words any other meaning than that which we ourselves intend them to express. To be able to speak and write our vernacular tongue with accuracy and elegance, is, certainly, a consideration of the highest moment.

Grammar is divided into four parts;

1. ORTHOGRAPHY,
2. ETYMOLOGY,
3. SYNTAX,
4. PROSODY.

ORTHOGRAPHY teaches the nature and powers of letters, and the just method of spelling words.

ORTHOGRAPHY means *word-making* or *spelling*. It teaches us the different kinds and sounds of letters, how to combine them into syllables, and syllables into words.

As this is one of the first steps in the path of literature, I presume you already understand the nature and use of letters, and the just method of spelling words. If you do, it is unnecessary for you to dwell long on this part of grammar, which though very important, is rather dry and uninteresting, for it has nothing to do with parsing or analyzing language. And, therefore, if you can *spell correctly*, you may omit Orthography, and commence with Etymology and Syntax.

Orthography treats, 1st, of *Letters*, 2ndly, of *Syllables*, and 3dly, of *Words*.

I. LETTERS. A letter is the first principle, or least part of a word.

The English Alphabet contains twenty-six letters.

They are divided into vowels and consonants.

A vowel is a letter that can be perfectly sounded by itself. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u,* and sometimes *w* and *y*. *W* and *y* are consonants when they begin a word or syllable; but in every other situation they are vowels.

A consonant is a letter that cannot be perfectly sounded without the help of a vowel; as, *b, d, f, l.* All letters except the vowels are Consonants.

Consonants are divided into mutes and semi-vowels.

The mutes cannot be sounded *at all* without the aid of a vowel. They are *b, p, t, d, k,* and *c* and *g* hard.

The semi-vowels have an imperfect sound of themselves. They are *f, l, m, n, r, v, s, z, x* and *c* and *g* soft.

Four of the semi-vowels, namely, *l, m, n, r,* are called *liquids*, because they readily unite with other consonants, and flow, as it were, into their sounds.

A diphthong is the union of *two* vowels, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice; as *oi* in voice, *ou* in sound.

A triphthong is the union of *three* vowels pronounced in like manner; as, *eau* in beau, *iew* in view.

A proper diphthong has *both* the vowels sounded; as, *ou* in ounce. An *improper* diphthong has only *one* of the vowels sounded; as, *oa* in boat.

II. Syllables. A syllable is a distinct sound, uttered by a single impulse of the voice; as, *a, an, ant.*

A word of one syllable, is termed a Monosyllable; a word of two syllables, a Dissyllable; a word of three syllables, a Trisyllable; a word of four or more syllables, a Polysyllable.

III. Words. Words are articulate sounds, used by common consent, as signs of our ideas.

Words are of two sorts, primitive and derivative.

A *primitive* word is that which cannot be reduced to a simpler word in the language; as, *man, good.*

A *derivative* word is that which may be reduced to a simpler word; as, *manful, goodness.*

There is little or no difference between derivative and compound words. The terminations or added syllables, such as *ed, es, ess, est, an, ant, en, ence, ent, dom, hood, ly, ous, ful, ness,* and the like, were, originally, distinct and separate words, which, by long use, have been contracted, and made to coalesce with other words.

OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

A.—*A* has four sounds; the long; as in *name, basin;* the broad; as in *call, wall;* the short; as in *fagot, glass:* and the flat, Italian sound; as in *bar, farther.*

The improper diphthong, *aa*, has the short sound of *a* in *Balaam, Canaan, Isaac;* and the long sound of *a* in *Baal, Gaal, Aaron.*

The Latin diphthong, *æ*, has the long sound of *e* in *ænigma, Cæsar,* and some other words. But many authors reject this useless excrescence of antiquity, and write, *enigma Cesar.*

The diphthong, *ai*, has the long sound of *a*, as in *pail, sail;* except in *plaid, said, again, raillery, fountain, Britain,* and some others.

Au is sounded like broad *a* in *taught*, like flat *a* in *aunt*, like long *o* in *hautboy*, and like short *o* in *laurel.*

Aw has always the sound of broad *a*; as in *bawl, crawl.*

Ay has the long sound of *a;* as in *pay, delay.*

B.—*B* has only one sound; as in *baker, number, chub.*

B is silent when it follows *m* in the same syllable; as in *lamb*, &c. except in *accumb, rhomb,* and *succumb.* It is also silent before *t* in the same syllable; as in *doubt, debtor, subtle*, &c.

C.—*C* sounds like *k* before *a, o, u, r, l, t,* and at the end of syllables; as in *cart, cottage, curicus, craft, tract, cloth; victim, flaccid.* It has the sound of *s* before *e, i,* and *y;* as in *centre, cigar, mercy. C* has the sound of *sh* when followed by a diphthong, and is preceded by the accent, either primary or secondary; as in *social, pronunciation*, &c.; and of *z* in *discern, sacrifice, sice, suffice.* It is mute in *arbuscle, czar, czarina, endict, victuals, muscle.*

Ch is commonly sounded like *tsh;* as in *church, chin;* but in words derived from the ancient language, it has the sound of *k;* as in *chymist, chorus;* and likewise in foreign names; as in *Achish, Enoch.* In words from the French, *ch* sounds like *sh;* as in *chase, chevalier;* and also like *sh* when preceded by *l* or *n;* as in *milch, bench, clinch.*

Ch in *arch*, before a vowel, sounds like *k;* as in *arch-angel*, except in *arched, archery, archer, archenemy;* but before a consonant, it sounds like *tsh;* as in *archbishop. Ch* is silent in *schedule, schism, yacht, drachm.*

D.—*D* has one uniform sound; as in *death, bandage.* It sounds like *dj* or *j* when followed by long *u* preceded by the accent; as in *educate, verdure.* It also sounds like *j* in *grandeur, soldier.*

The termination, *ed*, in adjectives and participial adjectives, retains its distinct sound; as, a *wick-ed* man, a *learn-ed* man, *bless-ed* are the meek; but in verbs the *e* is generally dropped; as, *passed, walked, flashed, aimed, rolled*, &c., which are pronounced, *past, walkt, flasht, aimd, rold.*

E.—*E* has a long sound; as in *scheme, severe*; a short sound; as in *men, tent;* and sometimes the sound of flat *a;* as in *sergeant*; and of short *i*; as in *yes, pretty, England*, and generally in the unaccented terminations, *es, et, en.*

F.—*F* has one unvaried sound; as in *fancy, muffin;* except in *of*, which, when compounded, is pronounced *ov.* A wive's portion, a

calve's head, are improper. They should be, *wife's* portion, *calf's* head.

G.—*G* has two sounds. It is hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, and *r*, and at the end of a word; as in *gay*, *go*, *gun*, *glory*; *bag*, *snug*. It is soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*; as in *genius*, *ginger*, *Egypt*. Exceptions; *get*, *gewgaw*, *gimlet*, and some others. *G* is silent before *n*; as in *gnash*.

H.—*H* has an articulate sound; as in *hat*, *horse*, *hull*. It is silent after *r*; as in *rhetoric*, *rhubarb*.

I.—*I* has a long sound; as in *fine*; and a short one; as in *fin* Before *r* it is often sounded like *u* short; as in *first*, *third*; and in other words, like short *e*; as in *birth*, *virtue*. In some words it has the sound of long *e*; as in *machine*, *profile*.

J.—*J* has the sound of soft *g*; except in *hallelujah*, in which it is pronounced like *y*.

K.—*K* has the sound of *c* hard, and is used before *e*, *i*, and *y*, where *c* would be soft; as *kept*, *skirt*, *murky*. It is silent before *n*; as in *knife*, *knell*, *knocker*.

The custom of omitting the *k* at the end of words where it is preceded by *c*, has introduced into the language the unwarrantable novelty of ending a word with an unusual letter, which produces irregularities in formatives; for we are obliged to employ the *k* in *frolicking*, *frolicked*, *trafficking*, *trafficked*, *mimicking*, *attacking*, &c. though we omit it in *frolic*, *traffic*, &c.

L.—*L* has always a soft liquid sound; as in *love*, *billow*. It is often silent; as in *half*, *talk*, *almond*.

M.—*M* has always the same sound; as in *murmur*, *monumental*; except in *comptroller*, which is pronounced *controller*.

N.—*N* has two sounds; the one pure; as in *man*, *net*, *noble*; the other a compound sound; as in *ankle*, *banquet*, *distinct*, &c. pronounced *angkl*, *bangkwet*. *N* final is silent when preceded by *m*; as in *hymn*, *autumn*.

O.—*O* has a long sound; as in *note*, *over*; and a short one; as in *not*, *got*. It has the sound of *u* short; as in *son*, *attorney*, *doth*, *does*; and generally in the terminations, *op*, *ot*, *or*, *on*, *om*, *ol*, *od*, &c.

P.—*P* has but one uniform sound; as in *pin*, *slipper*; except in *cupboard*, *clapboard*, where it has the sound of *b*. It is mute in *psalm*, *Ptolemy tempt*, *emty*, *corps*, *raspberry*, and *receipt*.

Ph has the sound of *f* in *philosophy*, *Philip*; and of *v* in *nephew*, *Stephen*.

Q.—*Q* is sounded like *k*, and is always followed by *u* pronounced like *w*; as in *quadrant*, *queen*, *conquest*.

R.—*R* has a rough sound; as in *Rome*, *river*, *rage*; and a smooth one; as in *hard*, *card*, *regard*. In the unaccented termination *re*, the *r* is sounded after the *e*; as in *fibre*, *centre*.

S.—*S* has a flat sound like *z*; as in *besom*, *nasal*; and, at the beginning of words, a sharp, hissing sound; as in *saint*, *sister*, *sample*. It has the sound of *sh* when preceded by the accent and another *s* or a liquid, and followed by a diphthong or long *u*; as in *expulsion* *censure*. *S* sounds like *zh* when preceded by the accent and a vowel

and followed by a diphthong or long *u*; as in *brasier, usual.* It is mute in *isle, corps, demesne, viscount.*

T.—*T* is sounded in *take, temper.* *T* before *u*, when the accent, precedes, and generally before *eou*, sounds like *tsh*; as, *nature, virtue, righteous*, are pronounced *natshure, virtshue, ritsheous.* *Ti* before a vowel, preceded by the accent, has the sound of *sh*; as in *salvation, negotiation*; except in such words as *tierce, tiara*, &c. and unless an *s* goes before; as, *question*; and excepting also derivatives from words ending in *ty*; as in *mighty, mightier.*

Th, at the beginning, *middle*, and end of words, is sharp; as in *thick, panther, breath.* Exceptions; *then, booth, worthy*, &c.

U.—*U* has three sounds; a long; as in *mule, cubic*; a short; as in *dull, custard*; and an obtuse sound; as in *full, bushel.* It is pronounced like short *e* in *bury*; and like short *i* in *busy, business.*

V.—*V* has uniformly the sound of flat *f*; as in *vanity, love.*

W.—*W*, when a consonant, has its sound, which is heard in *wo, beware.*

W is silent before *r*; as in *wry, wrap, wrinkle*; and also in *answer, sword*, &c. Before *h* it is pronounced as if written after the *h*; as in *why, when, what*;—*hwy, hwen, hwat.* When heard as a vowel, it takes the sound of *u*; as in *draw, crew, now.*

X.—*X* has a sharp sound, like *ks*, when it ends a syllable with the accent on it; as *exit, exercise*; or when it precedes an accented syllable which begins with any consonant except *h*; as *excuse, extent*; but when the following accented syllable begins with a vowel or *h*, it has generally a flat sound, like *gz*; as in *exert, exhort.* *X* has the sound of *z* at the beginning of proper names of Greek original; as in *Xanthus, Xenophon, Xerxes.*

Y.—*Y*, when a consonant, has its proper sound; as in *youth, York, yes, new-year.* When *y* is employed as a vowel, it has exactly the sound that *i* would have in the same situation; as in *rhyme, system, party, pyramid.*

Z.—*Z* has the sound of flat *s*; as in *freeze, brazen.*

—

RULES FOR SPELLING.

Spelling is the art of expressing a word by its proper letters.

The following rules are deemed important in practice, although they assist us in spelling only a small portion of the words of our language. This useful art is chiefly to be acquired by studying the spelling-book and dictionary, and by strict attention in reading.

Rule 1. Monosyllables ending in *f, l*, or *s*, double the final or ending consonant when it is preceded by a *single* vowel; as, *staff, mill, pass.* Exceptions; *of, if, as, is, has, was, yes, his, this, us*, and *thus.*

False Orthography for the learner to correct.—Be thou like the gale that moves the gras, to those who ask thy aid. The aged hero comes forth on his staf; his gray hair glitters in the beam.—Shal mortal man

be more just than God? Few know the value of health til they lose it. —Our manners should be neither gros, nor excessively refined.

And that is not the lark, whose notes do beat
The vaulty heaven so high above our heads;
I have more care to stay, than wil to go.

RULE II. Monosyllables ending in any consonant but *f*, *l*, or *s*, never double the final consonant when it is preceded by a single vowel; as, *man*, *hat*. Exceptions; *add*, *ebb*, *butt*, *egg*, *odd*, *err*, *inn*, *bunn*, *purr*, and *buzz*.

False Orthography.—None ever went sadd from Fingal.—He rejoiced over his sonn.—Clonar lies bleeding on the bedd of death.—Many a trapp is set to insnare the feet of youth.

The weary sunn has made a golden sett,
And, by the bright track of his golden carr,
Gives token of a goodly day to-morrow.

RULE III. Words ending in *y*, form the plural of nouns, the persons of verbs, participial nouns, past participles, comparatives and superlatives, by changing *y* into *i*, when the *y* is preceded by a *consonant*; as *spy*, *spies*; *I carry*, *thou carriest*, *he carries*; *carrier*, *carried*; *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*

The present participle in *ing*, retains the *y* that *i* may not be doubled; as *carry*, *carrying*.

But when *y* is preceded by a *vowel*, in such instances as the above, it is not changed into *i*; as, *boy*, *boys*: *I cloy*, *he cloys*; except in the words *lay*, *pay*, and *say*; from which are formed *laid*, *paid*, and *said*; and their compounds, *unpaid*, *unsaid*, &c.

False Orthography.—Our fancys should be governed by reason.—Thou wearyest thyself in vain.—He denyed himself all sinful pleasures.

Win straiing souls with modesty and love;
Cast none away.

The truly good man is not dismaied by poverty.

Ere fresh morning streak the east, we must be risen to reform yonder allies green.

RULE IV. When words ending in *y*, assume an additional syllable beginning with a consonant, the *y*, if it is preceded by a consonant is commonly changed to *i*; as, *happy*, *happily*, *happiness*.

But when *y* is preceded by a vowel, in such instances, it is very rarely changed to *i*; as, *coy*, *coyless*; *boy*, *boyish*; *boyhood*; *joy*, *joyless*, *joyful*.

False Orthography.—His mind is uninfluenced by fancyful humours.—The vessel was heavyly laden. When we act against conscience, we become the destroiers of our own peace.

Christinna, mayden of heroic mien!
Star of the north! of northern stars the queen!

RULE V. Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, ending with a single consonant that is preceded by a single vowel, double that consonant when they assume another syllable that begins with a vowel; as *wit*, *witty*; *thin*, *thinnish*; *to abet*, *an abettor*.

But if a dipthong precedes, or the accent is *not* on the last syllable, the consonant remains single; as, *to toil, toiling; to offer, an offering; maid, maiden.*

False Orthography.—The business of to-day, should not be defered till to-morrow.—That law is annuled.—When we have outstriped our errors, we have won the race.—By defering our repentance, we accumulate our sorrows.—The Christian Lawgiver has prohibitted many things which the heathen philosophers allowed.

At summer eve, when heaven's aerial bow
Spans with bright arch the glitterring hills below.—
Thus mourned the hapless man; a thunderring sound
Rolled round the shudderring walls and shook the ground.

RULE VI. Words ending in double *l*, in taking *less*, *ness*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, generally omit one *l*; as, *fulness*, *skilless*, *fully*, *skilful.*

But words ending in any double letter but *l*, and taking *ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *full*, after them, preserve the letter double; as, *harmlessness*, *carelessness*, *carelessly*, *stiffly*, *successful.*

False Orthography.—A chillness generally precedes a fever.—He is wed to dullness.

The silent stranger stood amazed to see
Contempt of wealth and willful poverty.

Restlesness of mind impairs our peace.—The road to the blisful regions, is as open to the peasant as to the king.—The arrows of calumny fall harmlesly at the feet of virtue.

RULE VII. *Ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *full*, added to words ending in silent *e*, does not cut it off; as, *paleness*, *guileness*, *closely*, *peaceful*: except in a few words; as *duly*, *truly*, *awful.*

False Orthography.—Sedatness is becoming.

All these with ceasless praise his works behold.
Stars rush: and final ruin fiercly drives
Her ploughshare o'er creation!
————————Nature made a pause,
An aweful pause! prophetic of her end!

RULE VIII. When words ending in silent *e*, assume the termination, *ment*, the *e* should not be cut off; as, *abatement*, *chastisement.* The words *judgment*, *abridgment*, *acknowledgment* are exceptions to this rule.

Ment, like other terminations, changes *y* into *i* when the *y* is preceded by a consonant: as, *accompany*, *accompaniment*; *merry*, *merriment.*

False Orthography.—A judicious arrangment of studies facilitates improvment.—Encouragment is greatest when we least need it.

To shun allurments is not hard,
To minds resolv'd, forwarn'd and well prepar'd.

RULE IX. When words ending in silent *e*, assume the termination, *able*, or *ible*, the *e* should generally be cut off; as, *blame*, *blamable*; *cure*, *curable*; *sense*, *sensible.* But if *c* or *g* soft comes before *e* in the original word, the *e* is preserved in words compounded with *able*; as, *peace*, *peaceable*; *change*, *changeable.*

False Orthography.—Knowledge is desirable.—Misconduct is inexcuseable.—Our natural defects are not chargable upon us.—We are made to be servicable to others as well as to ourselves.

RULE X. When *ing or ish* is added to words ending in silent *e*, the *e* is almost always omitted; as *place, placing; lodge, lodging; slave, slavish; prude, prudish.*

False Orthography.—Labour and expense are lost upon a droneish spirit.—An obligeing and humble disposition, is totally unconnected with a servile and cringeing humour.

Conscience anticipateing time,
Already rues th' unacted crime.

One self-approveing hour, whole years outweighs
Of stupid starers, and of loud huzzas.

RULE XI. Compound words are generally spelled in the same manner as the simple words of which they are compounded; as, *glasshouse, skylight, thereby, hereafter.* Many words ending in double *l*, are exceptions to this rule; as, *already, welfare, wilful, fulfil;* and also the words, *wherever, christmas, lammas,* &c.

False Orthography.—The Jew's pasover was instituted in A. M. 2513.—They salute one another by touching their forheads.—That which is sometimes expedient, is not allways so.

Then, in the scale of reas'ning life 'tis plain,
There must be, somewhere, such a rank as man.
Till hymen brought his lov-delighted hour,
There dwelt no joy in Eden's rosy bower.

The head reclined, the loosened hair,
The limbs relaxed, the mournful air:—
See, he looks up; a wofull smile
Lightens his wo-worn cheek awhile.

You may now answer the following

QUESTIONS.

What is language?—How is language divided?—What is natural language?—What are the elements of natural language in man?—Wherein consists the language of brutes?—What is artificial language?—What is an idea?—What are words?—What is Grammar?—What does Universal grammar explain?—Wherein does Particular grammar differ from universal?—What is the standard of grammatical accuracy?—What is Philosophical grammar?—What is Practical grammar?—What is a principle of grammar?—A definition?—A rule?—What is English grammar?—Into how many parts is grammar divided?—What does Orthography teach?

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

LECTURE II.

OF NOUNS AND VERBS.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

SYNTAX treats of the agreement and government of words, and of their proper arrangement in a sentence.

The word ETYMOLOGY signifies the *origin* or *pedigree of words*.

Syn, a prefix from the Greek, signifies *together*. *Syn-tax* means *placing together ;* or, as applied in grammar, *sentence-making*.

The rules of syntax, which direct to the proper choice of words, and their judicious arrangement in a sentence, and thereby enable us to correct and avoid errors in speech, are chiefly based on principles unfolded and explained by Etymology. Etymological knowledge, then, is a prerequisite to the study of Syntax ; but, in parsing, under the head of Etymology, you are required to apply the rules of Syntax. It becomes necessary, therefore, in a practical work of this sort, to treat these two parts of grammar in connexion.

Conducted on scientific principles, Etymology would comprehend the exposition of the origin and meaning of words, and, in short, their whole history, including their application to things in accordance with the laws of nature and of thought, and the caprice of those who apply them ; but to follow up the current of language to its various sources, and analyze the springs from which it flows, would involve a process altogether too arduous and extensive for an elementary work. It would lead to the study of all those languages from which ours is immediately derived, and even compel us to trace many words through those languages to others more ancient, and so on, until the chain of research would become, if not endless, at least, too extensive to be traced out by one man. I shall, therefore, confine myself to the following limited views of this part of grammar.

1. Etymology treats of the *classification* of words.

2. Etymology explains the *accidents* or *properties* peculiar to each class or sort of words, and their present *modifycations*, By modifications, I mean the changes produced on their *end-*

ings, in consequence of their assuming different relations in respect to one another. These changes, such as fruit, fruit*s*, fruit'*s*; he h*is*, h*im*; write, write*st*, write*th*, write*s*, wr*o*te, writ*ten*, writ*ing*, writ*er*; a, a*n*; ample amp*ly*, and the like, will be explained in their appropriate places.

3. Etymology treats of the *derivation* of words; that is, it teaches you *how one word comes from*, or *grows out of* another. For example: from the word speak, come the words speak*est*, speak*eth*, speak*s*, speak*ing*, sp*o*ke, sp*o*ken, speak*er*, speak*er's*, speak*ers*. These, you perceive, are all one and the same word, and all, except the last three, express the same kind of action. They differ from each other only in the termination. These changes in termination are produced on the word in order to make it correspond with the various *persons* who speak, the *number* of persons, or the *time* of speaking; as, *I* speak, *thou* speak*est*, the *man* speak*eth*, or speak*s*, the *men* speak, *I* sp*o*ke; The speak*er* speak*s* another speak*er's* sp*ee*ch.

The third part of Etymology, which is intimately connected with the second, will be more amply expanded in Lecture XIV, and in the Philosophical notes; but I shall not treat largely of that branch of derivation which consists in tracing words to foreign languages. This is the province of the lexicographer, rather than of the philologist. It is not the business of him who writes a practical, English grammar, to trace words to the Saxon, nor to the Celtic, the Greek, the Dutch, the Mexican, nor the Persian; nor is it his province to explain their meaning in Latin, French, or Hebrew, Italian, Mohegan, or Sanscrit; but it is his duty to explain their properties, their powers, their connexions, relations, dependances, and bearings, not at the period in which the Danes made an irruption into the island of Great Britain, nor in the year in which Lamech paid his addresses to Adah and Zillah, but *at the particular pericd in which he writes*. His words are already derived, formed, established, and furnished to his hand, and he is bound to take them and explain them as he finds them *in his day*, without any regard to their ancient construction and application.

CLASSIFICATION.

In arranging the parts of speech, I conceive it to be the legitimate object of the practical grammarian to consult *practical convenience*. The true principle of classification seems to be, not a reference to essential differences in the *primitive* meaning of the words, nor to their original combinations, but to the *manner in which they are at present employed*. In the early

and rude state of society, mankind are quite limited in their knowledge, and having but few ideas to communicate, a small number of words answers their purpose in the transmission of thought. This leads them to express their ideas in short, detached sentences, requiring few or none of those *connectives*, or words of transition, which are afterwards introduced into language by refinement, and which contribute so largely to its perspicuity and elegance. The argument appears to be conclusive, then, that every language must necessarily have more parts of speech in its refined, than in its barbarous state.

The part of speech to which any word belongs, is ascertained, not by the *original* signification of that word, but by its present *manner* of meaning, or, rather, *the office which it performs in a sentence.*

The various ways in which a word is applied to the idea which it represents, are called its *manner of meaning.* Thus, The painter dips his *paint* brush in *paint* to *paint* the carriage. Here the word *paint*, is first employed to *describe* the brush which the painter uses; in this situation it is, therefore, an *adjective;* secondly, to *name* the mixture employed; for which reason it is a *noun;* and, lastly, to *express the action* performed; it therefore, becomes a *verb;* and yet, the meaning of the word is the same in all these applications. This meaning, however, is applied in different ways; and thus the same word becomes different parts of speech. Richard took *water* from the *water* pot, to *water* the plants.

ETYMOLOGY

Etymology treats, first, of the *classification* of words.

THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE is derived chiefly from the Saxon, Danish, Celtic, and Gothic; but in the progressive stages of its refinement, it has been greatly enriched by accessions from the Greek, Latin, French, Spanish, Italian, and German languages.

The number of words in our language, after deducting proper names, and words formed by the inflections of our verbs, nouns, and adjectives, may be estimated at about *forty thousand.*

There are ten sorts of words, called parts of speech, namely, the NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE, VERB, ARTICLE, ADJECTIVE, PARTICIPLE, ADVERB, PREPOSITION, PRONOUN, CONJUNCTION, and INTERJECTION

Thus you perceive, that all the words in the English language

are included in these ten classes: and what you have to do in acquiring a knowledge of English Grammar, is merely to become acquainted with these ten parts of speech, and the rules of Syntax that apply to them. The *Noun* and *Verb* are the most important and leading parts of speech; therefore they are first presented; all the rest (except the interjection) are either appendages or connectives of these two. As you proceed, you will find that it will require more time, and cost you more labour, to get a knowledge of the noun and verb, than it will to become familiar with all the minor parts of speech.

The principal use of words is, to *name* things, *compare* them with each other, and *express their actions*.

Nouns, which are the names of entities or things, *adjectives*, which denote the comparisons and relations of things by describing them, and expressing their qualities, and *verbs*, which express the actions and being of things, are the only classes of words necessarily recognised in a philosophical view of grammar. But in a treatise which consults, mainly, the *practical* advantages of the learner, it is believed, that no classification will be found more convenient or accurate than the foregoing, which devides words into ten sorts. To attempt to prove, in this place, that nothing would be gained by adopting either a less or a greater number of the parts of speech, would be anticipating the subject. I shall, therefore, give my reasons for adopting this arrangement in preference to any other, as the different sorts of words are respectively presented to you, for then you will be better prepared to appreciate my arguments.

OF NOUNS.

A NOUN is the name of any person, place, or thing: as, *man, Charleston, knowledge.*

Nouns are often improperly called *substantives*. A substantive is the name of a *substance* only; but a noun is the name either of a *substance* or a *quality*.

Noun, derived from the Latin word *nomen*, signifies *name*. The name of any thing* that exists, whether animate or inani-

*The word *thing* from the Saxon verb, *thingian*, to think, is almost unlimited in its meaning. It may be applied to every animal and creature in the universe. By the term creature, I mean that which has been created; as, a dog, water, dirt. This word is also frequently applied to actions; as, "To get drunk is a beastly *thing*." In this phrase, it signifies neither animal nor creature; but it denotes merely an action; therefore this action is the thing.

mate, or which we can see, hear, feel, taste, smell, or think of is a noun. *Animal, bird, creature, paper, pen, apple, field, house, modesty, virtue, courage, danger,* are all nouns. In order that you may easily distinguish this part of speech from others, I will give you a *sign,* which will be useful to yc when you cannot tell it by the *sense.* Any word that will make sense with *the* before it is a noun. Try the following words by this sign and see if they are nouns: tree, mountain, soul, mind, conscience, understanding. *The* tree, *the* mountain, *the* soul, and so on. You perceive that they will make sense with the *the* prefixed; therefore you know they are *nouns.* There are, however, exceptions to this rule, for some nouns will not make sense with *the* prefixed. These you will be able to distinguish, if you exercise your mind, by their *making sense of themselves;* as, *goodness, sobriety, hope, immortality.*

Nouns are used to denote the nonentity or absence of a thing, as well as its reality; as, *nothing, naught, vacancy, non-existence, invisibility.*

Nou are sometimes used as verbs and verbs as nouns, according to their *manner* of meaning; and nouns are sometimes used as adjectives and adjectives as nouns. This matter will be explained in the concluding part of this lecture, where you will be better prepared to comprehend it.

NOTES ON PHILOSOPHICAL GRAMMAR.

Perhaps no subject has, in this age, elicted more patient research, and critical investigation of original, constituent principles, formations, and combinations, than the English language. The legitimate province of philology, however, as I humbly conceive, has, in some instances, been made to yield to that of philosophy, so far as to divert the attention from the combinations of our language which refinement has introduced, to radical elements and associations which no way concern the progress of literature, or the essential use for which language was intended. Were this retrogressive mode of investigating and applying principles, to obtain, among philologists, the ascendency over that which accomodates the use of language to progressive refinement, it is easy to conceive the state of barbarism to which society would, in a short time, be reduced. Moreover if what some call the philosopy of language, were to supersede, altogether, the province of philology as it applies to the present, progressive and refined state of English literature, the great object contemplated by the learned, in all ages, namely, the approximation of language, in common with everything else, to that point of perfection at which it is the object of correct philology to arrive, would be frustrated.

The dubious and wildering track struck out by those innovators and visionaries who absurdly endeavour to teach modern English, by rejecting the authority and sanction of custom, and by conducting the learner back to the original combinations, and the detached, disjointed, and barbarous constructions of our progenitors, both prudence and reason, as well as a

Nouns are of two kinds, common and proper.

A *common noun* is the name of a sort or species of things; as *man, tree, river.*

A *proper noun* is the name of an individual; as *Charles, Ithaca, Ganges*

A noun signifying many is called a *collective noun,* or *noun of multitude;* as, the *people,* the *army.*

The distinction between a common and a proper noun is very obvious. For example: *boy* is a common noun, because it is a name applied to *all* boys; but *Charles* is a proper noun, because it is the name of an *individual* boy. Although many boys may have the same name, yet you know it is not a common noun, for the name Charles is *not* given to all boys. *Mississippi* is a proper noun, because it is the name of an individual river; but *river* is a common noun because it is the name of a *species* of things, and the name *river* is common to *all* rivers.

Nouns which denote the genus, species, or variety of beings or things, are always common; as *tree,* the genus; *oak ash, chesnut, poplar,* different species; and red *oak,* white *oak,* black *oak,* varieties. The word earth, when it signifies a

---

due regard for correct philology, impel me to shun. Those modest writers who, by bringing to their aid a little sophistry, much duplicity, and a wholesale traffic in the swelling phrases, "philosophy reason, and common sense," attempt to overthrow the wisdom of former ages, and show that the result of all the labours of those distinguished philologists who had previously occupied the field of grammatical science, is nothing but error and folly, will doubtless meet the neglect and contempt justly merited by such consummate vanity and unblushing pedantry. Fortunately for those who employ our language as their vehicle of mental conference, custom will not yield to the speculative theories of the visionary. If it would, improvement in English literature would soon be at an end, and we should be tamely conducted back to the Vandalic age.

As the use of what is commonly called the philosophy of language, is evidently misapplied by those who make it the test of *grammatical certainty,* it may not be amiss to offer a few considerations with a view to expose the fallacy of so vague a criterion.

All reasoning and investigation which depend on the philosophy of language for an ultimate result, must be conducted *a posteriori.* Its office, according to the ordinary mode of treating the subject, is to trace language to its origin, not for the purpose of determining and fixing grammatical associations and dependences, such as the agreement, government, and mutual relations of words, but in order to analyze combinations with a view to develop the first principles of the language, and arrive at the primitive meaning of words. Now, it is presumed, that no one who has

kind or quality of dirt, is a common noun; but when it denotes the planet we inhabit, it is a proper noun. The words person, place, river, mountain, lake, &c., are *common nouns*, because they are the names of whole *species*, or classes of things containing many sorts; but the *names* of persons, places, rivers, mountains, lakes, &c., are *proper nouns*, because they denote *individuals;* as Augustus, Baltimore, Alps, Huron.

Physician, *lawyer*, *merchant*, and *shoemaker*, are common nouns, because these names are common to classes of men. *God* and *Lord*, when applied to Jehovah or Jesus Christ, are proper; but when employed to denote heathen or false *gods*, or temporal *lords*, they are common.

The notes and remarks throughout the work, though of minor importance, demand your attentive and careful perusal.

NOTES.

1. When *proper* nouns have an article annexed to them, they are used after the manner of *common* nouns; as, "Bolivar is styled *the* Washington of South America."

2. *Common* nouns are sometimes used to signify *individuals*, when articles or pronouns are prefixed to them; as "*The* boy is studious; *That* girl is discreet." In such instances, they are nearly equivalent to proper nouns.

3. *Common* nouns are sometimes subdivided into the following classes; *Nouns of Multitude*, as The people, the Parliament; *Verbal or participial nouns*, as, The begining, reading, writing; and *Abstract nouns* or the names of qualities abstracted from their substances, as knowledge

---

paid critical attention to the subject, will contend, that the original import of single words has any relation to the syntactical dependances and connexions of words in general;—to gain a knowledge of which, is the leading object of the student in grammar. And, furthermore, I challenge those who have indulged in such useless vagaries, to show by what process, with their own systems, they can communicate a practical knowledge of grammar. I venture to predict, that, if they make the attempt, they will find their systems more splendid in theory, than useful in pratice.

Again, it cannot rationally be contended, that the radical meaning has any efficiency in controlling the signification which, by the power of association, custom has assigned to many words;—a signification *essentially different* from the original import. Were this the case, and were the language now to be taught and understood in compliance with the original import of words, it would have to undergo a thorough change; to be analyzed, divided and subdivided, almost *ad adfinitum*. Indeed, there is the same propriety in asserting, that the Gothic, Danish, and Anglo-Saxon elements in our language, ought to be pronounced separately, to enable us to understand our vernacular tongue, that there is in contending. that their primitive meaning has an ascendency over the influence of the principle of association in changing, and the power of custom in determining, the import of words. Many of our words are derived from the Greek, Roman, French, Spanish, Italian, and German languages; and

virtue, goodness. Lest the student be led to blend the idea of abstract nouns with that of adjectives, both of which denote qualities, a further illustration appears to be necessary, in order to mark the distincton between these two parts of speech. An abstract noun denotes a quality considered *apart* (that is abstracted) *from* the substance or being to which it belongs; but an adjective denotes a quality *joined* (adjected) to the substance or being to which it belongs. Thus, *whiteness* and *white* both denote the same quality; but we speak of whiteness as a distinct object of thought, while we use the word *white* always in reference to the noun to which it belongs; as *white* paper, *white* house.

4. Some authors have proceeded to still more minute divisions and subdivisions of nouns; such, for example, as the following, which appear to be more complex than useful: *Natural nouns*, or names of things formed by nature; as, man, beast, water, air; 2. *Artificial nouns*, or names of things formed by art; as, book, vessel, house: 3. *Personal nouns*, or those which stand for human beings; as, man, woman, Edwin; 4. *Neuter nouns*, or those which denote things inanimate; as, book, field, mountain, Cincinnati. The following, however, is quite a rational division: *Material nouns* are the names of things formed of matter; as stone, book: *Immaterial nouns* are the names of things having no substance; as, hope, immortality.

---

the only use we can make of their originals, is to render them subservient to the force of custom in cases in which general usage has not varied from the primitive signification. Moreover, let the advocates of a mere philosophical investigation of the language, extend their system as far as a radical analysis will warrant them, and with Horne Tooke, not only consider adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections, as abbreviations of nouns and verbs, but, on their own responsibility, apply them in teaching the language, *in compliance with their radical import*, and what would such a course avail them against the power of custom, and the influence of association and refinement? Let them show me one grammarian, produced by such a course of instruction, and they will exhibit a "philosophical" miracle. They might as well undertake to teach architecture, by having recourse to its origin, as represented by booths and tents. In addition to this, when we consider the great number of obsolete words, from which many now in use are derived, the original meaning of which cannot be ascertained, and, also, the multitude whose signification has been changed by the principle of association, it is preposterous to think, that a mere philosophical mode of investigating and teaching the language, is the one by which its singinificancy can be enforced, its correctness determined, its use comprehended, and its improvement extended. Before what commonly passes for a philosophical manner of developing the language can successfully be made the medium through which it can be comprehended in all its present combinations, relations, and dependances, it must undergo a thorough retrogressive change, in all those combinations, relations, and dependances, even to the last letter of the alphabet. And before we can consent to this radical modification and retrogade ratio of the English language, we must agree to revive the customs, the habits, and the precise language of our progenitors, the Goths and Vandals. Were all the advocates for the introduction of such philosophical grammars into common schools, at once to enter on their pilgrimage, and recede into the native obscurity and barbarity of the ancient Britons, Picts,

To nouns belong gender, person, number, and case.

GENDER

GENDER is the distinction of sex. Nouns have three genders, the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

The *masculine gender* denotes males; as a *man*, a *boy*.

The *feminine gender* denotes females; as, *woman*, a *girl*.

The *neuter gender* denotes things without sex; as, a *hat*, a *stick*.

Neuter means *neither;* therefore neuter gender signifies neither gender; that is neither masculine nor feminine. Hence, neuter gender means *no gender*. Strictly speaking, then, as there are but two sexes, nouns have but *two* genders; but for the sake of practical convenience, we apply to them three genders, by calling that a gender which is *no* gender. The English and the pure Persian, appear to be the only language which observe, in the distinction of sex, the

---

and Vandals, it is believed, that the cause of learning and refinement would not suffer greatly by their loss, and that the good sense of the present age, would not allow many of our best teachers to be of the party.

The last consideration which I shall give a philosophical manner of investigating and enforcing the English language, is, that by this mode of analyzing and reducing it to practice, *it cannot, in this age, be comprehended,* as the medium of thought. Were this method to prevail, our present literal language would become a dead letter. Of what avail is language, if it cannot be understood? And how can it be accommodated to the understanding, unless it receive the sanction of common consent? Even if we admit that such a manner of unfolding the principles of our language, is more rational and correct than the ordinary, practical method, I think it is clear that such a mode of investigation and development does not meet the necessities and convenience of ordinary learners in school. To be consistent, that system which instructs by tracing a few of our words to their origin, must unfold the whole in the same manner. But the student in common schools and academies, cannot afford time to stem the tide of language up to its source, and there dive to the bottom of the fountain for knowledge. Such labour ought not to be required of him. His object is to become, not a philosophical antiquarian, but a practical grammarian. If I comprehend the design (if they have any) of our modern philosophical writers on this subject, it is to make grammarians by inculcating a few general principles, arising out of the genius of the language, and the nature of things, which the learner, by the exercise of his *reasoning powers*, must reduce to practice. His own judgment, *independent of grammar rules*, is to be his guide in speaking and writing correctly. Hence, many of them exclude from their systems, all exercises in what is called *false Syntax*. But these profound philological dictators appear to have overlooked the important consideration, that the great mass of mankind, and especially of boys and girls, in common schools *can never become philosophers;* and, consequently, can

natural divisions of nouns. The genders of nouns are so easily known, that a farther explanation of them is unnecessary, except what is given in the following

NOTES.

1. The same noun is sometimes masculine *and* feminine, and sometimes masculine *or* feminine. The noun *parents* is of the masculine *and* feminine gender. The nouns *parent, associate, neighbour, servant, friend, child, bird, fish,* &c., if doubtful, are of the masculine *or* feminine gender.

2. Some nouns naturally neuter, are, when used figuratively, or *personified*, converted into the masculine or feminine gender. Those nouns are generally rendered masculine, which are conspicuous for the attributes of imparting or communicating, and which are by nature strong and efficacious; as, the *sun, time, death, sleep, winter,* &c. Those, again, are generally feminine, which are conspicuous for the attributes of containing or bringing forth, or which are very beautiful, mild, or amiable; as, the *earth, moon, church, boat, vessel, city, country, nature, ship, soul, fortune, virtue, hope, spring, peace,* &c. This principle for designating the sex of a personified object, which is quite rational, is generally adhered to in

---

never comprehend and reduce to practice their metaphysical and obscure systems of grammar. I wish to see children treated as *reasoning* beings. But there should be a medium in all things. It is, therefore, absurd to instruct children as if they were already profound philosophers and logicians.

To demonstrate the utility, and enforce the necessity, of exercising the learned in correcting *false Syntax*, I need no other argument than the interesting and undeniable fact, that Mr. Murray's labours, in this department, have effected a complete revolution in the English language, in point of verbal accuracy. Who does not know, that the best writers of this day, are not guilty of *one* grammatical inaccuracy, where those authors who wrote before Mr. Murray flourished, are guilty of *five?* And what has produced this important change for the better? Ask the hundreds of thousands who have studied "Mr. Murray's exercises in FALSE SYNTAX." If, then, this view of the subject is correct, it follows that the greater portion of our philosophical grammars, are far more worthy the attention of literary connoisseurs, than of the great mass of learners.

Knowing that a strong predilection for what are termed philosophical grammars, exists in the minds fo some teachers of this science, I have thought proper, for the gratification of such, to intersperse through the pages of this work, under the head of "PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES," a system of grammatical principles as deducted from what appears to me to be the most rational and consistent investigations of this sort. They who perfer this theory to that exhibited in the body of the work, are, of course, at liberty to adopt it.

In general, these pretended, philosophical theories of grammar will be found to accord with the practical and still more philosophical theory embraced in the body of this work. Wherever such agreement exists, the system contained in these NOTES *will be deficient, and this deficiency may be supplied by adopting the principles contained in the other parts of the work.*

OF THE PHILOSOPHICAL CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

According to the method in which these philosophical investigations of language have generally been conducted, all our words should be reduced

the English language; but, in some instances, the poet applies the sex according to his fancy.

The masculine and feminine genders are distinguished in three ways:

1. *By different words;* as,

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*
Bachelor	maid	Boy	girl
Boar	sow	Brother	sister
Buck	doe	Lord	lady
Bull	cow	Man	woman
Cock	hen	Master	mistress
Dog	bitch	Milter	spawner
Drake	duck	Nephew	niece
Earl	countess	Ram	ewe
Father	mother	Singer	songstress or singer
Friar	nun		
Gander	goose	Sloven	slut
Hart	roe	Son	daughter
Horse	mare	Stag	hind
Husband	wife	Uncle	aunt
King	queen	Wizard	witch
Lad	lass	Sir	madam

2. *By a difference in termination;* as,

Abbot	abbess	Count	countess
Actor	actress	Czar	czarina
Administrator	administratrix	Deacon	deaconess
Adulterer	adulteress	Detracter	detractress
Ambassador	ambassadress	Director	directress
Arbiter	arbitress	Duke	duchess
Auditor	auditress	Elector	electress
Author	authoress	Embassador	embassadress
Baron	baroness	Emperor	empress
Benefactor	benefactress	Enchanter	enchantress
Bridegroom	bride	Executor	executrix
Canon	canoness	Fornicator	fornicatress
Caterer	cateress	God	goddess
Chanter	chantress	Governor	governess
Conductor	conductress	Heir	heiress

---

to two classes; for it can be easily shown, that from the noun and verb all the other parts of speech have sprung. Nay, more. They may even be reduced to one. Verbs do not, in reality, *express* actions; but they are intrinsically the mere *names* of actions. The idea of action or being communicated by them, as well as the *meaning* of words, is merely *inferential*. The principle of reasoning assumed by the celebrated Horne Tooke, if carried to its full extent, would result, it is believed, in proving that we have but one part of speech.

Adnouns or *adjectives* were originally nouns. *Sweet, red, white*, are the *names* of qualities, as well as *sweetness, redness, whiteness*. The former differs from the latter only in their *manner* of signification. To denote that the name of some quality or substance is to be used in connexion with some other name, or, that this quality is to be *attributed* to some other name, we sometimes affix to it the termination *en, ed*, or *y*; which signifies *give, add*, or *join*. When we employ the words wooden

Hero	heroine	Proprietor	proprietress
Host	hostess	Protector	protectress
Hunter	huntress	Shepherd	shepherdess
Inheritor	inheritress or inheritrix	Songster	songstress
		Sorcerer	sorceress
Instructer	instructress	Suiter	suitress
Jew	jewess	Sultan	sultaness or sultana
Lion	lioness		
Marquis	marchioness	Tiger	tigress
Mayor	mayoress	Testator	testatrix
Patron	patroness	Traitor	traitress
Peer	peeress	Tutor	tutoress
Poet	poetess	Tyrant	tyranness
Priest	priestess	Victor	victress
Prince	princess	Viscount	viscountess
Prior	prioress	Votary	votaress
Prophet	prophetess.	Widower	widow.

3. *By prefixing another word;* as,

A cock-sparrow	A hen-sparrow
A man-servant	A maid-servant
A he-goat	A she-goat
A he-bear	A she-bear
A male-child	A female-child
Male-descendants	Female-descendants

PERSON.

PERSON is a property of the noun and pronoun which varies the verb.

The *first person* denotes the speaker.

The *second person* denotes the person or thing spoken to; as, "Listen, O *earth!*"

The *third person* denotes the person or thing spoken of; as, "The *earth* thirsts."

Nouns have but *two* persons, the second and third. When a man speaks, the *pronoun I* or *we* is always used; therefore nouns can never be in the *first* person. In examples like the following, some

---

wooll*en*, wealth*y*, grass*y*, the terminations *en* and *y*, by their own intrinsic meaning, give notice that we intend to *give*, *add*, or *join*, the names of some other substances in which are found the properties or qualities of *wood*, *wool*, *wealth*, or *grass*.

Pronouns are a class of nouns, used instead of others to prevent their disagreeable repetition. Participles are certain forms of the verb. Articles, interjections, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are contractions or abbreviations of nouns and verbs. *An* (*a*, *ane*, or *one*) comes from *ananad*, to add, to heap. *The* and *that*, from the Anglo-Saxon verb *thean*, to get, assume. *Lo*, is the imperative of *look*; *fie*, of *fian*, to hate; and *welcome* means it is *well* that you are *come*. *In* comes from the Gothic noun *inna*, the interior of the body; and *about* from *boda*, the first outward boundary. *Through* or *thorough* is the Teutonic noun *thorough*, meaning passage, gate, door. *From* is the Anglo Saxon noun

philologists suppose the noun to be in the *first* person :—"This may certify, that I *Jonas Taylor*, do hereby give and grant," &c, But it is evident, that the speaker or writer, in introducing his own name, speaks *of* himself; consequently the noun is of the *third* person.

If you wish to understand the persons of nouns, a little sober thought is requisite; and, by exercising it, all difficulties will be removed. If I say, my *son*, have you seen the young man? you perceive that the noun *son* is of the *second* person, because I address myself *to* him; that is, he is spoken *to*; but the noun *man* is of the *third* person, because he is spoken *of*. Again, if I say, young *man*, have you seen my son? *man* is of the *second* person, and *son* is of the *third*.

"Hast thou left thy blue course in the heavens, golden-haired *sun* of the sky?"

"*Father*, may the Great Spirit so brighten the chain of friendship between us, that a child may find it, when the sun is asleep in his wig-wam behind the western waters."

"Lo, earth receives him from the bending skies!
Sink down, ye *mountains*, and, ye *valleys*, rise!"
"Eternal *Hope*, thy glittering wings explore
Earth's loneliest bounds, and ocean's wildest shore."

In these examples, the nouns, sun, father, mountains, valleys, and hope, are of the *second* person, and, as you will hereafter learn, in the

---

from, beginning, source, author. He came *from* (*beginning*) Batavia. *If* (formerly written *gif*, *give*, *gin*) is the imperative of the Anglo-Saxon verb *gifan*, to give. I will remain *if* (*give* or *grant that fact*) he will (*remain*.) *But* comes from the Saxon verb *beanutan*, to be out. I informed no one *but* (*be-out*, *leave-out*) my brother.

This brief view of the subject, is sufficient to elucidate the manner in which, according to Horne Tooke's principles, the ten parts of speech are reduced to one. But I am, by no means, disposed to concede, that this is the *true* principle of classification : nor that it is any more *philosophical* or *rational* than one which allows a more practical division and arrangement of words. What has been generally received as "philosophical grammar," appears to posses no stronger claims to that imposing appellation than our common, practical grammars. Query. Is not Mr. Murray's octavo grammar more worthy the dignified title of a "Philosophical Grammar," than Horne Tooke's "Diversions of Purley," or William S. Cardell's treatises on language? What constitutes a *philosophical* treatise, on this, or on any other subject? *Wherein* is there a display of philosophy in a speculative, etymological performance, which attempts to develop and explain the elements and primitive meanings of words by tracing them to their origin, *superior* to the philosophy employed in the development and illustration of the principles by which we are governed in applying those words to their legitimate purpose, namely, that of forming a correct and convenient medium by means of which we can communicate our thoughts? Does philosophy consist in ransacking the mouldy records of antiquity, in order to *guess* at the ancient construction and signification of single words? or have such investigations, in reality, any thing to do with *grammar*?

Admitting that all the words of our language include, in their *original*

nominative case independent. Course, heavens, sky, Spirit, chain, friendship, child, sun, wig-wam, waters, earth, skies, wings, earth, bounds, ocean, and shore, are all of the *third* person.

NUMBER.

NUMBER is the distinction of objects, as one or more. Nouns are of two numbers, the singular and the plural.

The *singular* number implies but one; as, a *book*.

The *plural* number implies more than one; as, *books*.

NOTES.

1. Some nouns are used only in the singular form; as, hemp, flax, barley, wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, honesty, meekness, compassion, &c; others only in the plural form; as, bellows, scissors, ashes, riches, snuffers, tongs, thanks, wages, embers, ides, pains, vespers.

2. Some words are the same in both numbers; as, deer, sheep, swine; and, also, hiatus, apparatus, series, species.

3. The plural number of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, dove, doves; face, faces; but sometimes we add *es* in the plural; as, box, boxes; church, churches; lash, lashes; cargo, cargoes.

4. Nouns ending in *f* or *fe*, are rendered plural by a change of that termination into *ves;* as, half, halves; wife, wives; except grief, relief, reproof, and several others, which form their plurals by the addition of *s*. Those ending in *ff*, have the regular plural; as, ruff, ruffs; except staff, staves.

5. Nouns ending in *y* in the singular, with no other vowel in the same syllable, change it into *ies* in the plural; as, beauty, beauties; fly, flies. But the *y* is not changed, where there is another vowel in the syllable; as, key, keys; delay, delays; attorney, attorneys; valley, valleys; chimney, chimneys.

6. *Mathematics*, *metaphysics*, *politics*, *optics*, *ethics*, *pneumatics*, *hydraulics*, &c. are constructed either as singular or plural nouns.

7. The word *news* is always singular. The nouns *means*, *alms*, and *amends*, though plural in form, may be either singular or plural in signification. Antipodes, credenda, literati, and minutiæ, are always plural. *Bandit* is now used as the singular of Banditti.

8. The following nouns form their plurals not according to any general rule, thus: man, men; woman, women; child, children; ox, oxen; tooth, teeth; goose, geese; foot, feet; mouse, mice; louse,

---

signification, the import of nouns or names, and yet, it does not follow that they *now* possess no other powers, and, in their combinations and connexions in sentences, are employed for no other purpose, than ***barely to name objects***. The *fact* of the case is, that words are variously combined and applied, to answer the distinct and diversified purposes of ***naming*** objects, ***asserting*** truths, ***pointing out*** and ***limiting*** objects, ***attributing qualities*** to objects, ***connecting*** objects, and so on; and on this

lice; brother, brothers or brethren; cow, cows or kine; penny, pence, or pennies when the coin is meant; die, dice *for play;* dies *for coining;* pea and fish, pease and fish when the species is meant, but *peas* and *fishes* when we refer to the number; as, six *peas*, ten *fishes.*

9. The following compounds form their plurals thus: handfull, handfuls; cupful, cupfuls; spoonful, spoonfuls;—brother-in-law, brothers-in-law; court-martial, courts-martial.

The following words form their plurals according to the rules of the languages from which they are adopted.

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Antithesis	antitheses	Genius	genii*
Apex	apices	Genus	genera
Appendix	appendixes or appendices	Hypothesis	hypotheses
		Ignis fatuus	ignes fatui
Arcanum	arcana	Index	indices or indexes†
Automaton	automata		
Axis	axes	Lamina	laminæ
Basis	bases	Magus	magi
Beau	beaux or beaus	Memorandum	memoranda or memorandums
Calx	calces or calxes	Metamorphosis	metamorphoses
		Parenthesis	parentheses
Cherub	cherubim or cherubs	Phenomenon	phenomena
		Radius	radii or radiuses
Crisis	crises		
Criterion	criteria	Stamen	stamina
Datum	data	Seraph	seraphim or seraphs
Diæresis	diæreses		
Desideratum	desiderata	Stimulus	stimuli
Effluvium	effluvia	Stratum	strata
Ellipsis	ellipses	Thesis	theses
Emphasis	emphases	Vertex	vertices
Encomium	encomia or encomiums	Vortex	vortices or vortexes
Erratum	errata		

* Genii, imaginary spirits; geniuses, persons of great mental abilities.

† Indexes, when pointers or tables of contents are meant; indices, when referring to algebraic quantities.

CASE.

CASE, when applied to nouns and pronouns, means the different state, situation, or position they have in relation

---

fact is founded the *true philosophical principle of the classification of words.* Hence, an arrangement of words into classes according to this principle, followed by a deveopment and illustration of the principles and rules that regulate us in the proper use and application of words in oral and written discourse, appears to approximate as near to a true definition of *philosophical grammar* as any I am capable of giving.

Nouns, or the names of the objects of our perceptions, doubtless constituted the original class of words; (if I may be allowed to assume such

to other words. Nouns have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective

I deem the essential qualities of *case*, in English, to consist, not in the *changes* or *inflections* produced on nouns and pronouns, but in the various offices which they perform in a sentence, by assuming different positions in regard to other words. In accordance with this definition, these cases can be easily explained on reasoning principles, founded in the nature of things.

Now, five grains of common sense will enable any one to comprehend what is meant by case. Its real character is extremely simple; but in the different grammars it assumes as many meanings as Proteus had shapes. The most that has been written on it, however, is mere verbiage. What, then, is meant by *case*? In speaking of a horse, for instance, we say he is a good *case*, when he is fat, and in a bad *case*, when he is lean, and needs more oats; and in this sense we apply the term *case* to denote the *state* or *condition* of the horse. So, when we place a noun before a verb as actor or subject, we say it is in the *nominative case;* but when it follows a transitive verb or preposition, we say it has another *case;* that is, it assumes a new *position* or *situation* in the sentence: and this we call the *objective* case. Thus, the *boy* gathers fruit. Here the boy is represented as *acting*. He is, therefore, in the *nominative* case. But when I say, Jane struck the *boy*, I do not represent the boy as the *actor*, but as the *object* of the action. He is, therefore, in a new *case* or *condition*. And when I say, This is the *boy's* hat, I do not speak of the boy either as *acting* or as *acted upon;* but as possessing something: for which reason he is in the *possessive* case. Hence, it is clear that nouns have three cases or positions.

As the nominative and objective cases of the noun are inseparably connected with the verb, it is impossible for you to understand them until you shall have acquired some knowledge of this part of speech. I will, therefore, now give you a partial description of the verb in connexion with the noun; which will enable me to illustrate the cases of the noun so clearly, that you may easily comprehend their nature.

In the formation of language, mankind, in order to hold converse

---

a hypothesis as an *original* class of words;) but the ever active principle of association soon transformed nouns into verbs, by making them, when employed in a particular manner, expressive of affirmation. The same principle also operated in appropriating names to the purpose of attributing qualities to other names of objects; and in this way was constituted the class of words called *adjectives* or *attributes*. By the same principle were formed all the other classes.

In the following exposition of English grammar on scientific principles, I shall divide words into *seven* classes, *Nouns* or *Names*, *Verbs*, *Adjectives*, *Adnouns*, or *Attributes*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Pronouns*, and *Conjunctions*, or *Connectives*.

For an explanation of the noun, refer to the body of the work.

with each other, found it necessary, in the first place, to give *names* to the various objects by which they were surrounded. Hence the origin of the first part of speech, which we denominate the *noun*. But merely to name the objects which they behold or thought of, was not sufficient for their purpose. They perceived that these objects existed, moved, acted, or caused some action to be done, In looking at a man for instance, they perceived that he lived, walked, ate, smiled, talked, ran, and so on. They perceived that plants grow, flowers bloom, and rivers flow. Hence the necessity of another part of speech, whose office it should be to express those existences and actions. This second class or words we call.

VERBS.

A VERB is a word which signifies to BE, to DO, or to SUFFER; as I *am*; I *rule*; I *am ruled*.

Verbs are of three kinds, active, passive, and neuter. They are also divided into regular, irregular, and defective.

The term *verb* is derived from the Latin word *verbum*, which signifies a *word*. This part of speech is called a *verb* or *word*, because it is deemed the most important word in every sentence; and without a verb and nominative, either expressed or implied, no sentence can exist. The noun is the original and leading part of speech; the verb comes next in order, and is far more complex than the noun. These two are the most useful in the language, and form the basis of the science of grammar. The other eight parts of speech are subordinate to these two, and as you will hereafter learn, of minor importance.

For all practical purposes, the foregoing definition and division of the verb, though, perhaps, not philosophically correct, will be found as *convenient* as any other. I adopt them, therefore, to be consistent with the principle, that, in arranging the materials of this treatise, I shall not alter or reject any established definition, rule, or principle of grammar, unless, in my humble judgment, some *practical advantage* to the learner is thereby gained. The following some consider a good definition.

A VERB is a word which *expresses affirmation*.

An *active verb* expresses action; and

The *nominative case* is the actor, or subject of the verb; as, *John writes*.

In this example, which is the *verb?* You know it is the word *writes*, because this word signifies to *do*; that is, it expresses *action*, therefore, according to the definition, it is an *active verb*. And you know, too, that the noun *John* is the *actor*, therefore John is the *nominative case* to the verb writes. In

the expressions, The man walks; The boy plays; Thunders roll; Warriors fight, you perceive that the words *walks*, *plays*, *roll*, and *fight*, are *active verbs;* and you cannot be at a loss to know that the nouns *man*, *boy*, *thunders*, and *warriors*, are in the *nominative case*.

As no *action* can be produced without some agent or moving cause, it follows that every active verb must have some *actor* or *agent*. This *actor*, *doer*, or *producer of the action*, is the nominative. *Nominative*, from the Latin *nomina*, literally signifies to *name;* but in the technical sense in which it is used in grammar it means the noun or pronoun which is the *subject* of affirmation. This subject or nominative may be *active*, *passive*, or *neuter*, as hereafter exemplified.

A *neuter verb* expresses neither action nor passion, but *being* or *a state of being;* as *John sits*.

Now, in this example, *John* is not represented as *an actor*, but as the *subject* of the verb *sits*, therefore John is in the *nominative case* to the verb. And you know that the word *sits* does

---

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

Plausible arguments may be *advanced*, for rejecting *neuter* and passive verbs, but they have been found to be so convenient in practice, that the theory which recognises them, has stood the test of ages. If you tell the young learner, that, in the following expressions, The church *rests* on its foundation; The book *lies*, on the desk; The boys *remain*, (*are*,) idle, the nouns *church*, *book*, and *boys*, are represented as acting, and, therefore, the verbs *rests*, *lies remain*, and *are*, are *active*, he will not believe you, because there is no action that is apparent to his senses. And should you proceed farther, and, by a laboured and metaphysical investigation and development of the laws of motion, attempt to prove to him that "every portion of matter is influenced by different, active principles, tending to produce change," and, therefore, everything in universal nature is *always* acting, it is not at all probable, that you could convince his *understanding*, in opposition to the clearer testimony of his senses. Of what avail to learners is a theory which they cannot comprehend?

Among the various theorists and speculative writers on philosophical grammar, the ingenious Horne Tooke stands pre-eminent; but, unfortunately, his principal speculations on the verb, have never met the public eye. William S. Cardell has also rendered himself conspicuous in the philological field, by taking a bolder stand than any of his predecessors. His view of the verb is novel, and ingeneously supported, The following is the substance of his theory.

OF THE VERB.

A VERB is a word which expresses *action;* as, Man *exists;* Trees *grow;* Waters *flow;* Mountains *stand;* I *am*.

All verbs are active, and have one object or more than one, expressed or implied. The pillar *stands;* that is, it *keeps itself* in an erect or standing posture; it *upholds* or *sustains itself* in that *position*. They

not express *apparent action*, but a *condition of being ;* that is, it represents John in a particular *state of existence;* therefore *sits* is a *neuter verb*. In speaking of the neuter gender of nouns, I informed you that *neuter* means *neither ;* from which it follows that neuter gender implies neither gender ; that is, neither masculine nor feminine. Hence, by an easy transition of thought, you learn that *neuter*, when applied to verbs, means neither of the other two classes ; that is, a *neuter* verb is one which is neither active nor passive. In these examples, The man stands ; the lady lives ; the child sleeps ; the world exists ; the words *stands*, *lives sleeps*, and *exists*, are *neuter verbs ;* and the nouns *man*, *lady*, *child*, and *world*, are all in the *nominative case*, because each is the *subject* of a verb. Thus, you perceive that when a noun is in the nominative case to an *active* verb, it is the *actor ;* and when it is nominative to a *neuter* verb, it is *not* an actor, but the *subject* of the verb.

Some neuter verbs express *being in general ;* as, The man *is ;* Kingdoms *exist*. Others express *being in some particular state ;* as, The man *stands*, *sits*, *lies*, or *hangs*.

I will now give you two *signs*, which will enable you to distinguish the verb from other parts of speech, when you cannot tell it by its signification. Any word that will make sense with *to* before it is a verb. Thus, to run to write, to smile, to sing, to hear, to ponder, to live, to breathe, are verbs. Or, any word that will *conjugate* is a verb. Thus, I run, thou runnest, he runs ; I write, thou writest, he writes ; I smile, &c. But the words boy, lady, child, and world will not make sense with *to* prefixed : *to* boy, *to* lady, *to* world is nonsense. Neither will they *conjugate*, I lady, thou ladiest, &c., is worse than nonsense. Hence, you perceive that these words are *not* verbs. There are some exceptions to these rules, for verbs are sometimes used as nouns. This will be explained by and by.

To verbs belong *number*, *person*, *mood*, and *tense*.

At present I shall speak only of the number and person of verbs ; but hereafter I will give you a full explanation of all

are ; i. e. they *air* themselves, or *breathe* air ; they *inspirit*, *vivify*, or *uphold* themselves by inhaling air.

Many verbs whose objects are seldom expressed, always have a personal or verbal one implied. The clouds *move;* i. e., move *themselves* along. The troops *marched* twenty miles a day ; i. e. marched *themselves*. The moon *shines :*—The moon *shines* or *sheds* a *shining*, *sheen*, *lustre*, or *brightness*. The sparrow *flies* : —*flies* or takes a *flight*. Talkers talk

their properties. And permit me to inform you that I shall not lead you into the *intricacies* of the science, until, by gradual and easy progressions, you are enabled to comprehend the principles involved in them. Only such principles will be elucidated as you are prepared to understand at the time they are unfolded before you. You must not be too anxious to get along *rapidly;* but endeavour to become thoroughly acquainted with one principle, before you undertake another. This lecture will qualify you for the next.

NUMBER AND PERSON OF VERBS. You recollect that the nominative is the *actor* or *subject* and the active verb is the *action* performed by the nominative. By this, you perceive that a very intimate connexion or relation exists between the nominative case and the verb. If, therefore, only *one* creature or thing acts, only *one* action, at the same instant, can be done; as, The *girl writes*. The nominative *girl* is here of

---

or speak *words* or *talk;* Walkers walk *walkings* or *walks:* The rain rains *rain;* Sitters sit or hold *sittings* or *sessions.*

To prove that there is no such thing as a neuter verb, the following appear to be the strongest arguments adduced.

1. No portion of matter is ever in a state of perfect quiescence; but the component parts of everything are at all times "influenced by different active principles, tending to produce change." Hence, it follows, that no being or thing can be represented in a *neuter* or *non-acting state.*

This argument supposes the essential character of the verb to be identified with the primary laws of action, as unfolded by the principles of physical science. The correctness of this position may be doubted; but it it can be clearly demonstrated, that every particle of matter is always in motion, it does not, by any means, follow, that we cannot *speak of* things in a state of quiescence. What is *false* in fact may be *correct* in grammar. The point contested, is not whether things always *act*, but whether, when we assert or affirm something respectiug them, we always *represent* them as acting.

2 Verbs were *originally* used to express the motions or changes of things which produced obvious actions, and, by an easy transition, were afterwards applied, in the same way, to things whose actions were not apparent.

This assumption is untenable, and altogether gratuitous.

3. Verbs called neuter are used in the imperative mood; and, as this mood commands some one to *do* something, any verb which adopts it, must be active. Thus, in the common place phrases, "*Be* there quickly; *Stand* out of my way; *Sit* or *lie* farther."

It is admitted that these verbs are here employed in an *active* sense; but it is certain, that they are not used according to their proper, *literal* meaning. When I tell a man *literally* to *stand, sit* or *lie* by *moving*, he would disobey me; but when I say, "*Stand* out of my way," I employ the neuter verb *stand*, instead of the active verb *move* or *go*, and in a corresponding sense. My meaning is, "*Move* yourself out of my way; or *take* your *stand* somewhare else. This, however, does not prove that

the singular number, because it signifies but one person; and the verb *writes* denotes but one action, which the girl performs; therefore the verb *writes* is of the *singular* number, agreeing with its nominative *girl*. When the nominative case is *plural*, the verb must be *plural;* as, *girls write*. Take notice, the *singular* verb ends in *s*, but the noun is generally *plural* when it ends in *s;* thus, The girl *writes;* The *girls* write.

Person, strictly speaking, is a quality that belongs *not* to *verbs*, but to nouns and pronouns. We say, however, that the verb must agree with its nominative in *person*, as well as in number; that is, the verb must be spelled and spoken in such a manner as to correspond with the *first*, *second*, or *third* person of the noun or pronoun which is its nominative.

I will now show you how the verb is varied in order to agree with its nominative in number and person. I, Thou, He, She, It; We, Ye or You, They, are *personal pronouns*. *I* is of the *first* person, and *singular* number; *Thou* is *second* person *singular;* *He*, *She* or *It*, is *third* person *singular;* *We* is *first* person *plural;* *Ye* or *You* is *second* person *plural;* *They* is *third* person *plural*. These pronouns are the representatives of nouns, and perform the same office that the nouns would for which they stand. When placed before the verb, they are, therefore, the *nominatives* to the verb.

Notice, particularly, the different variations or endings of the verb, as it is thus conjugated in the

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. *Person* I walk,	1. *Person* We Walk,
2. *Person* Thou walk*est*,	2. *Person* Ye or You walk,
3. *Person* He walks, or the boy walks, or walketh.	3. *Person* They walk, or the boys walk.

This display of the verb shows you, that whenever it ends in *est*, it is of the *second* person *singular;* but when the verb ends

stand is properly used. If we choose to overstep the bounds of custom, we can employ any *word* in the language as an active-transitive verb. *Be*, *sit*, and *lie*, may be explained in the same manner.

4. Neuter verbs are used in connexion with adverbs which express the manner of *action*. They must, therefore, be considered active verbs. The child *sleeps soundly;* He *sits genteelly;* They *live contentedly* and *happily* together

The class of verbs that are never employed as active, is small. By using adverbs in connexion with verbs, we can fairly prove that some verbs are *not* active. It is incorrect to say, I am *happily;* They were *peacefully;* She remains *quietly;* The fields appear *greenly*. These verbs in their

in *s*, or *eth*, it is of the *third* person singular. *Walkest, ridest, standest,* are of the second person singular; and *walks* or *walketh, rides* or *rideth, stands,* or *standeth,* are of the third person singular.

I have told you that when the nominative is singular number, the verb must be; when the nominative is plural, the verb must be; and when the nominative is first, second, or third person, the verb must be of the same person. If you look again at the foregoing conjugation of *walk*, you will notice that the verb varies its endings in the *singular*, in order to agree in *form* with the first, second, and third person of its nominative; but in the *plural* it does not vary its endings from the first person singular. The verb, however, agrees in *sense* with its nominative in the plural, as well as in the singular. Exercise a little mind, and you will perceive that *agreement* and *government* in language do not consist *merely* in the *form* of words. Now, is it not clear, that when I say, I *walk*, the verb walk is *singular*, because it expresses but *one* action? And when I say, Two men *walk*, is it not equally apparent that walk is *plural*, because it expresses *two* actions? In the sentence, Ten men *walk*, the verb *walk* denotes *ten* actions, for there are ten actors. Common sense teaches you that there must be as many *actions* as there are *actors;* and that the verb, when it has *no form* or *ending* to show it, is as strictly plural as when it has. So, in the phrase *We* walk,

---

common acceptation, do not express *action;* for which reason we say, I am *happy;* They were *peaceful;* &c. But in the expressions, The child sleeps *soundly;* She sits *gracefully;* They live *happily* and *contentedly;* we employ the verbs *sleeps, sits,* and *live, in an active sense.* When no action is intended, we say, They live *happy* and *contented.*

If, on scientific principles, it can be proved that those verbs generally denominated neuter, *originally* expressed action, their present, accepted meaning will still oppose the theory, for the generality of mankind do not attach to them the idea of *action.*

Thus I have endeavoured to present a brief but impartial abstract of the *modern* theory of the verb, leaving it with the reader to estimate it according to its value.

To give a satisfactory definition of the verb, or such a one as shall be found scientifically correct and unexceptionable, has hitherto baffled the skill, and transcended the learning, of our philosophical writers. If its essential quality, as is generally supposed, is made to consist in *expressing affirmation*, it remains still to be defined *when* a verb *expresses* affirmation. In English, and in other languages, words appropriated to express affirmation, are often used without any such force; our idea of affirmation, in such instances, being the mere *inference of custom.*

In the sentence,—"*Think, love,* and *hate,* denote moral actions," the words *think, love,* and *hate,* are nouns, because they are mere *names* of

the verb walk is *first* person, because it expresses the actions performed by the *speakers: Ye* or *you* walk, the verb is *second* person, denoting the actions of the persons *spoken to;* third person, *They* walk. The verb, then, when correctly written, always agrees, in *sense*, with it nominative in number and person.

At present you are learning two parts of speech, neither of which can be understood without a knowledge of the other. It therefore becomes necessary to explain them both in the same lectures. You have been already informed that nouns have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective.

Possessive Case. The *possessive case* denotes the possessor of something; as, This is *John's* horse

This expression implies that *John* is the *owner* or *possessor* of the horse; and that horse is the *property* which he possesses.

When I say, These are the *men's*, and those the *boys'* hats, the two words "boys' hats" plainly convey the idea, if they have any meaning at all, that the boys *own* or *possess* the hats. "Samuel Badger sells *boys'* hats." Who *owns* the hats? Mr. Badger. How is that fact ascertained? Not by the words "boys' hats," which, taken by themselves, imply, not that they are *Mr. Badger's* hats, nor that they are *for* boys, but that they are hats *of*, or *belonging to*, or *possessed by* boys. But we *infer* from the *words connected* with the phrase "boys' hats" that the

---

actions. So, when I say, "John, *write* —— is an irregular verb," the word *write* is a noun; but when I say, "John, *write* —— your copy," *write* is called a verb. Why is this word considered a noun in one construction, and a verb in the other, when both constructions, until you pass beyond the word write, are exactly alike? If write does not *express* action in the former sentence, neither does it in the latter, for, in both, it is introduced in the same manner. On scientific principles, *write* must be considered a noun in the latter sentence, for it does not *express* action, or make an affirmation; but it merely *names* the action which I wish John to perform, and affirmation is the *inferential* meaning.

The verb in the infinitive, as well as in the imperative mood, is divested of its affirmative or verbal force. In both these moods, it is always presented in its *noun state*.

If, after dinner, I say to a servant, "*Wine*," he infers, that I wish him to bring me wine; but all this is not said. If I say, *Bring* some *wine*, he, in like manner understands, that I wish him to bring me wine; but all that is expressed, is the *name* of the action, and of the object of the action. In fact, as much is done by *inference*, as by actual expression, in every branch of language, for thought is too quick to be wholly transmitted by words.

It is generally conceded, that the terminations of our verbs, *est, eth, s, ed*, and, also, of the other parts of speech, were originally separate

boys are not yet, as the phrase literally denotes, in the actual possession of the hats: the possession is anticipated.

In the phrases *fine* hats, *coarse* hats, *high-crowned* hats, *broad-brimmed* hats, *woollen*, *new*, *ten*, *some*, *these*, *many* hats, the words in italics are adjectives, because they restrict, qualify, or define the term *hats;* but the term *boys'* does not *describe* or limit the meaning of *hats*. *Boys'*, therefore, is not, as some suppose, an adjective.

"The *slave's* master." Does the slave possess the master? Yes. The slave *has* a master. If he *has* him, then he *possesses* him: he sustains that relation to him which we call possession.

A noun in the possessive case, is always known by its having an apostrophe, and generally an *s* after it; thus *John's* hat; the *boy's* coat. When a plural noun in the possessive case, ends in *s*, the apostrophe is added, but no additional *s;* as, "*Boys'* hats; *Eagles'* wings." When a singular noun ends in *ss*, the apostrophe only is added; as, "For *goodness'* sake; for *righteousness'* sake:" except the word witness; as, "The *witness's* testimony." When a noun in the possessive case ends in *ence*, the *s* is omitted, but the apostrophe is retained; as, "For *conscience'* sake."

Now please to turn back, and read over this and the preceding lectures *three* times, and endeavour, not only to understand, but, also, to *remember*, what you read. In reading, proceed thus: read one sentence over slowly, and then look off the book, and repeat it two or three times over in your

words of distinct meaning; and that, although *they* have been contracted, and, by the refinement of language, have been made to coalesce with the words in connexion with which they are employed, yet, in their present character of terminations, they retain their primitive meaning and force. To denote that a verbal name was employed as a verb, the Saxons affixed to it a verbalizing adjunct; thus, *the* (to take, hold) was the noun-state of the verb; and when they used it as a verb, they added the termination *an;* thus, the*an*. The termination added, was a sign that *affirmation* was intended. The same procedure has been adopted, and in many instances, is still practised, in our language. *An*, originally affixed to our verbs in the progress of refinement, was changed to *en*, and finally dropped. A few centuries ago, the plural number of our verbs were denoted by the termination *en;* thus, they *weren*, they *loven;* but, as these terminations do not supersede the necessity of expressing the *subject* of affirmation, as is the case in the Latin and Greek verbs, they have been laid aside, as unnecessary excrescences. For the same reason, we might, without any disparagement to the language, dispense with the terminations of our verbs in the singular.

In support of the position, that those terminations were once separate words, we can trace many of them to their origin. To denote the femi-

mind. After that take another sentence and proceed in the same manner, and so on through the whole lecture. Do not presume to think, that these directions are of no real consequence to you; for, unless you follow them strictly, you need not expect to make rapid progress. On the other hand, if you proceed according to my instructions, you will be sure to acquire a practical knowledge of grammar in a short time.—When you shall have complied with this requisition, you may commit the following *order of parsing a noun*, and *the order of parsing a verb;* and then you will be prepared to parse or analyze the following examples.

ANALYSIS OR PARSING.

Do you recollect the meaning of the word *analysis?* If you do not, I will explain it: and first, I wish you to remember, that analysis is the reverse of synthesis. *Synthesis* is the act of combining simples so as to form a whole or compound. Thus, in putting together letters so as to form syllabes, syllables so as to form words, words so as to form sentences, and sentences so as to form a discourse, the process is called synthetic. *Analysis*, on the contrary, is the act of decomposition; that is, the act of separating any thing compounded into its simple parts, and thereby exhibiting its elementary principles. Etymology treats of the analysis of language. To analyze a sentence, is to separate from one another and classify the different words of which it is composed; and to analyze or *parse* a word, means to enumerate and describe all its various

---

nine gender of some nouns, we affix *ess;* as heir*ess*, instruct*ress*. *Ess* is a contraction of the Hebrew noun *essa*, a female. Of our verbs, the termination *est* is a contracti n of *doest; eth*, of *doeth; s*, of *does*. We say, thou *dost* or *doest* love; or thou lov*est;* i. e, love-*dost*; or love-*doest*. Some believe these terminations to be contractions of *havest, haveth, has* We affix *ed*, a contraction of *dede*, to the present tense of verbs to denote that the action named, is, *dede, did doed*, or *done*.

To and *do*, from the Gothic noun *taui*, signifying *act* or *affect*, are, according to Horne Tooke, nearly alike in meaning and force; and when the custom of affixing some more ancient verbalizing adjunct, began to be dropped, its place and meaning were generally supplied by prefixing one of these. When I say, "I am going *to walk*," the verbal or affirmative force is conveyed by the use of *to*, meaning the same as *do;* and *walk* is employed merely as a verbal name; that is, I assert that I shall *do* the act which I name by the word *walk*, or the act of *walking*.

Perhaps such speculations as these will prove to be more curious than profitable. If it be made clearly to appear, that, on scientific principles, whenever the verbal name is unaccompanied by a verbalizing adjunct, it is in the *noun-state*, and does not express affirmation, still this theory would be very inconvenient in practice.

I shall resume the subject in Lecture XI.

properties, and its grammatical relations with respect to other words in a sentence, and trace it through all its inflections or changes. Perhaps, to you, this will, at first, appear to be of little importance; but, if you persevere, you will hereafter find it of great utility, for parsing will enable you to detect, and correct, eorrors in composition.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The *order of parsing* a NOUN, is—a noun, and why?—common, proper, or collective, and why?—gender, and why?—person, and why?—number, and why?—case, and why?—RULE: decline it.

The order of parsing a VERB, is—a verb, and why?—active, passive or, neuter, and why?—if *active*—transitive or intransitive, and why?—if *passive*—how is it formed?—regular, irregular, or defective, and why?—mood, and why?—tense, and why?—person and number, and why?—with what does it agree?—RULE;—conjugate it.

I will now parse two nouns according to the order, and, in so doing, by applying the definitions and rules, I shall answer all those questions given in the order. If you have *perfectly committed* the order of parsing a noun and verb, you may proceed with me; but, recollect, you cannot parse a verb *in full*, until you shall have had a more complete explanation of it.

John's hand trembles.

John's is a noun, [because it is] the name of a person—proper, the name of an individual—masculine gender, it denotes a male—third person, spoken of—singular number, it implies but one—and in the possessive case, it denotes possession—it is governed by the noun "hand," according to.

RULE 12. *A noun or pronoun in the possessive case is governed by the noun it possesses.*

Declined—Sing. nom. John, poss. John's, obj. John. Plural—nom. Johns, poss. Johns', obj. Johns.

Hand is a noun, the name of a thing—common, the name of a sort or species of things—neuter gender, it denontes a thing without sex—third person, spoken of—sing. number, it implies but one—and in the nominative case, it is the actor

and subject of the verb "trembles," and governs it agreeably to

RULE 3. *The nominative case governs the verb:*—that is, the nominative determines the number and person of the verb.

Declined—Sing. nom. hand, poss. hand's, obj. hand. Plur. nom. hands, poss. hands', obj. hands.

Trembles is a verb, a word which signifies to do—active, it expresses action—third person, singular number, because the nominative "hand" is with which it agrees, according to

RULE 4. *The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.*

You must not say that the verb is of the third person because *it is spoken of.* The verb is never spken of; but it is of the third person, and singular or plural number, because its nominative is.

Conjugated—First pers. sing. I tremble, 2 pers. thou tremblest, 3 pers. he trembles, or, the hand trembles. Plural, 1 pers. we tremble, 2 pers. ye or you tremble, 3 pers. they or the hands tremble.

Government, in language, consists in the power which one word has over another, in causing that other word to be in some *particular case, number, person, mood,* or *tense.*

ILLUSTRATION.

RULE 3 *The nominative case governs the verb.*

If you employ the pronoun I, which is of the *first* person, singular number, as the nominative to a verb, the verb must be of the first pers. sing. thus, I *smile;* and when your nominative is *second* pers. sing. your verb must be; as, thou smil*est.* Why, in the latter instance, does the ending of the verb change to *est*? Because the nominative changes. And if your nominative is *third* person, the verb will vary again; thus, he smile*s*, the man smile*s*. How clear it is, then, that *the nominative governs the verb;* that is, the nominative has power to change the *form* and *meaning* of the verb, in respect to number and person. Government, thus far, is evinced in the *form* of the words, as well as in the sense.

RULE 4. *The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.*

It is improper to say, thou *hear*, the men *hears.* Why improper? Because *hear* is *first* pers. and the nominative *thou* is *second* pers.; *hears*, is singular, and the nom. *men* is *plural.* Rule 4th says, *The verb must agree with its nominative.* The expressions should, therefore, be, thou hear*est* the men *hear;*

and then the verb would *agree* with its nominatives. But *why* must the verb agree with its nominative? Why must we say, thau talk*est*, the man talk*s*, men *talk*? Because the genius of our language, and the common consent of those who speak it, *require* such a construction; and this *requisition* amounts to a *law* or *rule*. This *rule*, then is founded in *the nature of things*, and sanctioned by *good usage*.

RULE 12. *A noun or pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the noun which it possesses.*

It is correct to say, The *man* eats, *he* eats; but we cannot say, The *man* dog eats, *he* dog eats. Why not? Because the man is here represented as the *possessor*, and *dog*, the *property*, or *thing possessed;* and the genius of our language requires, that when we add to the possessor, the *thing* which he is represented as possessing, the possessor shall take a particular form to show its *case*, or *relation to the property;* thus, The *man's* dog eats, *his* dog eats. You perceive, then, that the *added* noun, denoting the thing possessed, has power *to change the form* of the noun or pronoun denoting the possessor, according to Rule 12; thus, by adding dog, in the preceding examples, *man* is changed to *man's* and *he* to *his*.

Now parse the sentence which I have parsed, until the manner is quite familar to you; and then you will be prepared to analyze correctly and *systematically*, the following exercises. When you parse, you may spread the Compendium before you; and, if you have not already committed the definitions and rules, you may read them on that, as you apply them. This mode of procedure will enable you to learn *all* the definitions and rules by applying them to practice.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Rain descends—Rains descend—Snow falls—Snows fall—Thunder rolls—Thunders roll—Man's works decay—Men's labours cease—John's dog barks—Eliza's voice trembles—Julia's sister's child improves—Peter's cousin's horse limps.

In the next place, I will parse a noun and a *neuter* verb, which verb, you will notice, differs from an active only in one respect.

"*Birds repose* on the branches of trees."

Birds is a noun, the name of a thing or creature—common, the name of a genus or class—masculine and feminine gender, it denotes both males and females—third person, spoken of—plural number, it implies more than one—and in the nominative case, it is the *subject* of the verb "repose," and governs

it according to Rule 3. *The nom. case governs the verb.* Declined—Sing. nom. bird, poss. bird's, obj. bird. Plural nom. birds, poss. birds', obj. birds.

Repose is a verb, a word that signifies to *be*—neuter, it expresses neither action or passion, but a state of being—third person, plural number, because the nominative "birds" is with which it agrees, agreeably to Rule 4. *The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.*

Conjugated—1 pers. sing. I repose, 2 pers. thou reposest, 3 per. he reposes, or the bird reposes. Plur. 1 pers. We repose, 2 pers. ye or you repose, 3 pers. they repose, or the birds repose.

Now parse those nouns and neuter verbs that are distinguished by *italics*, in the following

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

The *book lies* on the desk—The *cloak hangs* on the wall—*Man's days are* few—*Cathmor's warriors sleep* in death—*Clatho reposes* in the narrow house—Jocund *day stands* tiptoe on the misty mountain tops. The *sunbeams rest* on the grave where her *beauty sleeps.*

You may parse these and the preceding exercises, and all that follow, *five or six times over*, if you please.

OBJECTIVE CASE.—ACTIVE TRANSITIVE VERBS.

The *objective* case expresses the object of an action or of a relation. It generally follows a transitive verb, a participle, or a preposition.

A noun is in the objective case when it is the *object* of something. At present I shall explain this case only as the object of an *action;* but when we shall have advanced as far as to the preposition, I will also illustrate it as the object of a *relation.*

An active verb is *transitive* when the action passes, over from the subject or nominative to an object: as Richard *strikes* John.

Transitive means *passing.* In this sentence the action of the verb *strikes* is *transitive*, because it *passes over* from the nominative Richard to the object John; and you know that the noun John is in the *objective* case, because it is *the object of the action* expressed by the active transitive verb strikes. This matter is very plain. For example: Gallileo invented the telescope. Now it is evident, that Gallileo did not exert his powers of invention, without some object in view. In order

to ascertain that object, put the question, Gallileo invented what? The telescope. *Telescope*, then, is the real object of the action, denoted by the transitive verb invented; and, therefore, telescope is in the objective case. If I say, The horse *kicks* the servant—Carpenters *build* houses—Ossian *wrote* poems—Columbus *discovered* America—you readily perceive, that the verbs *kicks*, *build*, *wrote*, and *discovered*, express transitive actions; and you cannot be at a loss to tell which nouns are in the objective case:—they are *servant*, *houses*, *poems*, and *America*.

The nominative and objective cases of nouns are generally known by the following rule: the nominative *does something*; the objective *has something done to it*. The nominative generally comes *before* the verb; and the objective, *after* it. When I say, George struck the servant, *George* is in the nominative, and *servant* is in the objective case; but, when I say, The servant struck George, *servant* is in the nominative case, and *George* is in the objective. Thus you perceive, that *Case* means the different state or situation of nouns with regard to other words.

It is sometimes very difficult to tell the case of a noun. I shall, therefore, take up this subject again, when I come to give you an explanation of the participle and preposition.

Besides the three cases already explained, nouns are sometimes in the nominative case *independent*, sometimes in the nominative case absolute, sometimes in apposition in the same case, and sometimes in the nominative or objective case after the neuter verb to *be*, or after an active-intransitive or passive verb. These cases are illustrated in Lecture X. and in the 21 and 22 Rules of Syntax.

ACTIVE-INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

An active verb is *transitive*, when the action terminates on an object: but

An active verb is *intransitive*, when the action does *not* terminate on an object; as, John *walks*.

You perceive that the verb *walks*, in this example, is *intransitive*, because the action does not pass over to an object; that is, the action is confined to the agent John. The following *sign* will generally enable you to distinguish a *transitive* verb from an *intransitive*. Any verb that will make sense with the words *a thing*, or *a person*, after it, is *transitive*. Try these verbs by the sign, *love*, *help*, *conquer*, *reach*, *subdue*, *overcome*, Thus, you can say, I love *a person or thing*—I can help *a person or thing*—and so on. Hence you know that these verbs are transitive. But an intransitive verb will not make sense with this sign, which fact will be shown by the following ex-

amples: *smile, go, come, play, bark, walk, fly.* We cannot say, if we mean to speak English, I smile *a person* or *thing*—I go *a person* or *thing*:—hence you perceive that these verbs are not transitive, but intransitive.

If you reflect upon these examples for a few moments, you will have a clear conception of the nature of transitive and intransitive verbs. Before I close this subject, however, it is necessary further to remark that some transitive and intransitive verbs express what is called a *mental* or *moral* action; and others, a *corporeal* or *physical* action. Verbs expressing the different affections or operations of the mind, denote moral actions; as, Brutus *loved* his country; James *hates* vice; We *believe* the tale: to *repent*, to *relent*, to *think*, to *reflect*, to *mourn*, to *muse*. Those expressing the actions produced by matter, denote physical actions; as, The dog *hears* the bell; Virgil *wrote* the Æneid; Columbus *discovered* America:—to *see*, to *feel*, to *taste*, to *smell*, to *run*, to *talk*, to *fly*, to *strike*. In the sentence, Charles *resembles* his father, the verb *resembles* does not appear to express any action at all; yet the construction of the sentence, and the office which the verb performs, are such, that we are obliged to parse it as an *active-transitive* verb, governing the noun *father* in the objective case. This you may easily reconcile in your mind, by reflecting, that the verb has a *direct reference* to its object. The following verbs are of this character, and express action in a *grammatical* sense only: for which reason it is sometimes called *grammatical* action: *Have, own, possess, retain;* as, I *have* a book.

Active intransitive verbs are frequently made *transitive.*

When I say, The birds *fly*, the verb *fly* is *intransitive*; but when I say, The boy *flies* the kite, the verb *fly* is *transitive*, and governs the noun *kite* in the objective case. Almost any active intransitive verb, and sometimes even neuter verbs, are used as transitive. The horse *walks* rapidly; The boy *runs* swiftly; My friend *lives* well; The man *died* of a fever. In all these examples the verbs are *intransitive*; in the following they are *transitive:* The man *walks* his horse; The boy *ran* a race; My friend *lives* a holy life; Let me *die* the death of the righteous.

The foregoing development of the character of verbs, is deemed sufficiently critical for practical purposes; but if we dip a little deeper into the verbal fountain, we shall discover qualities which do not appear on its surface. If we throw aside the veil which art has drawn over the real structure of speech, we shall find, that almost every verb has either a *personal* or a *verbal* object, expressed or implied. Verbal objects, which are the *effects* or *productions* resulting from the actions, being necessarily implied, are seldom expressed.

The fire *burns*. If the fire burns, it must burn *wood, coal, tallow,* or some other combustible substance. The man *laughs*. Laughs what? Laughs *laughter* or *laugh*. They *walk;* that is, They walk or take *walks*. Rivers flow (move or roll *themselves* or their *waters*) into the ocean.

"I *sing* the shady *regions* of the west."

"And *smile* the *wrinkles* from the brow of age."

The child *wept itself* sick; and then, by taking (or *sleeping*) a short *nap*, it *slept itself* quiet and well again. "He will soon *sleep* his everlasting *sleep*;" that is, "He will *sleep* the *sleep* of death."

Thinkers think *thoughts*; Talkers talk or employ *words*, *talk*, or *speeches*; The rain rains *rain*. "Upon Sodom and Gomorrah the Lord *rained fire* and *brimstone*." "I must *go* the whole *length*." "I shall soon *go* the *way* of all the earth."

Now please to turn back again, and peruse this lecture attentively; after which you may parse, systematically, the following exercises containing nouns in the three cases, and active-transitive verbs.

The printer *prints* books.

Prints is a verb, a word that signifies to do—active, it expresses action—transitive, the action passes over from the nominative "printer," to the object "books"—third pers. sing. numb. because the nominative printer is with which it agrees. RULE 4. *The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.*

Conjugated—1 pers. sing. I print 2 pers. thou printest, 3 pers. he prints, or the printer prints, and so on.

Books is a noun, the name of a thing—common, the name of a sort of things—neuter gender, it denotes a thing without sex—third person, spoken of—plural number, it implies more than one—and in the objective case, it is the object of the action, expressed by the active-transitive verb "prints," and is governed by it according to

RULE 20. *Active-transitive verbs govern the objective case.*

The noun *books* is thus declined—Singular nom. book, poss. book's, obj. book—Plural, nom. books, poss. books' obj. books.

RULE 20. Transitive verbs *govern* the objective case; that is, they *require* the noun or pronouns following them to be in that case; and this requisition is government. Pronouns have a particular *form* to suit each case, but nouns have not. We cannot say, She *struck he*; I gave the book *to they*. Why not? Because the genius of our language requires the pronoun following a transitive verb or preposition (*to* is a preposition) to assume that *form* which we call the *objective* form or case. Accordingly, the construction should be, She struck *him*; I gave the book to *them*.—Read, again, the illustration of "government" on page 52.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Nom. case.	*Trans. verb.*	*Poss. case.*	*Obj. case.*
Julius	prints	children's	primers.
Harriet	makes	ladies'	bonnets.
The servant	beats	the man's	horse.
The horse	kicks	the servant's	master.
The boy	struck	that man's	child.
The child	lost	those boys'	ball.
The tempest	sunk	those merchant's	vessels.
The gale	sweeps	the mountain's	brow.
Pope	translated	Homer's	Iliad.
Cicero	procured	Milo's	release.
Alexander	conquered	Darius'	army.
Nelson	met	the enemy's	fleet.
Washington	obtained	his country's	freedom.

NOTE 1. The words, *the*, *that*, *those*, and *his*, you need not parse.

2. A noun in the possessive case, is sometimes governed by a noun understood; as, Julia's lesson is longer than John's [lesson.]

As you have been analyzing nouns in their three cases, it becomes necessary to present, in the next place, the declension of nouns, for you must decline every noun you parse. *Declension* means putting a noun through the different cases: and you will notice, that the possessive case varies from the nominative in its termination, or ending, but the *objective* case ends like the nominative. The nominative and objective cases of nouns must, therefore, be ascertained by their situation in a sentence, or by considering the office they perform.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	king	kings	*Nom.*	man	men
Poss.	king's	kings'	*Poss.*	man's	men's
Obj.	king.	kings.	*Obj.*	man.	men.

Now, if you have parsed every word in the preceding examples, (except *the*, *that*, *those*, and *his*,) you may proceed with me, and parse the examples in the following exercises, in which are presented nouns and active-intransitive verbs,

"My *flock increases* yearly."

Flock is a noun, a name denoting animals—a noun of multitude, it signifies many in one collective body—masculine and feminine gender, denoting both sexes—third person, spoken of—singular number, it denotes but one flock—and in the nominative case, it is the active agent of the verb "increases," and governs it, according to RULE 3. *The nominative case governs the verb.* [Decline it.]

Increases is a verb, a word that signifies to do—active, it expresses action—intransitive, the action does not pass over to an object—of the third person, singular number, because its nominative "flock" conveys *unity* of idea; and it agrees with "flock," agreeably to

RULE 10. *A noun of multitude conveying unity of idea, must have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it in the singular.*

"The divided *multitude* hastily *disperse*."

Multitude is a noun, a name that denotes persons—a collective noun, or noun of multitude, it signifies many—masculine and feminine gender, it implies both sexes—third person, spoken of—singular number, it represents but one multitude, or collective body; (but in another sense, it is plural, as it conveys plurality of idea, and, also, implies more *individuals* than one;)—and in the nominative case, it is the actor and

subject of the verb "disperse," which it governs, according to RULE 3. *The nom. case governs the verb.*—Declined.—Sing. nom. multitude, poss. multitude's, obj. multitude.—Plur. nom. multitudes, poss. multitudes', obj. multitudes.

Disperse is a verb, a word that signifies to do—active, it expresses action—intransitive, the action does not terminate on an object—third person, plural number, because its nominative "multitude" conveys plurality of idea; and it agrees with "multitude" agreeably to

RULE 11. *A noun of multitude conveying plurality of idea, must have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it in the plural.*

RULES 10, and 11, rest on a sandy foundation. They appear not to be based on the principles of the language; and, therefore, it might, perhaps, be better to reject than to retain them. Their application is quite limited. In many instances, they will not apply to nouns of multitude. The existence of such a thing as "unity or plurality of idea," as applicable to nouns of this class, is *doubtful*. It is just as correct to say, "The *meeting was* divided in *its* sentiments," as to say, "The *meeting were* divided in *their* sentiments." Both are equally supported by the genius of the language, and by the power of custom. It is correct to say, either that "The *fleet were* dispersed;" "The *council were* unanimous;" "The *council were* divided;" or that "The *fleet was* dispersed;" "The *council was* unanimous;" "The *council was* divided." But perhaps for the sake of euphony, in some instances, custom has decided in favour of a singular, and in others, of a plural construction, connected with words of this class. For example; custom gives a preference to the constructions, "My *people do* not consider;" "The *peasantry go* barefoot;" "The *flock is* his object;" instead of, "My *people doth* not consider;" "The *peasantry goes* barefoot;" "The *flock are* his object." In instances like these, the application of the foregoing rules *may* be of some use; but the constructions in which they do not apply, are probably more numerous than those in which they do.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Nom. case.	*Intran. verb.*	*Nom. case.*	*Intran. verb.*
Men	labour.	The sun	sets.
Armies	march.	The moon	rises.
Vessels	sail.	The stars	twinkle.
Birds	fly.	The rain	descends.
Clouds	move.	The river	flows.
Multitudes	perish.	The nation	mourns.

Your improvement in grammar depends, not on the number

of words which you parse, but on the *attention* which you give the subject. *You may parse the same exercises several times over.*

For the gratification of those who prefer it, I here present another

DIVISION OF VERBS.

Verbs are of two kinds,, transitive and intransitive.

A verb is transitive when the action affects an object; as, "Earthquakes *rock* kingdoms; thrones and palaces *are shaken* down; and potentates, princes, and subjects, *are buried* in one common grave."

The nominative to a passive verb, is the *object*, but not the *agent* of the action.

A verb is intransitive when it has no object; as, "The waters *came* upon me;" "I *am* he who *was*, and *is*, and *is* to *come*."

As an exercise on what you have been studying, I will now put to you a few questions, all of which you ought to be able to answer before you proceed any farther.

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

With what two general divisions of grammar does the second lecture begin?—Of what does Etymology treat?—Of what does Syntax treat?—On what is based the true principles of classification?—How do you ascertain the part of speech to which a word belongs?—What is meant by its *manner* of meaning?—Name the ten parts of speech.—Which of these are considered the most important?—By what sign may a noun be distinguished?—How many kinds of nouns are there?—What belong to nouns?—What is gender?—How many genders have nouns?—What is person?—How many persons have nouns?—What is number?—How many numbers have nouns?—What is case?—How many cases have nouns?—Does case consist in the *inflections* of a noun?—How many kinds of verbs are there?—By what sign may a verb be known?—What belong to verbs?—What is synthesis?—What is analysis?—What is parsing?—Repeat the order of parsing the noun.—Repeat the order of parsing the verb.—What rule do you apply in parsing a noun in the possessive case?—What rule, in parsing a noun in the nominative case?—What rule applies in parsing a verb?—What is meant by government?—Explain rules 3. 4, and 12.—By what rule are the nominative and objective cases of nouns known?—By what sign can you distinguish a transitive from an intransitive verb?—Do transitive verbs ever express a *moral* action?—Are intransitive and neuter verbs ever used as transitive?—Give some examples of transitive verbs with *personal* and *verbal* objects.—What rule do you apply in parsing a noun in the objective case?—Explain rule 20.—In parsing a verb agreeing with a noun of multitude conveying *plurality* of idea, what rule do you apply?

QUESTIONS ON THE NOTES.

Whether the learner be required to answer the following questions, or not, is of course, left *discretionary* with the teacher. The author takes the liberty to suggest the expediency of *not*, generally, enforcing such a requisition, *until the pupil goes through the book a second time.*

Name some participial nouns.—What are abstract nouns?—What is the distinction between abstract nouns and adjectives?—What are natural nouns?—Artificial nouns?—What is the distinction between *material* and *immaterial* nouns?—Are nouns ever of the masculine and feminine gender?—Give examples.—When are nouns, naturally neuter, converted into the masculine or feminine gender?—Give examples —Speak some nouns that are always in the singular number. —Some that are always plural.—Seak some that are in the same form in both numbers.—Name *all* the various ways of forming the plural number of nouns.—Of what number are the nouns *news*, *means*, *alms*, and *amends*?—Name the plurals to the following compound nouns, *handful*, *cupfull spoonful*, *brother-in-law*, *court-martial.*

QUESTIONS ON THE PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

What has usually been the object of philosophical investigations of language? (page 32)—Do the syntactical dependences and connexions of words depend on their *original* import?—Is the power of association and custom efficient in changing the radical meaning of some words?—Have words intrinsically a signification of their own; or is their meaning *inferential;* i. e. such as *custom* has assigned to them? (page 38.)—On what *fact* is based the true, philosophical principle of classification?—Define philosophical grammar.—Which is supposed to be the original part of speech?—How were the others formed from that?—How many parts of speech may be recognised in a scientific development and arrangement of the principles of our language?—Name them —What testimony have we that many things do not act? (page 43.)—Repeat some of the arguments in favour of, and against, the principle which regards all verbs as *active.*—In what moods are verbs used in their *noun-state?* (page 48.)—Give examples.— What is said of the terminations, *est*, *eth*, *s*, and *en*, and of the words, *be* and *do.*

REMARKS ON VERBS AND NOUNS.

You have already been informed, that verbs are the most important part of speech in our language; and to convince you of their importance, I now tell you, that you cannot express a *thought*, or communicate an *idea*, without making use of a verb, either expressed or implied. Verbs express, not only *the state* or *manner of being*, but, likewise, all the different *actions* and *movements* of all creatures and things, whether animate or inanimate. As yet I have given you only a partial description of this sort of words; but when you are better prepared to comprehend the subject, I will explain all their properties, and shew you the proper manner of using them.

A word that is generally a *noun*, sometimes becomes a *verb;* and a verb is frequently used as a *noun.* These changes depend on the

sense which the word conveys; or, rather, on the office it performs in the sentence; that is, the *manner* in which it is applied to things. For instance; *glory* is generally a noun; as, "The *glory* of God's throne." But if I say, I *glory* in religion; or He *glories* in wickedness, the word *glory* becomes a verb. The *love* of man is inconstant. In this sentence, *love* is a *noun;* in the next, it is a *verb:* They *love* virtue. He *walks* swiftly; Scavengers *sweep* the streets; The ship *sails* well. In these phrases, the words *walk*, *sweep*, and *sails*, are verbs; in the following they are nouns: Those are pleasant *walks;* He takes a broad *sweep;* The ship lowered her *sails.*

Thus you see, it is impossible for you to become a grammarian without exercising your judgment. If you have sufficient resolution to do this, you will, in a short time, perfectly understand the nature and office of the different parts of speech, their various properties and relations, and the rules of syntax that apply to them; and, in a few weeks be able to speak and write accurarely. But you must not take things for granted, without examining their propriety and correctness. No. You are not a mere *automaton*, or *boy-machine;* but a rational being. You ought, therefore, to *think* methodically, to *reason* soundly, and to *investigate* every principle critically. Don't be afraid to *think for yourself.* You know not the high destiny that awaits you. You know not the height to which you may soar in the scale of intellectual existence. Go on, then, boldly, and with unyielding perseverance; and if you do not gain admittance into the temple of fame, strive, at all hazards, to drink of the fountain which gurgles from its base.

EXERCISES IN FALSE SYNTAX.

NOTE 1, TO RULE 12. A noun in the possessive case, should always be distinguished by the apostrophe, or mark of elision; as, The *nation's* glory.

That girls book is cleaner than those boys books.

Not correct, because the nouns *girls* and *boys* are both in the possessive case, and, therefore, require the apostrophe, by which they should be distinguished; thus, "*girl's, boys'*," according to the preceding NOTE. [Repeat the note.]

Thy ancestors virtue is not thine.

If the writer of this sentence meant *one* ancestor, he should have inserted the apostrophe after *r*, thus, "*ancestor's;*" if more than one, after *s*, thus, "*ancestors'* virtue;" but, by neglecting to place the apostrophe, he has left his meaning ambiguous, and we cannot ascertain it. This, and a thousand other mistakes you will often meet with, demonstrate the truth of my declaration, namely, that, "without the knowledge and application of grammar rules, you will often speak and write in such a manner as not to be *understood.*" You may now turn back and re-examined the "illustration" of RULES 3, 4, and 12, on page 53, and then correct the following examples about *five* times over.

A mothers tenderness and a fathers care, are natures gift's for mans advantage. Wisdoms precept's form the good mans interest and happiness. They suffer for conscience's sake. He is reading Cowpers poems. James bought Johnsons Dictionary.

RULE 4. A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.

Those boys improves rapidly. The men labours in the field. Nothing delight some persons. Thou shuns the light. He dare not do it. They reads well.

I know you can correct these sentences without a rule, for they all have a harsh sound, which offends the ear. I wish you, however, to adopt the habit of correcting errors by applying rules; for, by-and-by, you will meet with errors in composition which you cannot correct, if you are ignorant of the applicati n of grammar rules.

Now let us clearly understand this 4th Rule. Recollect it applies to the *verb*, and not to the noun; therefore, in these examples the verb is ungrammatical. The noun *boys*, in the first sentence, is of the third person *plural*, and the verb *improves* is of the third person *singular;* therefore, Rule 4th, is violated, because the verb does not agree with its nominative in *number*. It should be, "boys *improve*." The verb would then be *plural*, and agree with its nominative according to the Rule. In the 4th sentence, the verb does not agee in *person* with its nominative. *Thou* is of the *second* person, and *shuns* is of the *third*. It should be, "thou *shunnest*," &c. You may correct the other sentences, and, likewise, the following exercises in

FALSE SYNTAX.

A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye. The number of inhabitants of the United States exceed nine millions. Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits delight some persons.

In vain our flocks and fields increase our store,
When our abundance make us wish for more.

While ever and anon, there falls
Huge heaps of hoary, moulder'd walls.

LECTURE III.

OF ARTICLES.

An article is a word prefixed to nouns to limit their signification; as, *a* man *the* woman.

There are only two articles, *a* or *an* and *the*. *A* or *an* is called the indefinite article. *The* is called the definite article.

The *indefinite article* limits the noun to one of a kind, but to no particular one; as, *a* house.

The *definite article* generally limits the noun to a particular object, or collection of objects; as, *the* house, *the* men.

The small claims of the article to a separate rank as a distinct part of speech, ought not to be admitted in a scientific classification of words. *A* and *the*, *this*, and *that*, *ten*, *few* and *fourth*, and many other words, are used to restrict, vary, or define the signification of the nouns to which they are joined. They might, therefore, with propriety, be ranked under the general head of *Restrictives*, *Indexes* or *Defining Adjectives*. But, as there is a marked distinction in their particular meaning and application, each class requires a separate explanation. Hence, no practical advantage would be gained, by rejecting their established classification as articles, numerals, and demonstratives, and by giving them *new* names. The character and application of *a* and *the* can be learned as soon when they are styled *articles*, as when they are denominated *specifying* or *defining adjectives*.

The history of this part of speech is very brief. As there are but two articles, *a* or *an* and *the*, you will know them wherever they occur.

A noun used without an article, or any other restrictive, is taken in its *general* sense; as, "*Fruit* is abundant;" "*Gold* is heavy;" "*Man* is born to trouble." Here we mean, fruit and gold *in general*; and *all men*, or *mankind*.

When we wish to limit the meaning of the noun to *one* object, but to no *particular* one, we employ *a* or *an*. If I say, "Give me *a* pen;" "Bring me *an* apple;" you are at liberty to fetch *any* pen or *any* apple you please. *A* or *an*, then, is *indefinite*, because it leaves the meaning of the noun to which it is applied, as far as regards the person spoken to, *vague*, or *indeterminate*; that is, *not definite*. But when reference is made to a *particular* object, we employ *the*; as, "Give me *the* pen;" "Bring me *the* apple, or *the* apples." When such a requisition is made, you are not at liberty to bring any pen or apple you please, but you must fetch the *particular* pen or, apple to which you know me to refer. *The* is, therefore called the *definite* article.

"*A* star appears." Here, the star referred to may be known as a *particular* star, *definite*, and distinguished from all others, in the mind of the *speaker*; but to the *hearer* it is left,

among the thousands that bedeck the vault of heaven, *undistinguished* and *indefinite*. But when the star has previously been made the subject of discourse, it becomes, in the minds of both speaker and hearer, a *definite* object, and he says, "*The* star appears;" that is, that *particular* star about which we were discoursing.

"Solomon built *a* temple" Did he build *any* temple, *undetermined which?* No; it was a *particular* temple, pre-eminently distinguished from all others. But *how* does it become a definite object in the mind of the *hearer?* Certainly not by the phrase "*a* temple," which indicates *any* temple, leaving it altogether *undetermined* which; but supposing the person addressed was totally unacquainted with the fact asserted, and it becomes to him, *in one respect only*, a definite and particular temple, by means of the associated words "Solomon built"; that is, by the use of these words in connexion with the others, the hearer gets the idea of a temple distinguished as *the one erected by Solomon*. If the speaker were addressing one whom he supposed to be unacquainted with the fact related, he might make the temple referred to a still more definite object in the mind of the hearer, by a further explanation of it; thus, "Solomon built *a* temple *on Mount Zion;* and that was *the* temple *to which the Jews resorted to worship.*"

"*The* lunatic, *the* poet, and *the* lover,
"Are of imagination all compact."

"*The* horse is a noble animal;" "*the* dog is a faithful creature;" "*the* wind blows;" "*the* wolves were howling in *the* woods." In these examples we do not refer to any particular lunatics, poets, lovers, horses, dogs, winds, wolves, and woods, but we refer to these *particular classes* of things, in contradistinction to other objects or classes. The phrase, "Neither *the* one nor the other," is an idiom of the language.

REMARKS.—This method of elucidating the articles, which is popular

---

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

A, AN, THE.

In a scientific arrangement of grammatical principles, *a* and *the* belong to that class of adjectives denominated *definitives* or *restrictives*.

A, an, ane, or *one*, is the past participle of *ananad*, to add, to join. It denotes that the thing to which it is prefixed is *added, united aned, an-d, oned* (*woned*), or made *one*.

The and *that*. According to Horne Tooke, *the* is the imperative, and *that* the past participle of the Anglo-Saxon verb *thean*, to get, take, assume. *The* and *that* had originally the same meaning: the difference in their present application is a modern refinement. Hence *that*, as well as *the*, was formerly used, indifferently, before either a singular or a plural noun.

with Blair, Priestley, Lowth, Johnson, Harris, Beattie, Coote, Murray, and many other distinguished philologists, is discarded by some of our modern writers. But, by proving that this theory is exceptionable, they by no means make it appear that it ought, therefore, to be rejected.

Exceptionable or not, they have not been able to supply its place with one that is more *convenient in practice*. Neither have they adopted one *less* exceptionable. The truth is, after all which can be done to render the definitions and rules of grammar comprehensive and accurate, they will still be fo nd, when critically examined by men of learning and science, more or less exceptionable. These exceptions and imperfections are the unavoidable consequence of the imperfections of the language. Language, as well as every thing else of human invention, will always be *imperfect*. Consequently, a *perfect* system of grammatical principles would not suit it. A *perfect* grammar will not be produced, until some *perfect* being writes it for a *perfect* language; and a perfect language will not be constructed until some *super-human* agency is employed in its production. All grammatical principles and systems which are not *perfect* are *exceptionable*.

NOTES.

1. The article is *omitted* before nouns implying the different virtues, vices, passions, qualities, sciences, arts, metals, herbs, &c.; as, "*Modesty* is becoming, *Falsehood* is odious; *Grammar* is useful," &c.

2. The article is not prefixed to proper nouns; as, *Barron* killed *Decatur;* except by way of eminence, or for the sake of distinguishing a particular family, or when some noun is understood; as, "He is not *a* Franklin, he is *a* Lee, or of the family of *the* Lees; We sailed down *the* (river) Missouri."

3. An *adjective* is frequently placed between the article and the noun with which the article agrees; as, "A *good* boy; an *industrious* man." Sometimes the adjective precedes the article; as, "As *great* a man as Alexander; *Such* a shame."

4. In referring to many individuals, when we wish to bring each separately under consideration, the indefinite article is sometimes placed between the adjective *many* and a singular noun; as, "Where *many a rosebud* rears its blushing head;" Full *many a flower* is born to blush unseen."

5. The definite article *the* is frequently applied to *adverbs* in the comparative or superlative degree; as, "*The more* I examine it, *the better* I like it; I like this *the least* of any"

You may proceed and parse the following articles, when you shall have committed this.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing an Article is—an article, and why?—definite or indefinite, and why?—with what noun does it agree?—RULE.

"He is *the* son of *a* king."

The is an article, a word prefixed to a noun, to limit its signification—definite, it limits the noun to a particular object—it belongs to the noun "son," according to

RULE 2. *The definite article* the *belongs to nouns in the singular or plural number.*

A is an article, a word placed before a noun to limit its signification—indefinite, it limits the noun to one of a kind, but to no particular one—it agrees with "king," agreeably to

RULE 1. *The article* a *or* an *agrees with nouns in the singular number only.*

NOTE—By considering the original meaning of this article, the propriety of Rule 1 will appear. *A* or *an* (formerly written *ane*) being equivalent to *one*, *any one*, or *some one*, cannot be prefixed to nouns in the plural number. There is, however, an exception to this rule. *A* is placed before a plural noun when any of the following adjectives come between the article and the noun: *few*, *great*, *many*, *dozen*, *hundred*, *thousand*, *million*; as, *a* few *men*, *a* thousand *houses*, &c.

After having parsed these articles several times over, please to read this third lecture *three* times; then turn back, and examine the *second* lecture critically, observing to parse every example according to the directions previously given, which will prepare you to parse systematically all the articles, nouns, and verbs in these subsequent

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

A bird sings. An eagle flies. Mountains stand. The multitude pursue pleasure. The reaper reaps the farmer's grain. Farmers mow the grass. Farmers' boys spread the hay. The clerk sells the merchant's goods. An ostrich outruns an Arab's horse. Cecrops founded Athens. Gallileo invented the telescope. James Macpherson translated Ossian's poems. Sir Francis Drake circumnavigated the globe. Doctor Benjamin Franklin invented the lightning-rod. Washington Irving wrote the Sketch Book.

I will now offer a few remarks on the misapplication of the articles, which, with the exercise of your own discriminating powers, will enable you to use them with propriety. But, before you proceed, please to answer the following

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

How many articles are there? In what sense is a noun taken, when it has no article to limit it? Repeat the *order* of parsing an article.—What rule applies in parsing the *definite* article? What rule in parsing the *indefinite*?

QUESTIONS ON THE NOTES.

Before what nouns is the article omitted? Is the article *the* ever applied to adverbs? Give examples. What is the meaning of *a* or *an*? When is *a* or *an* placed before a plural noun? From what are *a*, *the*, and *that* derived?

EXERCISES IN FALSE SYNTAX.

NOTE TO RULE 1. *An* is used before a vowel or silent *h*, and *a* before a consonant or *u* long, and also before the word *one*.

It is not only disagreeable to the ear, but, according to this note im-

proper to say *a* apple, *a* humble suppliant, *an* hero, *an* university, because the word *apple* begins with a vowel, and *h* is not sounded in the word *humble*, for which reasons *a* should be *an* in the first two examples; but, as the *h* is sounded in *hero*, and the *u* is long in *university*, *a* ought to be prefixed to these words: thus, *an* apple, *an* humble suppliant; *a* hero, *a* university. You may correct the following

EXAMPLES.

A enemy, a inkstand, a hour, an horse, an herald, an heart, an heathen, an union, a umbrella, an useful book, many an one. This is an hard saying. They met with an heavy loss. He would not give an hat for an horse.

NOTE 1, TO RULE 2. The articles are often properly omitted: when used they should be justly applied, acording to their distinct character; as, "Gold is corrupting; *The* sea is green; *A* lion is bold." It would be improper to say, *The* gold is corrupting; Sea is green; Lion is bold.

The grass is good for horses, and wheat for the men. Grass is good for the horses, and the wheat for men. Grass looks well. Wheat is blighted.

In the first of these sentences we are not speaking of any particular kind of *grass* or *wheat*, neither do we wish to limit the meaning to any particular crop or field of grass, or quantity of wheat; but we are speaking of grass and wheat generally, therefore the article *the* should be omitted. In the second sentence we do not refer to any definite kind, quality, or number of *horses* or *men*: but to horses and men generally; that is, the terms are here used to denote *whole species*; therefore the article should be omitted, and the sentence should read thus, "Grass is good for horses, and wheat for men."

In the third and fourth examples, we wish to limit our meaning to the crops of *grass* and *wheat* now on the ground, which, in contradistinction to the crops heretofore raised, are considered as particular objects; therefore we should say, "*The* gra s looks well; *The* wheat is blighted."

NOTE 2. When a noun is used in its *general* sense, the article should be omitted; as, "*Poetry* is a pleasing art;" "*Oranges* grow in New Orleans."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Corn in the garden, grows well; but corn in the field, does not. How does the tobacco sell? The tobacco is dear. How do you like the study of the grammar? The grammar is a pleasing study. A candid temper is proper for the man. World is wide. The man is mortal. And I persecuted this way unto the death. The earth, the air, the fire, and the water, are the four elements of the old philosophers,

---

LECTURE IV.

OF ADJECTIVES.

AN ADJECTIVE is a word added to a noun, to express its quality or kind, or to restrict its meaning; as, a *good*

man; a *bad* man; a *free* man; an *unfortunate* man; *one* man; *forty* men.

In the phrases, a *good* apple, a *bad* apple, a *large* apple, a *small* apple, a *red* apple, a *white* apple, a *green* apple, a *sweet* apple, a *sour* apple, a *bitter* apple, a *round* apple, a *hard* apple, a *soft* apple, a *mellow* apple, a *fair* apple, a *May* apple, an *early* apple, a *late* apple, a *winter* apple, a *crab* apple, a *thorn* apple, a *well-tasted* apple, an *ill-looking* apple, a *water-cored* apple, you perceive that all those words in *italics* are adjectives, because each expresses some quality or property of the noun apple, or it shows what *kind* of an apple it is of which we are speaking.

The distinction between a *noun* and an *adjective* is very clear. A noun is the *name* of a thing; but an adjective denotes simply the *quality* or *property* of a thing. This is *fine cloth*. In this example, the difference between the word denoting the *thing*, and that denoting the *quality* of it, is easily perceived. You certainly cannot be at a loss to know that the word *cloth* expresses the *name*, and *fine* the *quality* of the *thing*; consequently *fine* must be an *adjective*. If I say, He is a *wise* man, a *prudent* man, a *wicked* man or an *ungrateful* man, the words in *italics* are adjectives, because each expresses a *quality* of the noun man. And if I say, He is a *tall* man, a *short* man, a *white* man, a *black* man, or a *persecuted* man, the words *tall*, *short*, *white*, *black*, and *persecuted* are also adjectives, because they tell what *kind* of a man he is of whom I am speaking, or they attribute to him some particular property.

Some adjectives *restrict* or *limit* the signification of the nouns to which they are joined, and are, therefore, sometimes called *definites*; as, *one* era, *seven* ages, the *first* man, the *whole* mass, *no* trouble, *those* men, *that* book, *all* regions.

Other adjectives *define* or *describe* nouns, or do both; as, *fine* silk, *blue* paper, a *heavy* shower, *pure* water, *green* mountains, *bland* breezes, *gurgling* rills, *glass* window, *window* glass, *beaver* hats, *chip* bonnets, *black-berry* ridge, *Monroe* garden, *Juniata* iron, *Cincinnati* steam-mill.

Some adjectives are *secondary*, and qualify other adjectives; as, *pale* red lining, *dark* blue silk, *deep sea* green sash, *soft* iron blooms, *red hot* iron plate.

You will frequently find the adjective placed after the noun; as, "Those *men* are *tall*; A *lion* is *bold*; The *weather* is *calm*; The *tree* is three feet *thick*."

Should you ever be at a loss to distinguish an adjective from the other parts of speech, the following sign will enable you to tell it. Any word that will make sense with the word *thing* added, or with any other noun following it, is an adjective; as, a *high* thing, a *low* thing, a *hot* thing, a *cold* thing, an *unfinished* thing, a *new-fashioned* thing; or, a *pleasant* prospect, a *long-deserted* dwelling, an *American* soldier, a *Greek* Testament. Are these words adjectives, *distant*, *yonder*, *peaceful*, *long-sided*, *double-headed?* A distant *object* or *thing*, yonder *hill*, &c. They are. They will make sense with a noun after them. Adjectives sometimes become adverbs. This matter will be explained in Lecture VI. In parsing, you may generally know an adjective by its *qualifying a noun or pronoun.*

Most words ending in *ing* are *present participles.* These are frequently used as adjectives; therefore, most participles will make sense with the addition of the word thing, or any other noun, after them; as, a *pleasing* thing, a *moving* spectacle, *mouldering* ruins.

In the Latin language, and many others, adjectives, like nouns, have gender, number and case; but in the English language they have neither gender, person, number, nor case. These properties belong to *creatures* and *things*, and not to their *qualities;* therefore gender, person, number, and case are the properties of *nouns*, and *not* of adjectives.

Adjectives are varied only to express the degrees of comparison. They have three degrees of comparison, the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

ADNOUNS.

Adnoun or *Adjective*, comes from the Latin, *ad* and *adjico* to *add to.*

Adnouns are a class of words added to nouns to vary their comprehension, or to determine their extension. Those which effect the former object, are called *adjective*, or *attributes;* and those which effect the latter, *restrictives.* It is not, in all cases, easy to determine to which of these classes an adnoun should be referred. Words which express simply the *qualities* of nouns are adjectives; and such as denote their *situation* or *number*, are restrictives.

Adjectives were originally nouns or verbs.

Some consider the adjective, in its present application, *exactly* equivalent to a noun connected to another noun by means of juxtaposition, of a preposition, or of a corresponding flexion. "A *golden* cup," say they, "is the same as a *gold* cup, or a cup *of gold.*" But this principle appears to be exceptionable. "A cup *of gold*," may mean either a cup-*full* of gold, or a cup *made* of gold. "An *oaken* cask," signifies an *oak* cask, or a cask *of oak;* i. e. a cask *made* of oak; but a *beer* cask, and a cask *of beer*, are two different things. A *virtuous* son; a son *of virtue.*

The *positive degree* expresses the quality or an object without any increase or diminution; as, *good, wise, great.*

The *comparative degree* increases or lessens the positive in signification; as, *better, wiser, greater, less wise.*

The *superlative degree* increases or lessens the positive to the highest or lowest degree; as, *best, wisest, greatest, least wise.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

More and *most* form the comparitive and superlative degrees by increasing the positive; and *less* and *least* by diminishing it.

Comparison by increasing the positive.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
great,	greater,	greatest.
wise,	wiser,	wisest.
holy,	more holy,	most holy.
frugal,	more frugal,	most frugal.

Comparison by dimishing the positive.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
wise,	less wise,	least wise
holy,	less holy,	least holy.
frugal,	less frugal,	least frugal.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Words used in counting are called *numeral adjectives* of the *cardinal* kind; as, *one, two, three, four, twenty, fifty,* &c.

The distinguishing characteristic of the adjective, appears to consist in its both *naming* a quality, and *attributing* that quality to some object.

The terminations *en, ed,* and *ig,* (our modern *y,*) signifying *give, add, join,* denote that the names of qualities to which they are postfixed, are to be attributed to other nouns possessing such qualities: wood-*en,* wood-*y* See page 38.

Left is the past participle of the verb *leave.* Horne Tooke defines *right* to be that which is *ordered* or *directed.* The *right* hand is that which your parents and custom direct you to use in preference to the other. And when you employ that in preference, the other is the *leaved, leav'd* or *left* hand; i. e. the one *leaved* or *left.* "The one shall be taken, and the other (*leaved*) *left.*"

Own. Formerly, a man's *own* what he *worked for, own* being a past participle of a verb signifying to *work.*

Restrictives. Some restrictives, in modern times, are applied only to singular nouns; such as *a* or *an, another, one, this, that, each every, either.* Others, only to plural nouns; as, *these, those, two, three, few, several, all.* But most restrictives, like adjectives, are applied to both

Words used in numbering are called *numeral adjectives* of the *ordinal* kind; as, *first, second, third, fourth, twentieth, fiftieth,* &c.

NOTE. The words *many, few,* and *several,* as they always refer to an indefinite number, may be properly called *numeral adjectives* of the indefinite kind.

NOTES.

1. The simple word, or Positive, becomes the Comparative by adding *r* or *er;* and the Positive becomes the Superlative by adding *st* or *est* to the end of it; as, Pos. wise, Com. wise*r*, Sup. wise*st;* rich, riche*r*, riche*st;* bold, bold*er*, bold*est*. The adverbs *more* and *most, less* and *least,* when placed before the adjective, have the same effect; as, Pos. wise, Com. *more* wise, Sup. *most* wise; Pos. wise, Com. *less* wise, Sup. *least* wise.

2. *Monosyllables* are generally compared by adding *er* and *est; dissyllables, trisyllables,* &c., by *more* and *most;* as, mild, milder mildest, frugal, more frugal, most frugal; virtuous, more virtuous, most virtuous; Dissyllables ending in *y;* as, happy, lovely; and in *le* after a mute; as, able, ample; and dissyllables accented on the last syllable; as, discreet, polite, easily admit of *er* and *est;* as, happi*er*, happi*est;* polite*r*, polite*st*. Words of more than two syllables very seldom admit of these terminations.

3. When the positive ends in *d* or *t*, preceded by a *single* vowel, the consonant is doubled in forming the comparative and superlative degrees; as, red, *redder, reddest;* hot, *hotter, hottest*.

4. In some words the superlative is formed by adding *most* to the end of them; as, nethermost, uttermost or utmost, undermost, uppermost, foremost.

5. In English, as in most languages, there are some words of very common use (in which the caprice of custom is apt to get the better of analogy) that are irregular in forming the degrees of comparison; as,

---

singular and plural nouns; *first, second, last, the former, latter, any, such, same, some, which, what*.

Numerals. All numeration was, doubtless, originally performed by the fingers, for the number of the fingers is still the utmost extent of its signification. *Ten* is the past participle of *tynan,* to close, to shut in. The hands *tyned, tened,* closed, or shut in, signified *ten;* for there numeration closed. To denote a number greater than ten, we must begin again; *ten* and *one, ten* and *two,* &c.

Twain, (*twa-in, twa-ain, twa-ane,*) is a compound of *two,* (*twa, twae, twee, twi, two,* or *dwo* or *duo*) and *one,* (*ane, ain, an.*) It signifies *two* units *joined, united, aned,* or *oned*. *Twenty* (*twa-ane-ten*) signifies *two tens, aned, oned,* or *united*. Things *separated* into parcels of twenty each, are called *scores*. *Score* is the past participle of *shear,* to *separate*.

The Ordinals are formed like abstract nouns in *eth*. *Fifth, sixth,* or *tenth,* is the number which *fiv-eth, six-eth, ten-eth,* or mak-*eth* up the number *five, six,* or *ten*.

Philosophical writers who limit our acceptation of words to that in which they were *originally* employed, and suppose that all the complicated, yet often definable, association which the gradual progress of language and in-

"Good, better, best; bad, worse, worst; little, less, least; much or many, more, most; near, nearer, nearest or next; late, later, latest or last; old, older or elder, oldest or eldest;" and a few others.

6. The following adjectives, and many others, are always in the *superlative* degree, because, by expressing a quality in the highest degree, they carry in themselves a superlative signification: *chief, extreme, perfect, right, wrong, honest, just, true, correct, sincere, vast, immense, ceaseless, infinite, endless, unparalleled, universal, supreme, unlimited, omnipotent, all-wise, eternal.*

7. Compound adjectives, and adjectives denoting qualities arising from the figure of bodies, do not admit of comparison: such as *well-formed, frost-bitten, round, square, oblong, circular, quadrangular, conical,* &c.

8. The termination *ish* added to the adjectives expresses a slight degree of quality below the comparative; as, *black, blackish; salt, saltish. Very*, prefixed to the comparative, expresses a degree of quality, but not always a superlative degree.

Read this Lecture carefully, particularly the NOTES; after which you may parse the following adjectives and neuter verb, and, likewise, the examples that follow. If you cannot repeat all the definitions and rules, spread the Compendium when you parse. But, before you proceed, please to commit the

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing an ADJECTIVE is—an adjective,

---

tellect has connected with words, are to be reduced to the *standard of our forefathers*, appear not to have sufficiently attended to the *changes* which this principle of association actually produces. As language is transmitted from generation to generation, many words become the representatives of ideas with which they were not originally associated; and thus they undergo a change, not only in the *mode* of their application, but also in their meaning. Words being the signs of things, their meaning must necessarily change as much, *at least*, as things themselves change; but this variation in their import more frequently depends on accidental circumstances. Among the ideas connected with a word, that which was once of primary, becomes only of secondary importance; and sometimes, by degrees, it loses altogether its connexion with the word, *giving* place to others with which, from some accidental causes, it has been associated.

Two or three instances will illustrate the truth of these remarks. In an ancient English version of the New Testament. we find the following language:—"I, Paul, a *rascal* of Jesus Christ, unto you Gentiles," &c. But who, in the present acceptation of the word, would dare to call "the great apostle of the Gentiles" a *rascal?* *Rascal* formerly meant a *servant;* one devoted to the interest of another; but now it is nearly synonymous with *villain*. *Villain* once had none of the odium which is now associated with the term; but it signified one who, under the feudal system, rented or held lands of another. Thus, Henry the VIII. says to a vassal or tenant, "As you are an accomplished *villian*, I order that you receive £700 out of the public treasury." The word *villian*, then, has given up its original idea, and become the representative of a new one, the word *tenant* having supplanted it. To prove that the meaning of words *changes*, a thousand examples could be adduced; but with the intelligent reader, proof is unnecessary.

and why?—compare it—degree of comparison, and why?—to what noun does it belong?—RULE.

"That *great* nation *was* once *powerful;* but now it is *feeble.*"

Great is an adjective, a word added to a noun to express its quality—pos. great, comp. greater, sup. greatest—it is in the positive degree—it expresses the quality of an object without any increase or diminution, and belongs to the noun "nation," according to

RULE 18. *Adjectives belong to, and qualify nouns expressed or understood.*

Was is a verb, a word that signifies to be—neuter, it expresses neither action nor passion, but being or a state of being—third person singular, because its nominative "nation" is a noun of multitude, conveying *unity* of idea—it agrees with "nation," agreeably to

RULE 10. *A noun of multitude conveying* unity *of idea, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it in the* singular.

Powerful is an adjective belonging to "nation," according to Rule 18 *Feeble* belongs to "it," according to Note 1, under Rule 18. *Is* is a neuter verb, agreeing with "it," agreeably to Rule 4.

"Bonaparte entered Russia with 400,000 men."

Four-hundred-thousand is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, it is a word used in counting, and belongs to the noun "men," according to Note 2, under Rule 18. *Numeral adjectives belong to nouns, which nouns must agree in number with their adjectives.*

If, in parsing the following examples, you find any words about which you are at a loss, you will please to turn back, and parse all the foregoing examples again. This course will enable you to proceed without any difficulty.

More is an adverb. *Of* and *to* are prepositions, governing the nouns that follow them in the objective case.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

A benevolent man helps indigent beggars. Studious scholars learn many long lessons. Wealthy merchants own large ships. The heavy ships bear large burdens; the lighter ships carry less burdens. Just poets use figurative language. Ungrammatical expressions offend a true critic's ear. Weak critics magnify trifling errors. No composition is perfect. The rabble was tumultuous. The late-washed grass looks green. Stately trees form a delightful arbour. The setting sun makes a beautiful appearance; the variegated rainbow appears more beautiful. Epaminondas was the greatest of the Theban generals; Pelopidas was next to Epaminondas.

The first fleet contained three hundred men; the second contained four thousand. The earth contains one thousand million inhabitants. Many a cheering ray brightens the good man's pathway.

NOTE. *Like, Worth.* The adjective *like* is a contraction of the participle *likened*, and generally has the preposition *unto* understood after it. "She is *like* [*unto*] her brother;" "They are *unlike* [*to*] him." "The kingdom of heaven is *like* [*likened* or made *like*] *unto* a householder."

The noun *worth* has altogether dropped its associated words. "The

cloth is *worth* ten dollars a yard ;" that is, The cloth is *of the worth of* ten dollars *by the* yard, or *for a, one,* or *every yard.*

Some eminent philologists do not admit the propriety of supplying an ellipsis after *like, worth, ere, but, except,* and *than,* but consider them prepositions. See Anomalies, in the latter part of the work.

REMARKS ON ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS.

A critical analysis requires that the adjective, when used without its noun, should be parsed as an adjective belonging to its noun understood ; as, " The *virtuous* [*persons*] and the *sincere* [*persons*] are always respected ;" " Providence rewards the *good* [*people*] and punishes the *bad* [*people.*]"

" The *evil* [*deed* or *deeds*] that men do lives after them ;
" The *good* [*deed* or *deeds*] is oft interred with their bones."

But sometimes the adjective, by its *manner* of meaning, becomes a noun, and has another adjective joined to it ; as, " The chief *good* ;" " The vast *immense* [*immensity*] of space."

Various nouns placed before other nouns assume the character of adjectives, according to their *manner* of meaning ; as, " *Sea* fish, *iron* mortar, *wine* vessel. *gold* watch, *corn* field, *meadow* ground, *mountain* height."

The principle which recognises *custom* as the standard of grammatical accuracy might rest for its support on the usage of only *six* words, and defy all the subtleties of innovating skeptics to gainsay it. If the genius and analogy of our language were the standard, it would be correct to observe this analogy, and say, " Good, good*er*, good*est* ; bad, bad*der*, bad*dest* ; little, littl*er*, littl*est* ; much, much*er*, much*est*. " By *this mean* ;" " What *are* the news ?" But such a criterion betrays only the weakness of those who attempt to establish it. Regardless of the dogmas and edicts of the philosophical umpire, the good sense of the people will cause them, in this instance, as well as in a thousand others, to yield to *custom*, ond say, " Good, *better*, *best* ; bad, *worse*, *worst* ; little, *less*, *least* ; much, *more*, *most* ;" " By *this means* ;" " What *is* the *news* ?"

With regard to the using of adjectives and other qualifying words, care must be taken, or your language will frequently amount to absurdity, or nonsense. Let the following general remark, which is better than a dozen rules, put you on your guard. Whenever you utter a sentence, or put your pen on paper to write, weigh well in your mind *the meaning of the words* which you are about to employ. See that they convey precisely the ideas which you wish to express by them, and thus you will avoid innumerable errors. In speaking of a man, we may say, with propriety, he is *very* wicked, or *exceedingly* lavish, because the terms *wicked* and *lavish* are adjectives that admit of comparison ; but, if we take the words in their literal acceptation, there is a solecism in calling a man *very* honest, or *exceedingly* just, for the words *honest* and *just* literally admit of no comparison. In point of fact, a man is *honest* or *dishonest* ; *just* or *unjust* ; there can be no medium or excess in this respect. *Very* correct, *very* incorrect,

very right, *very* wrong, are common expressions; but they are not *literally* proper. What is not *correct*, must be *incorrect;* and that which is not *incorrect*, must be *correct;* what is not *right*, must be *wrong;* and that which is not *wrong*, must be *right*. To avoid that circumlocution which must otherwise take place, our best speakers and writers, however, frequently compare adjectives which do not literally admit of comparison: "The *most established* practice;" "The *most uncertain* method;" "Irving, as a writer, is *far more accurate* than Addison;" "The metaphysical investigations of our philosophical grammars are *still more incomprehensible* to the learner." Comparisons like these should generally be avoided; but sometimes they are so convenient in practice as to render them admissible. Such expressions can be reconciled with the principles of grammar only by considering them as figurative.

Comparative members of sentences should be set in *direct opposition* to each other; as, "Pope was *rich*, but Goldsmith was *poor*." The following sentences are inaccurate: "Solomon was *wiser* than Cicero was *eloquent*." "The principles of the Reformation were *deeper* in the prince's mind than to be *easily eradicated*." This latter sentence contains *no comparison* at all; neither does it literally convey *any meaning*. Again, if the Psalmist had said, "I am the wisest of my teachers," he would have spoken absurdly, because the phrase would imply that he was one of his teachers. But in saying, "I am wiser *than* my teachers," he does not consider himself one of them, but places himself in contradistinction to them.

Before you proceed any farther, you may answer the following

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

What is the distinction between a noun and an adjective?—By what sign may an adjective be known?—Are participles ever used as adjectives?—does gender, person, number, or case belong to adjectives?—How are they varied?—Name the three degrees of comparison?—What effect have *less* and *least* in comparing adjectives?—Repeat the order of parsing an adjective.—What rule applies in parsing an adjective?—What rule in parsing a verb agreeing with a noun of multitude conveying *unity* of idea?—What Note should be applied in parsing an adjective which belongs to a pronoun?—What Note in parsing *numeral* adjectives?

QUESTIONS ON THE NOTES.

Repeat all the various ways of forming the degrees of comparison, mentioned in the first five NOTES.—Compare these adjectives, *ripe, frugal, mischievous, happy, able, good, little, much* or *many, near, late, old*.—Name some adjectives that are always in the superlative, and never compared.—Are compound adjectives compared?—What is said of the termination *ish*, and of the adverb *very*?—When does an adjective become a noun?—What character does a noun assume when placed before another noun?—How can you prove that *custom* is the standard of grammatical accuracy?

QUESTIONS ON THE PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

How are adnouns divided?—What constitutes the true character of an adjective?—What are the signification and denotement of the terminations, *en*, *ed*, and *ig*?—What do *left* and *own* signify?—Name the three ways in which restrictives are applied.—How was numeration originally performed?—What is said of *twain*, *twenty*, *score*, and the ordinal numbers?—What is said of the changes produced in the meaning of words, by the principle of association?

EXERCISES IN FALSE SYNTAX.

NOTE 9, under RULE 18. Double *Comparatives* and *Superlatives* should be avoided; such as, *worser*, *lesser*, *more* deeper, *more* wickeder, &c.; *chiefest*, *supremest*, *perfectest*, *rightest*; or *more* perfect, *most* perfect, *most* supreme, &c.

Virtue confers the most supreme dignity on man, and it should be his chiefest desire.

He made the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night.

The phrases "most supreme," and "chiefest," in the first sentence, are incorrect, because *supreme* and *chief*, are in the superlative degree without having the superlative form superadded, which addition make them double superlatives. They should be written, "confers supreme dignity," and "his chief desire."

We can say, one thing is *less* than another, or *smaller* than another, because the adjectives *less* and *smaller* are in the comparative degree; but the phrase "*lesser* light," in the second sentence, is inaccurate. *Lesser* is a double comparative, which, according to the preceding Note, should be avoided. *Lesser* is as incorrect as *badder*, *gooder*, *worser*, "The *smaller* light," would be less exceptionable. You can correct the following without any assistance. Correct them *four* times over.

The pleasures of the understanding are more preferable than those of imagination or sense.

The tongue is like a race-horse, which runs the faster the lesser weight it carries.

The nightingale's voice is the most sweetest in the grove.

The Most Highest hath created us for his glory.

He was admitted to the chiefest offices.

The first witness gave a strong proof of the fact; the next, a more stronger still; but the last witness, the most strongest of all.

He gave the fullest and most sincere proof of the truest friendship.

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

Participles are formed by adding to the verb the termination *ing*, *ed*, or *en*. *Ing* signifies the same as the noun *being*. When postfixed to the noun-state of the verb, the compound word thus formed, expresses a continued state of the verbal denotement. It implies that what is meant by the verb, is *being* continued. *En* is an alteration of *an*, the Saxon verbalizing adjunct; *ed* is a contraction of *dede*; and the terminations *d* and *t*, are a contraction of *ed*. Participles ending in *ed* or *en*, usually denote the *dodo*, *dede*, *doed*, *did*, *done*, or *finished* state of what is meant by the verb. The book is *printed*. It is a *print-ed* or *print-done* book, or such a one

LECTURE V.

OF PARTICIPLES.

A PARTICIPLE is a word derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of a verb, and also of an adjective.

Verbs have three participles, the present or imperfect, the perfect, and the compound.

The *present* or *imperfect* participle denotes action or being continued, but not perfected. It always ends in *ing*; as, *ruling*, *being*: "I am *writing* a letter."

The *perfect* participle denotes action or being perfected or finished. When derived from a regular verb, it ends in *ed*, and corresponds with the imperfect tense; as, *ruled*, *smiled*: "The letter is *written*.

The compound participle implies action or being completed before the time referred to. It is formed by placing *having* before the perfect participle; as, *having ruled*, *having been ruled*: "*Having written* the letter, he mailed it."

The term *Participle* comes from the Latin word *participio*, which signifies to *partake*; and this name is given to this part

---

as the *done* act of *printing* has made it. The book is *written*; i. e, it has received the *done* or *finish-ed* act of *writing it*.

Participles bear the same relation to verbs, that adnouns do to nouns. They might, therefore, be styled *verbal adjectives*. But that theory which ranks them with adnouns, appears to rest on a sandy foundation. In classifying words, we ought to be guided more by their *manner* of meaning, and their *inferential* meaning, than by their primitive, essential signification.

"I have a *broken* plate;" i. e, I have a plate—*broken*; "I have *broken* a plate." If there is no difference in the *essential* meaning of the word *broken*, in these two constructions, it cannot be denied, that there is a wide difference in the meaning *inferred* by custom; which difference depends on the *manner* in which the term is applied. The former construction denotes, that I *possess* a plate which was *broken*, (whether with or without my agency, is not intimated,) perhaps, one hundred or one thousand years ago; whereas, the meaning of the latter is, that I *performed the act* of reducing the plate from a whole to a *broken* state; and it is not intimated whether I possess it, or some one else. It appears reasonable, that, in a practical grammar, at least, any word which occurs in constructions differing so widely, may properly be classed with different parts of speech. This illustration likewise establishes the propriety of retaining what we call the *perfect tense* of the verb.

of speech, because it *partakes* of the nature of the verb and of the adjective.

By many writers, the participle is classed with the verb, and treated as a part of it; but, as it has no nominative, partakes of the nature of an adjective, requires many syntactical rules which apply not to the verb; and, in some other respects, has properties peculiar to itself, it is believed that its character is sufficiently distinct from the verb, to entitle it to the rank of a separate part of speech. It is, in fact, the connecting link between, not only the adjective and the verb, but also the noun and the verb.

All participles are compound in their meaning and office. Like verbs, they express action and being, and denote time; and, like adjectives, they describe the nouns of which they denote the action or being. In the sentences, The boatman is *crossing* the river; I see a man *labouring* in the field; Charles is *standing;* you perceive that the participles *crossing* and *labouring* express the actions of the boatman and the man, and *standing* the state of being of Charles. In these respects, then, they partake of the nature of verbs. You also notice, that they *describe* the several nouns associated with them, like describing adjectives; and that, in this respect, they participate the properties of adjectives. And, furthermore, you observe that they denote actions which are still going on; that is, *incomplete* or *unfinished* actions; for which reason we call them *imperfect* participles.

Perhaps I can illustrate their character more clearly. When the imperfect or present and perfect participles are placed before nouns, they become defining or describing adjectives, and are denominated *participial adjectives;* as, *A loving* companion; The *rippling* stream; *Roaring* winds; A *wilted* leaf; An *accomplished* scholar. Here the words *loving*, *rippling*, *roaring*, *wilted*, and *accomplished*, describe or define the nouns with which they are associated. And where the participles are placed after their nouns, they have, also, this descriptive quality. If I say, I see the moon *rising;* The horse is *running* a race; The dog is *beaten;* I describe the several objects, as a *rising* moon, a *running* horse, and a *beaten* dog, as well as when I place these participles before the nouns. The same word is a participle or a participial adjective, according to its manner of meaning. The preceding illustrations, however, shows that this distinction is founded on a very slight shade of difference in the meaning of the two. The following examples will enable you to distinguish the one from the other.

Participles.	*Participial Adjectives.*
See the sun *setting.*	See the *setting* sun.
See the moon *rising.*	See the *rising* moon.
The wind is *roaring.*	Hear the *roaring* wind.
The twig is *broken.*	The *broken* twig fell.
The vessel *anchored* in the bay, lost her mast.	The *anchored* vessel spreads her sail.

The *present* or *imperfect* participle is known by its ending in *ing;* as, float*ing*, rid*ing*, hear*ing*, see*ing*. These are derived from the verbs *float*, *ride*, *hear*, and *see*. But some words ending in *ing* are not participles; such as *evening*, *morning*, *hireling*, *sapling*, *uninteresting*, *unbelieving*, *uncontrolling*. When you parse a word ending in *ing*, you should always consider whether it comes from a verb or not. There is such a verb as *interest*, hence you know that the word *interesting* is a participle; but there is no such verb as *un*interest, consequently, *un*interesting can *not* be a participle; but it is an adjective; as, an *uninteresting* story. You will be able very early to distinguish the participle from the other parts of speech, when you shall have acquired a more extensive knowledge of the verb.

Speak the participles from each of these verbs, learn, walk, shun, smile, sail, conquer, manage, reduce, relate, discover, overrate, disengage. Thus, Pres. *learning* Pref. *learned*, Comp. *having learned*. Pres. *walking*, Perf. *walked*, Compound *having walked*, and so on.

You may now commit the *order* of parsing a participle, and then proceed with me.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The *order of parsing* a PARTICIPLE, is—a participle, and why?—from what verb is it derived?—speak the three—present, perfect, or compound, and why?—to what does it refer or belong?—RULE.

"I saw a vessel *sailing.*"

Sailing is a participle, a word derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of a verb, and also of an adjective—it comes from the verb to sail—pres. sailing, perf. sailed, comp. having sailed—it is a present or imperfect participle, because it denotes the continuance of an unfinished action—and refers to the noun "vessel" for its subject, according to

RULE 27. *The present participle refers to some noun or pronoun denoting the subject or actor.*

"Not a breath disturbs the *sleeping* billow."

Sleeping is a participial adjective, a word added to a noun to express its quality—it cannot, with propriety, be compared—it belongs to the noun "billow," agreeably to

RULE 18. *Adjectives belong to, and qualify, nouns expressed or understood.*

You will please to parse these two words several times over, and, by a little reflection, you will perfectly understand the 27th Rule. Recollect, the participle never varies its termination to *agree* with a noun or pronoun, for, as it has no *nominative*, it has no agreement: but it simply *refers* to an actor. Examples: I see a *vessel* sailing; or, I see three *vessels* sailing. You perceive that the participle *sailing* refers to a singular noun in the first example, and to a plural noun in the second; and yet the participle is in the same form in both examples. The noun *vessel* is in the objective case, and governed by the transitive verb *see*. But when a verb follows a noun, the ending of the verb generally varies in order to agree with the noun which is its nominative; as, the vessel *sails*; the vessels *sail*.

In this place it may not be improper to notice another Rule that relates to the participle. In the sentence, "The man is *beating* his horse," the noun *horse* is in the objective case, because it is the object of the action expressed by the active transitive participle "beating," and it is governed by the participle beating, according to

RULE. 26. *Participles have the same government as the verbs have from which they are derived.*

The principle upon which this rule is founded is quite apparent. As a participle derived from a transitive verb expresses the same kind of action as its verb, it necessarily follows that the participle must govern the same case as the verb from which it is derived.

When you shall have studied this lecture attentively, you may proceed and parse the following exercises, containing five parts of speech. If, in analyzing these examples, you find any words which you cannot parse correctly and *systematically* by referring to your Compend for definitions and rules, you will please to turn back and read over again the whole *five* lectures. You must exercise a little patience; and, for your encouragement, permit me to remind you, that when you shall have acquired a thorough knowledge of these five parts of speech, only *five* more will remain for you to learn. Be en-

bitious to excel. Be thorough in your investigations. Give your reasoning powers free scope. By studying these lectures with attention, you will acquire more grammatical knowledge in *three* months, than is commonly obtained in *two* years.

In the following examples, the words *purling*, *crusted*, *slumbering* and *twinkling*, are participial adjectives. *There* and *its* you may omit.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Orlando left the herd grazing. The hunters heard the young dog barking. The old fox heard the sportsman's horn sounding. Deep rivers float long rafts. Purling streams moisten the earth's surface. The sun approaching, melts the crusted snow. The slumbering seas calmed the grave old hermit's mind. Pale Cynthia declining, clips the horizon. Man beholds the twinkling stars adorning night's blue arch. The stranger saw the desert thistle bending there its lonely head.

REMARKS ON PARTICIPLES.

Participles frequently become nouns; as "A good *understanding*; Excellent *writing*; He made a good *beginning*, but a bad *ending*."

Constructions like the following, have long been sanctioned by the best authorities; "The goods are *selling*;" "The house is *building*;" "The work is now *publishing*." A modern innovation, however, is likely to supercde this mode of expression: thus, "The goods are *being sold*;" "The house is *being built*;" "The work is now *being published*."

You may now answer these

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

How many kinds of participles are there?—What is the ending of a present participle?—What does a perfect participle denote?—With what does the perfect participle of a regular verb correspond?—What is a compound participle?—From what word is the term participle derived?—Why is this part of speech thus named?—Wherein does this part of speech partake of the nature of a verb?—Do all participles participate the properties of adjectives?—In what respect?—When are participles called *participial adjectives*?—Give examples.—How may a present participle be known?—Repeat the order of parsing a participle.—What Rule applies in parsing a *present* participle?—What Rule in parsing a participial adjective?—Do participles vary in their terminations in order to agree with their subject or actor?—What Rule applies in parsing a noun in the *objective case*, governed by a participle?—Do participles ever become nouns?—Give examples.

QUESTIONS ON THE PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

How are participles formed?—What does the imperfect participle express?—What do perfect participles denote?

LECTURE VI.

OF ADVERBS.

AN ADVERB is a word used to modify the sense of a *verb*, a *participle*, an *adjective*, or other *adverb*.

Recollect, an adverb never qualifies a *noun*. It qualifies any of the four parts of speech above named, and none others.

To *modify* or *qualify*, you know, means to produce some *change*. The adverb modifies. If I say, Wirt's style *excels* Irving's, the proposition is affirmative, and the verb *excels* expresses the affirmation. But when I say, Wirt's style *excels not* Irving's, the assertion is changed to a negative. What is it that thus modifies or changes the meaning of the verb *excels?* You perceive that it is the little word *not*. This word has power to reverse the meaning of the sentence. *Not*, then, is modifier, qualifier, or negative adverb.

When an adverb is used to modify the sense of a verb or participle, it generally expresses the manner, time, or place, in which the action is performed, or some accidental circumstance respecting it. In the phrases, The man *rides gracefully, awkwardly, badly, swiftly, slowly*, &c.; or I saw the man riding *swiftly, slowly, leisurely, very fast*, &c., you perceive that the words *gracefully, awkwardly, very fast*, &c., are adverbs, qualifying the verb *rides*, or the participle *riding*, because they express the *manner* in which the action denoted by the verb and participle, is done.

In the phrases, The man rides *daily, weekly, seldom, frequently, often, sometimes, never;* or, The man rode *yesterday, heretofore, long since, long ago, recently, lately, just now;* or, The man will ride *soon, presently, directly, immediately, by and by, to day, hereafter*, you perceive that all these words in *italics*,

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

As the happiness and increasing prosperity of a people essentially depend on their advancement in science and the arts, and as language in all its sublime purposes and legitimate bearings, is strictly indentified with these, it may naturally be supposed, that that nation which continues, through successive generations, steadily to progress in the former, will not be neglectful of the cultivation and refinement of the latter. The truth of this remark is illustrated by those who have, for many ages, employed the English language as their medium for the transmission of thought. Among its refinements may be ranked those procedures by which verbs and nouns have been so modified and contracted as to form what we call adverbs, distributives, conjunctions, and prepositions; for I presume it will be readily conceded, that conciseness, as well as copiousness and perspicuity

are adverbs, qualifying the meaning of the verb rides, because they express the *time* of the action denoted by the verb.

Again, if I say, The man lives *here*, *near*, *by*, *yonder*, *remote*, *far off*, *somewhere*, *nowhere*, *everywhare*, &c., the words in *italics* are adverbs of *place*, because they tell where he lives.

Adverbs likewise qualify adjectives, and sometimes other adverbs; as *more* wise, *most* wise; or *more wisley*, *most wisley*. When an adverb is joined to an adjective or adverb, it generally expresses the *degree* of comparison; for adverbs, like adjectives, have degrees of comparison. Thus, in the phrase, A skilful artist, you know the adjective *skilful* is in the positive degree; but, by placing the adverb *more* before the adjective, we increase the degree of quality denoted by the adjective to the comparative; as, A *more* skilful artist; and *most* renders it superlative; as, A *most* skilful artist. And if we place more and most before other adverbs, the effect is the same; as, skilfully, *more* skilfully, *most* skilfully.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
soon,	sooner,	soonest.
often,	oftener,	oftenest.
much,	more,	most.
well,	better,	best.
far,	farther,	farthest.
wisely,	more wisely,	most wisely.
justly,	more justly,	most justly.
justly,	less justly,	least justly.

You will generally know an adverb at sight; but sometimes you will find it more difficult to be distinguished than any

in language, is the offspring of refinement. That an immense amount of time and breath is saved by the use of adverbs, the following developement will clearly demonstrate. He who is successful in contracting one mode of expression that is daily used by thirty millions, doubtless does much for their benefit.

Most adverbs express in one word, what would otherwise require two or more words; as, "He did it *here*," for He did it *in this place*; *there*, for, *in that place*; *where*, for, *in what place*; *now*, for, *at this time*. *Why* means *for what reason*; *how*—*in what mind, mood, or manner*; *exceedingly*—*to a great degree*; *very*—*in an eminent degree*; *often* and *seldom* signify *many times*, *few times*.

The procedures by which words have been contracted, modified, and combined, to form this class of words, have been various. The most prolific family of this illegitimate race, are those in *ly*, a contraction of *like*. *Gentleman-ly*, means *gentleman-like*, *like* a gentleman. We do not yet say, *ladily*, but *lady-like*. The north Britons still say *wiselike*, *manlike* instead of *wisely manly*.

Quick comes from *gwick*, the past part. of the Anglo-Saxon verb *gwie-*

other part of speech in the English language. I will therefore, give you some *signs* which will assist you a little.

Most words ending in *ly* are adverbs; such as, *politely, gracefully, judiciously*. Any word or short phrase that will answer to any one of the questions, *how? how much? when? or where?* is an adverb; as, The river flows *rapidly;* He walks very *fast;* He has gone *far away*; but he will *soon* return; She sings *sweetly;* They learn *none at all.* How, or in what manner does the river flow? *Rapidly.* How does he walk? *Very fast.* Where has he gone? *Far away.* When will he return? *Soon.* How does she sing? *Sweetly.* How much do they learn? *None at all.* From this illustration you perceive, that, if you could not tell these adverbs by the sense, you would know them by their answering to the questions. However, your better way will be to distinguish adverbs by considering the office they perform in the sentence; or by noticing their grammatical relation, or their situation, with respect to other words. To gain a thorugh knowledge of their real character, is highly important. *Rapidly, fast, far, away, soon sweetly,* &c., are known to be adverbs by their qualifying the sense of verbs. "A *very* good pen writes *extremely* well." *Well,* in this sentence, is known to be an adverb by its qualifying the sense of the verb *writes; extremely,* by its ending in *ly,* or by its being joined to the adverb *well* to qualify it: and *very* is known as an adverb by its joining the adjective *good.*

Expressions like these, *none at all, a great deal, a few days ago, long since, at length, in vain,* when they are used to denote the *manner* or *time* of the action of verbs or participles, are generally called *adverbial phrases.*

---

cian, to vivify, give life. *Quick-ly* or *live-ly,* means, in a *quick like* or *life-like* manner; in the manner of a creature that has *life. Rapid-ly—rapid-like, like* a *rapid;* a *quick-ly* or *swift-ly* running place in a stream.

Al-ways, contraction of *in all ways.* By a slight transition, it means, *in* or *at all times. Al-one,* contraction of *all-one On-ly—one-like. Al-so—all the same* (thing.) *Ever*—an *age.* For *ever* and *ever*—for *ages* and *ages.* Ever is not synonymous with always. *Never—ne ever.* It signifies *no age, no period of time. No,* contraction of *not. Not,* a modification of *no-thing, noth-ing, nought, naught.* "He is *not* greater"—is greater *in nought—in no thing.*

Adrift is the past part. *adrifted, adrif'd adrift;* from the Saxon *drifan* or *adrifan,* to drive. *Ago,* formerly written *ygo, gon, agon, gone, agone,* is the past part. of the verb *to go.* It refers to time *gone by. Asunder,* the Saxon past part. *asundren,* from the verb *sondrain,* or *asondrain,* to separate *Aloft—on the luft; on luft, on lyft: lyft* being the Anglo-Saxon word for *air* or *clouds. Astray,* the part of *straegan,* to stray. *Awry,* part. of *wrythan,* or writhe.

Adverbs, though very numerous, may, for the sake of practical convenience, be reduced to particular classes.

1. *Of Number ;* as, Once, twice, thrice, &c.
2. *Of Order ;* as, First, secondly, lastly, finally, &c.
3. *Of Place ;* as, Here, there, where, elsewhere, anywhere, somewhere, nowhere, herein, whither, hither, thither, upward, downward, forward, backward, whence, thence, whithersoever, &c.
4. *Of Time.*
   Present ; as, Now, to-day, &c.
   Past ; as, Already, before, lately, yesterday, heretofore, hitherto, long since, long ago, &c.
   Future ; as, To-morrow, not yet, hereafter, henceforth, henceforward, by and by, instantly, presently, immediately, ere long, straightways, &c.
   Time Indefinite ; as, Oft, often, oft-times, often-times, sometimes, soon, seldom, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, always, when, then, ever, never, again, &c.
5. *Of Quantity ;* as, Much, little, sufficiently, how much, how great, enough, abundantly, &c.
6. *Of Manner or quality ;* as, Wisely, foolishly, justly, unjustly, quickly, slowly, &c. Adverbs of quality are the most numerous kind ; and they are generally formed by adding the termination *ly* to an adjective or a participle, or by changing *le* into *ly ;* as, Bad, badly ; cheerful, cheerfully ; able, ably ; admirable, admirably.
7. *Of Doubt ;* as, Haply, perhaps, peradventure, possibly, perchance.
8. *Of Affirmation ;* as, Verily, truly, undoubtedly, doubtless, certainly, yea, yes, surely, indeed, really, &c.
9. *Of Negation ;* as, Nay, no, not, by no means, not at all, in no wise, &c.
10. *Of Interrogation ;* as, How, why, wherefore, whether, &c., and sometimes when, whence, where.

Needs—need-is ; anciently, *nedes*, nede is.

To-wit, the infinite of *witan*, to know. It means, *to be known.*

Ay or *yea* signifies *have it, enjoy it. Yes*, is *ay-es*, have, possess, enjoy *that*. Our corrupt *o-yes* of the crier, is the French imperative, *oyez*, hear, listen.

Straight way—by a straight way. *While—wheel ;* period in which something *whiles* or *wheels* itself round. *Till*—to while.

Per, Latin,—the English *by*. Perhaps—per haps, per chance.

These examples of derivation are given with the view to invite the attention of the intelligent pupil to the "Diversions of Purley, by John Horne Tooke."

11. *Of Comparison:* as, more, most, better, best, worse, worst, less, least, very, almost, little, alike, &c.

NOTES.

1. This catalogue contains but a small portion of the adverbs in our language. Many adverbs are formed by a combination of prepositions with the adverbs of place, *here, there, where;* as, Hereof, thereof, whereof; hereto, thereto, whereto; hereby, thereby, whereby; herewith, therewith, wherewith; herein, therein, wherein; therefore, (i. e. there-for,) wherefore, (i. e. where-for,) hereupon, hereon, thereupon, thereon, whereupon, whereon, &c.

2. Some adverbs are composed of nouns or verbs and the letter *a* used instead of *at, on*, &c.; as, Aside, athirst, afoot, asleep, aboard, ashore, abed, aground, afloat, adrift, aghast, ago, askance, away, asunder, astray, &c.

You will now please to read this lecture *four* times over, and read slowly and carefully, for unless you understand well the nature and character of this part of speech, you will be frequently at a loss to distinguish it from others in com position. Now do you notice, that, in this sentence which you have just read, the words *slowly, carefully, well,* and *frequently,* are adverbs? And do you again observe, that, in the questions I have just put to you, the words *now* and *just* are adverbs? Exercise a little sober thought. Fifteen minutes spent in reflection, are worth whole days occupied in careless reading.

In the following exercises six parts of speech are presented, namely, Nouns, Verbs, Articles, Adjectives, Participles, and Adverbs; and I believe you are now prepared to parse them all agreeably to the systematic order, *four* times over. Those words in *italics* are adverbs.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing an ADVERB, is—an adverb, and why?—what sort?—what does it qualify?—RULE.

"My friend has returned *again;* but his health is *not very* good."

Again is an adverb, a word used to modify the sense of a verb—of time indefinite, it expresses a period of time not precisely defined—it qualifies the verb "has returned," according to

RULE 29. *Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

Not is an adverb, a word used to modify the sense of an adverb—of negation, it makes the assertion negative; that is, it changes the preposition from an affirmative to a negative—and

it qualifies the verb "very," agreeably to RULE 29. *Adverbs qualify verbs*, &c.

Very is an adverb, a word used to quality the sense of an adjective—of comparison, it compares the adjective "good," and qualifies it according to RULE 29. *Adverbs qualify adjectives*, &c.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

The traveller described a lofty castle decaying *gradually*. *Very* few literary men *ever* become distinguished poets. The great Milton excels *not* Homer. The Roman women *once*, *voluntarily* contributed their *most* precious jewels to save the city.

Many small streams uniting form *very* large rivers. The river Funza falling *perpendicularly* forms a vast cataract. Attentive servants *always* drive horses *carefully*; negligent servants *often* drive horses *very carelessly*. Studious scholars improve *very fast*; idle scholars learn *none at all*. Friendship *often* ends in love; but love in friendship, *never*.

NOTE. Several adverbs frequently qualify one verb. Have you walked? *Not yet quite far enough, perhaps. Not, yet, far*, and *enough*, qualify "have walked" understood; *perhaps* qualifies *not*; and *quite* qualifies *far*. The adverbs *always* and *carefully* both qualify the verb "drive:" the former expresses *time*, and the latter, *manner*. *Once* and *voluntarily* qualify the verb "contributed;" the former expresses *number*, and the latter, *manner*. The word *their* you need not parse. The active verb *to save* has no nominative. The nouns *love* and *friendship*, following *in*, are in the objective case, and governed by that preposition.

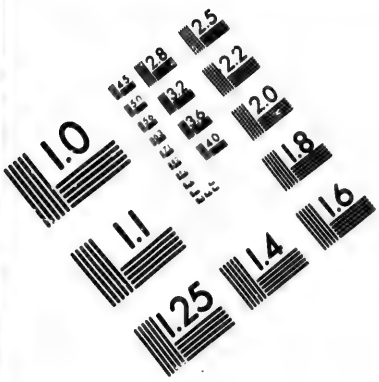
REMARKS ON ADVERBS.

When the words *therefore*, *consequently*, *accordingly*, and the like, are used in connection with other conjunctions, they are *adverbs*; but when they appear single, they are commonly considered *conjunctions*.

The words *when* and *where*, and all others of the same nature, such as *whence*, *whither*, *whenever*, *wherever*, *till*, *until*, *before*, *otherwise*, *while*, *wherefore*, &c., may be properly called *adverbial conjunctions*, because they participate the nature both of adverbs and conjunctions; of adverbs, as they denote the attributes either of *time* or *place*; *of* conjunctions, as they *conjoin sentences*.

There are many words that are sometimes used as adjectives, and sometimes as adverbs; as, "*More* men than women were there; I am *more* diligent than he." In the former sentence *more* is evidently an adjective, for it is joined to a noun to qualify it; in the latter it is an adverb, because it qualifies an adjective. There are others that are sometimes used as nouns, and sometimes as adverbs; as, "*To-day's* lesson is longer than *yesterday's*." In this example, *to-day* and *yesterday* are nouns in the possessive case; but in phrases like the following, they are generally considered adverbs of time. "He came [*to his*] *home yesterday*, and will set out again *to-day*." Here they are nouns, if we supply *on* before them.

"Where *much* [*wealth*, *talent*, or something else] is given *much*



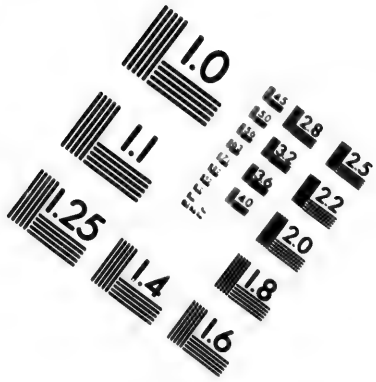
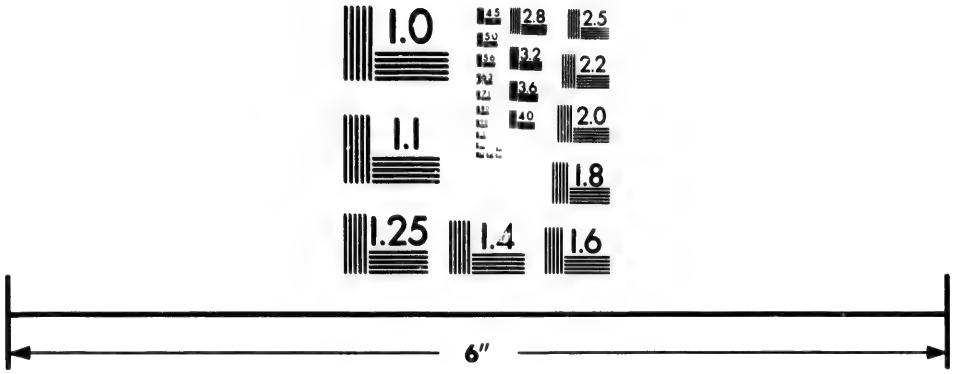
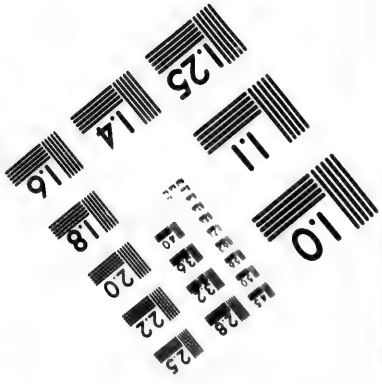


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

2.8
2.5
2.2
2.0
1.8
1.1
1.0

[*increase, improvement*] will be required; *Much* money has been expended; It is *much* better to write than starve." In the first two of these examples, *much* is an adjective, because it qualifies a noun; in the last, an adverb, because it qualifies the adjective *better*. In short, you must determine to what part of speech a word belongs, by its *sense*, or by considering the *manner* in which it is associated with other words.

An adjective may, in general, be distinguished from an *adverb* by this rule; when a word qualifies a *noun* or *pronoun*, it is an adjective, but when it qualifies a *verb*, *participle*, *adjective* or *adverb*, it is an adverb.

Prepositions are sometimes erroneously called adverbs, when their nouns are understood. "He rides *about;* that is, about the *town, country*, or some-*thing* else. "She was *near* [the *act* or *misfortune of*] falling;" "But do not *after* [that *time* or *event*] lay the blame on me." "He came *down* [the *ascent*] from the hill;" "They lifted him *up* [the *ascent*] out of the pit." "The angels *above;*"—above *us*—"Above these lower *heavens*, to us invisible, or dimly seen."

Before you proceed to correct the following exercises in False Syntax, you may answer these

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

Does an adverb ever qualify a noun?—What parts of speech does it qualify?—When an adverb qualifies a verb or participle, what does it express?—When an adverb qualifies an adjective or adverb, what does it generally express?—Compare some adverbs?—By what signs may an adverb be known?—Give examples,—Repeat some *adverbial phrases*.—Name the different classes of adverbs.—Repeat some of each class.—Repeat the order of parsing an adverb.—What rule do you apply in parsing an adverb?

QUESTIONS ON THE NOTES.

Repeat some adverbs that are formed by combining prepositions with adverbs of place. Repeat some that are composed of the article *a* and nouns.—What part of speech are the words, *therefore, consequently*, &c.?—What words are styled *adverbial conjunctions*?—Why are these so called?—Is the same word sometimes used as an adjective, and sometimes as an adverb?—Give examples.—What is said of *much*?—By what rule can you distinguish an adjective from an adverb?—Do prepositions ever become adverbs?

QUESTIONS ON THE PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

How does the use of adverbs contribute to the conciseness of language?—Illustrate the fact.—What is said of *ly, like*, and *quick*?—How are the following words composed, *always, alone, only, also*?—What is the meaning of *ever, never, not, adrift, ago, asunder, aloft, astray, awry*?—Give the signification of *needs, to-wit, ye, yes, o-yes straightway, while, till* and *per*.

NOTE. Learners need not answer the questions on the Philosophical Notes, in this or any other Lecture, unless the teacher deems it expedient.

EXERCISES IN FALSE SYNTAX.

NOTE 3, RULE 29. Adjectives are sometimes improperly applied as adverbs; as, indifferent honest; excellent well; miserable poor;—She writes elegant; He is walking slow.

The adjectives *indifferent*, *excellent*, and *miserable*, are here improperly used, because adjectives do not express the degree of adjectives or adverbs, but such modifications are denoted by adverbs. The phrases should, therefore, be, "*indifferently* honest, *excellently* well, *miserably* poor." *Elegant* and *slow* are also inaccurate, for it is not the office of the adjective to express the manner, time, or place of the action of verbs and participles, but is *the office* of the adverb. The constructions should be, "She writes *elegantly*; He is walking *slowly*."

You may correct thefollowing examples several times over and explain the principles that are violated.

FALSE SYNTAX.

He speaks fluent, and reasons coherent.

She reads proper, and writes very neat.

They once lived tolerable well, but now they are miserable poor.

The lowering clouds are moving slow.

He behaved himself submissive, and was exceeding careful not to give offence.

NOTE 4, to RULE 29. Adverbs are sometimes improperly used instead of adjectives; as, "The tutor addressed him in terms rather warm, but *suitably* to his offence."

The adverb *suitably* is incorrect. It does not express the manner of the action of the verb "addressed," but it denotes the *quality* of the noun *terms* understood; for which reason it should be an adjective, *suitable*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

The man was slowly wandering about, *solitarily* and distressed.

He lived in a manner *agreeably* to his condition.

The study of Syntax should be *previously* to that of Punctuation.

He introduced himself in a manner very *abruptly*.

Conformably to their vehemence of thought, was their vehemence of gesture.

I saw him *previously* to his arrival.

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

From, according to H. Tooke, is the Anglo-Saxon and Gothic noun *fram*, beginning, source, author. "He came *From* (*beginning*) Rochester." *Of* he supposes to be a fragment of the Gothic and Saxon noun *afora*, consequence, offspring, follower. "Solomon, the son *of* (*offspring*) David." *Of* or *off*, in its modern acceptation, signifies *is joined sundered*.

LECTURE VII.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a word which serves to connect words, and show the relation between them.

The term *preposition* is derived from the two Latin words, *pre*, which signifies *before*, and *pono*, to place. Prepositions are so called, because they are mostly placed before the nouns and pronouns which they govern in the objective case.

The principal prepositions are presented in the following list, which you may now commit to memory, and thus you will be enabled to distinguish them from other parts of speech whenever you see them in composition.

A LIST OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

or	over	at	after	betwixt
to	under	near	about	beside
for	through	up	against	athwart
by	above	down	unto,	towards
with	below	before	across	notwithstanding
in	between	behind	around	out of
into	beneath	off	amidst	instead of
within	from	on, upon	throughout	over against
without	beyond	among	underneath	according to

This list contains many words that are sometimes used as conjunctions, and sometimes as adverbs; but when you shall have become acquainted with the *nature* of the preposition, and of the conjunction and adverb too, you will find no difficulty in ascertaining to which of these classes any word belongs.

By looking at the definition of a preposition, you will notice, th

---

A piece *of* (*off*) the loaf, is, a piece *disjoined*, or *separated* from the loaf. The fragrance *of* or *off* the rose.

For signifies *cause*. I write *for* your satisfaction;" i. e. your satisfaction being the *cause*. *By* or *be* is the imperative *byth*, of the Saxon *beon*, to be. *With*, the imperative of *withan*, to join; or when equivalent to *by*, of *wyrthan*, to be. "I will go *with* him." "I, *join* him, will go." *In* comes from the Gothic noun *inna*, the interior of the body; a cave or cell. *About* from *boda*, the first outward boundary. *Among* is the past part. of *gamaengan*, to mingle. *Through* or *thorough* is the Gothic substantive *dauro*, or the Teutonic *thurugh*. It means passage, gate, door.

Before—be-fore, be-hind, be-low, be-side, be-sides, be-neath, are formed by combining the imperative *be*, with nouns *fore, hind, low, side. Neath*—Saxon *neothan, neothe*, has the same signification as *nadier*. *Between, be-twixt—be* and *twain*. A dual preposition. *Be-yond—be-passed*. *Beyond* a place, means, *be passed* that place.

Notwithstanding—not-stand-ing-with, not-withstanding. "Any order to the contrary notwithstanding" (this order;) i. e. *not* effectually *with-standing* or *opposing* it.

it performs a *double* office in a sentence, namely, it *connects* words, and also shows a *relation* between them. I will first show you the use and importance of this part of speech as a connective. When corn is ripe—October, it is gathered—the field—men—who go hill—hill—baskets which they put the ears. You perceive, that in this sentence there is a total want of connexion and meaning; but let us fill up each vacancy with a preposition, and the sense will be clear. "When corn is ripe, *in* October, it is gathered *in* the field *by* men, who go *from* hill *to* hill *with* baskets, *into* which they put the ears."

From this illustration you are convinced, no doubt, that our language would be very deficient without prepositions to connect the various words of which it is composed. It would, in fact, amount to nothing but nonsence. There is, however, another part of speech that performs this office, namely, the conjunction. This will be explained in Lecture IX.; in which lecture you will learn, that the nature of a preposition, as a connective particle, is nearly allied to that of a conjunction. In the next place I will show you how prepositions expresses a *relation* between words.

The boy's hat is *under* his arm. In this expression, what relation does the preposition *under* show? You know that *hat* and *arm* are words used as signs of two objects, or ideas; but *under* is *not* the sign of a thing you can think of: it is merely the sign of the *relation* existing between the two objects. Hence you may perceive, that since the word *under* is the sign of the *relation* existing between particular *ideas*, it also expresses a relation existing between the words *hat* and *arm*, which words are the representatives of those ideas.

The boy holds his hat *in* his hand. In this sentence the preposition *in* shows the relation existing between *hat* and *hand*, or the situation, or relative position, each has in regard to the another. And, if I say, The boy's hat is *on* his head, you perceive that *on* shows the relation between *hat* and *head*. Again, in the expressions, The boy threw his hat *up* stairs—*under* the bed—*behind* the table—*through* the window—*over* the house—*across* the street—*into* the water—and so on, you perceive that the several prepositions express the different relations existing between the *hat* and the other nouns, *stairs*, *bed*, *table*, *window*, *house*, *street*, and *water*.

A preposition tells *where* a thing is: thus, "The pear is *on* the ground, *under* the tree."

Prepositions govern the objective case, but they do *not* express an action done to some object, as an active-transitive verb or participle does. When a noun or pronoun follows a preposition, it is in the objective case, because it is the object of the *relation* expressed by the preposition, and *not* the object of an *action*.

I can now give you a more extensive explanation of the *objective case* than that which was given in a former lecture. I have already informed you, that the objective case expresses the object of an action or of a relation; and, also, that there are *three* parts of speech which govern nouns and pronouns in the objective case, namely, *active-transitive verbs*, *participles derived from transitive verbs*, and

prepositions. A noun or pronoun in the objective case, cannot be, at the same time, the object of an action *and* of a relation. It must be either the object of an action *or* of a relation. And I wish you particularly to remember, that whenever a noun or pronoun is governed by a transitive verb or participle, it is the object of an *action;* as, The tutor *instructs* his *pupils ;* or, The tutor *instructing* his *pupils;* but whenever a noun or pronoun is governed by a preposition, it is the object of a *relation ;* as, The tutor gives good instruction *to* his *pupils*.

Before you proceed to parse the following examples, please to review this lecture, and then the whole seven in the manner previously recommended, namely, read one or two sentences, and then look off your book and repeat them two or three times over in your mind. This course will enable you to retain the most important ideas advanced. If you wish to proceed with ease and advantage, you must have the subject-matter of the preceding lectures stored in your mind. Do not consider it an unpleasant task to comply with my requisitions, for when you shall have learned thus far, you will understand *seven* parts of speech ; and only *three* more will remain to be learned.

If you have complied with the foregoing request, you may commit the following *order*, and then proceed in parsing.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing a PREPOSITION, is—a preposition, and why?—what does it connect?—what relation does it show?

"He saw an antelope *in* the *wilderness*."

In is a preposition, a word which serves to connect words, and show the relation between them—it connects the words "antelope" and "wilderness"—and shows the relation between them.

Wilderness is a noun, the name of a place—comp. the name of a sort or species—neut. gend. it denotes a thing without sex—third pers. spoken of—sing. num. it implies but one—and in the objective case, it is the object of the *relation* expressed by the preposition "in," and governed by it, according to

RULE 31. *Prepositions govern the objective case.*

The genius of our language will not allow us to say, Stand before *he ;* Hand the paper to *they*. Prepositions *require* the pronoun following them to be in the objective form, position, or case ; and this requisition amounts to *government*. Hence we say, "Stand before *him;*" "Hand the paper to *them*." Every preposition expresses a relation, and every relation must have an *object:* consequently every preposition must be followed by a noun or pronoun in the objective case.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

The all-wise Creator bestowed the power of speech upon man for the most excellent uses. Augustus heard the orator pleading the client's cause, in a flow of most powerful eloquence. Fair Cynthia smiles serenely over nature's soft repose. Life's varying schemes no

more distract the labouring mind of man. Septimius stabbed Pompey standing on the shore of Egypt.

A beam of tranquility often plays round the heart of the truly pious man. The thoughts of former years glide over my soul, like swift-shooting meteors over Ardven's gloomy vales.

At the approach of day, night's swift dragons cut the clouds full fast; and ghosts, wandering here and there, troop home to churchyards.

Love still pursues an ever devious race,
True to the winding lineaments of grace.

NOTE.—The words *my* and *and* you need not parse. The noun "meteors," following the adverb "like," is in the objective case, and governed by *unto* understood, according to Note 2, under Rule 32.

REMARKS ON PREPOSITIONS AND VERBS

A noun or pronoun in the objective case, is often governed by a preposition understood; as, "Give *him* that book;" that is, "Give that book *to* him," "Ortugral was one day wandering," &c., that is, *on* one day. "Mercy gives *affliction* a grace;" that is, Mercy gives a grace *to* affliction. See Note 1, under Rule 32.

To be able to make a proper use of prepositions, particular attention is requisite. There is a peculiar propriety to be observed in the use of *by* and *with*; as, "He walks *with* a staff *by* moonlight;" "He was taken *by* stratagem, and killed *with* a sword." Put the one preposition for the other, and say, "He walks *by* a staff *with* moonlight;" "He was taken *with* stratagem, and killed *by* a sword;" and it will appear, that the latter expressions differ from the former in signification, more than one, at first view, would be apt to imagine.

Verbs are often compounded of a verb and a *preposition*; as to *up*hold, to *with*stand, to *over*look; and this composition gives a new meaning to the verb; as to *under*stand, to *with*draw, to *for*give. But the preposition is more frequently placed after the verb, and separately from it, like an adverb; in which situation it does not less affect the sense of the verb, and give it a new meaning; and in all instances, whether the preposition is placed either before or after the verb, if it gives a new meaning to the verb, it may be considered as *a part of the verb*. Thus, *to cast* means *to throw*; but *to cast up* an account, signifies to *compute* it; therefore *up* is a part of the verb. The phrases, *to fall on*, *to bear out*, *to give over*, convey very different meanings from what they would if the prepositions *on*, *out*, and *over*, were not used. Verbs of this kind are called *compound* verbs.

You may now answer the following

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

From what words is the term *preposition* derived?—Why is it thus [illegible]?—Repeat the list of prepositions.—Name the three parts of speech that govern nouns and pronouns in the objective case.—When is a noun or pronoun in the objective case, the object of an action?—When is it the object of a relation?—Repeat the order of parsing a

preposition.—What rule do you apply in parsing a noun or pronoun governed by a preposition?—Does every preposition require an object case after it?—Is a noun or pronoun ever governed by a preposition understood?—Give examples.—What is said of verbs compounded of a verb and preposition?—Give the origin and meaning of the prepositions explained in the Philosophical Notes.

LECTURE VIII.

OF PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun, and generally to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word. A pronoun is, likewise, sometimes a substitute for a sentence, or member of a sentence.

The word *pronoun* comes from two Latin words, *pro*, which means *for*, or *instead of*, and *nomen*, a *name*, or *noun*. Hence you perceive that *pronoun* means *for a noun*, or *instead of a noun*.

In the sentence, "The man is happy; *he* is benevolent; *he* is useful;" you perceive that the word *he* is used instead of the noun *man*; consequently *he* must be a *pronoun*. You observe, too, that, by making use of the pronoun *he* in this sentence, we avoid the repetition of the *noun* man, for without the pronoun the sentence would be rendered thus, "The man is happy; *the man* is benevolent; *the man* is useful."

By looking again at the definition, you will notice that pronouns always *stand for* nouns, but they do not always *avoid the repetition* of nouns. *Repetition* means *repeating* or mentioning the same thing again. In the sentence, "I come to die for my country," the pronouns, *I* and *my*, *stand* for the name of the person who speaks; but they do not *avoid the repetition* of that name, because the name or noun for which the pronouns are used is not mentioned at all. Pronouns of the *third* person generally avoid the repetition of the nouns for which they stand; but pronouns of the *first* and *second* person sometimes avoid the repetition of nouns, and sometimes they do not.

A little further illustration of the pronoun will show you its importance, and also that its nature is very easily comprehended. If we had no pronouns in our language, we should be obliged to express ourselves in this manner: "A woman went to a man, and told the man that the man was in danger of being murdered by a gang of robbers; as a gang of robbers had made preparations for attacking the man. The man thanked the woman for the woman's kindness, and, as the man was unable to defend the man's self, the man left the man's house, and went to a neighbour's."

This would be a laborious style indeed; but, by the help of pronouns, we can express the same ideas with far greater ease and con-

oiseness: "A woman went to a man, and told *him* that *he* was in great danger of being murdered by a gang of robbers, *who* had made preparations for attacking *him*. *He* thanked *her* for *her* kindness; and, as *he* was unable to defend *himself*, *he* left *his* house, and went to a neighbour's."

If you look at these examples a few moments, you cannot be at a loss to tell which words are pronouns; and you will observe, too, that they all stand for nouns.

Pronouns are generally divided into three kinds, the *Personal*, the *Adjective*, and the *Relative* pronouns. They are all known by the *lists*.

1. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns are distinguished from the relative, by their denoting the *person* of the nouns for which they stand. There are five of them; *I, thou, he, she, it;* with their plurals, *We, ye* or *you, they*.

To pronouns belong gender, person, number, and case.

Gender.—When we speak of a *man*, we say *he, his, him*; when we speak of a *woman*, we say *she, hers, her*; and when we speak of a *thing* we say *it*. Hence, you perceive that gender belongs to pronouns as well as to nouns. Example: "The general, in gratitude to the lady, offered *her his* hand; but *she*, not knowing *him*, declined accepting *it*." The pronouns *his* and *him*, in this sentence, personate or represent the noun *general;* they are, therefore, of the masculine gender; *her* and *she* personate *lady;* therefore, they are feminine; and *it* represents *hand*, for which reason it is of the neuter gender. This illustration shows you, then, that pronouns must be of the same gender as the nouns are for which they stand. But, as it relates to the variation of the pronouns to express sex,

Gender has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, *he, she, it*. *He* is masculine; *she* is feminine; *it* is neuter.

You may naturally inquire, why pronouns of the first and second persons are not varied to denote the gender of their nouns, as well as of the third. The reason is obvious. The first person, that is, the person speaking, and the second person, or the person spoken to, being at the same time the subjects of the discourse, are supposed to be present; from which, and other circumstances, their sex is commonly known, and, therefore, the pronouns that represent these persons need not be marked by a distinction of gender; but the third person, that is, the person or thing spoken of, being absent, and

many respects unknown, necessarily requires the pronoun that stands for it to be marked by a distinction of gender.

In parsing, we sometimes apply gender to pronouns of the first and second person, and also to the plural number of the third person; but these have no peculiar form to denote their gender; therefore they have no agreement, in this respect, with the nouns which they represent.

PERSON. Pronouns have three persons in each number.

I, is the first person *Thou*, is the second person *He*, *she*, or *it*, is the third person	Singular.
We, is the first person *Ye* or *you*, is the second person *They* is the third person	Plural.

This account of persons will be very intelligible, when you reflect that there are three persons who may be the subject of any discourse; first, the person who speaks, may speak of himself; secondly, he may speak of the person to whom he addresses himself; thirdly, he may speak of some other person; and as the speakers, the persons spoken to, and the persons spoken of, may be many, so each of these persons must have a plural number.

Pronouns of the second and third person always agree in person with the nouns they represent; but pronouns of the first person do not. Whenever a pronoun of the first person is used, it represents a noun; but nouns are *never* of the first person, therefore these pronouns cannot agree in person with their nouns.

NUMBER. Pronouns like nouns, have two numbers, the singular and the plural; as, *I, thou, he; we, ye* or *you, they.*

CASE. Pronouns have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective.

In the next place I will present to you the *declension* of the personal pronouns, which declension you must commit to memory before you proceed any further.

The advantages resulting from the committing of the following declension are so great and deversified that you cannot be too particular in your attention to it. You recollect that it is sometimes very difficult to distinguish the nominative case of a noun from the objective, because these cases of nouns are not marked by a difference in termination; but this difficulty is removed in regard to the personal pronouns, for their cases are always known by their termination. By studying the declension you will learn not only the cases of the pronouns, but also their genders, persons, and numbers.

DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nominative	I,	we,
Possessive	my *or* mine,	our *or* ours,
Objective	me.	us.

SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nominative	thou,	ye *or* you,
Possessive	thy *or* thine,	your *or* yours,
Objective	thee.	you.

THIRD PERSON.

Masculine.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Nominative	he,	they,
Possessive	his,	their *or* theirs,
Objective	him.	them.

THIRD PERSON.

Feminine.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Nominative	she,	they,
Possessive	her *or* hers,	their *or* theirs,
Objective	her.	them.

THIRD PERSON.

Neuter.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Nominative	it,	they,
Possessive	its,	their *or* theirs,
Objective	it.	them.

NOTES.

1. When *self* is added to the personal pronouns, as himself, myself itself, themselves, &c., they are called *compound personal pronouns* and are used in the nominative or objective case, but not in the possessive.

2. In order to avoid the disagreeable harshness of sound occasioned by the frequent recurrence of the terminations *est, edst*, in the adaptation of our verbs to the nominative *thou*, a modern innovation which substitutes *you* for *thou*, in familiar style, has generally been adopted. This innovation contributes greatly to the harmony of our colloquial style. *You* was formerly restricted to the plural number; but now it is employed to represent either a singular or a plural noun. It ought to be recollected, however, that when used as the representative of a singular noun, this word retains its original *plural form*: and, therefore, the verb connected with it should always be plural. Inattention to this peculiarity has betrayed some writers into the erroneous conclusion that because *you* implies unity when it represents a singular noun, it ought, when thus employed, to be followed by a singular verb; as, "When *was you* there?" "How far *was you* from the parties? Such a construction, however, is not supported by *good* usage, nor by analogy. It is as manifest a solecism as to say, We *am*, or we *is*. Were it, in any case, admissible to connect a singular verb with *you*, the use of *was* would still be ungrammatical, for this form of the verb is confined to the first and third persons, and *you* is second person. *Wast* being second person, it would appropri-

mate nearer to correctness to say, you *wast*. We never use the singular of the present tense with you: you *art*, you *is*; you *walkest*, you *walks*. Why, then, should any attempt be made to force an usage so unnatural and gratuitous as the connecting of the singular verb in the past tense with this pronoun? In every point of view, the construction, "When *were* you there? "How far *were* you from the parties," is preferable to the other.

3. The words *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, are, by many denominated *possessive adjective pronouns*; but they always *stand* for nouns in the possessive case. They ought, therefore, to be classed with the *personal* pronouns. That principle of classification which ranks them with the adjective pronouns would also throw all nouns in the possessive case among the adjectives. Example: "The lady gave the gentleman *her* watch for *his* horse. In this sentence *her* personates, or stands for, the noun "lady," and *his* represents "gentleman." This fact is clearly shown by rendering the sentence thus, "The lady gave the gentleman the *lady's* watch for the *gentleman's* horse." If *lady's* and *gentleman's* are nouns, *her* and *his* must be personal pronouns. The same remarks apply to *my*, *thy*, *our*, *your*, *their*, and *its*. This view of these words may be objected to by those who speculate and refine upon the principles of grammar until they prove their nonexistence, but it is believed, nevertheless, to be based on sound reason and common sense.

4. *Mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, have, by many respectable grammarians, been considered merely the possessive cases of personal pronouns; whilst by others they have boen denominated pronouns or nouns in the nominative or objective case. It is believed, however, that a little attention to the meaning and office of these words will clearly show the impropriety of both these classifications. Those who pursue the former arrangement allege, that in the examples "You may imagine what kind of faith *theirs* was: My pleasures are past; *hers* and *yours* are to come: They applauded his conduct, but condemned *hers* and *yours*," the words *theirs*, *hers*, and *yours* are personal pronouns in the possessive case, and governed by their respective nouns understood. To prove this, they construct the sentences thus, "You may imagine what kind of faith *their faith* was;—*her pleasures* and *your pleasures* are to come;—but condemned *her conduct* and *your conduct*;" or thus, "You may imagine what kind of faith the faith of them was;—the pleasures of her and the pleasures of you are to come;—but condemned the conduct of her and the conduct of you." But these constructions (both of which are correct) prove too much for their purpose; for, as soon as we supply the nouns after these words, they are resolved into personal pronouns of kindred meaning, and the nouns which we supply: thus, *theirs* becomes their faith; *hers*, her pleasures; and *yours*, your pleasures. This evidently gives us two words instead of, and altogether distinct from, the first; so that, in parsing *their faith*, we are not, in reality, analyzing *theirs*, but two other words of which *theirs* is the proper representative. These remarks also prove, with equal force, the impropriety of calling these words merely simple pronouns or nouns in the nominative or objective case. Without attempting to develope the original or intrinsic meaning of these pluralizing adjuncts *n* and *s*, which were, no doubt, formerly detached from the pronouns with which they now coalesce, for all practical purposes it is sufficient for us to know, that in the present application of these pronouns they in-

variably stand for, not only the person possessing, but, also, the thing possessed, which gives them a *compound* character. They may, therefore, be properly denominated COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS; and, as they always perform a double office in a sentence, by representing two other words, and, consequently, including two cases, they should, like the compound relative *what*, be parsed as two words. Thus, in the example, "You may imagine what kind of faith theirs was," *theirs* is a compound personal pronoun, equivalent to *their faith*. *Their* is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun; personal, it personates the persons spoken of, understood; third person, plural number, &c.; and in the possessive case, and governed by "faith," according to Rule 12. *Faith* is a noun, the name of a thing, &c. &c.; and in the nominative case to "*was*," and governs it; Rule 3. Or, if we render the sentence thus, "You may imagine what kind of faith *the faith of them** was," *faith* would be in the nominative case to "was," and *them* would be in the objective case, and governed by "of;" Rule 31.

Objections to this method of treating these pronouns, will doubtless be preferred by those who assert, that a noun is understood after these words, and not represented by them. But this is assertion without proof; for, if a noun were understood, it might be supplied. If the question be put whose book? and the answer be, *mine*, *ours*, *hers*, or *theirs*, the word book is included in such answer. Were it not included, we might supply it, thus, mine *book*, ours *book*, hers *book*, and so on. This, however, we cannot do, for it would be giving a *double* answer: but when the question is answered by a noun in the possessive case, the word book is not included, but implied; as, Whose book? John's, Richard's; that is, John's *book*; Richard's *book*.

This view of the subject, without a parallel, except in the compounds *what*, *whoever*, and *others*, is respectfully submitted to the public; believing, that those who approve of a critical analysis of words, will coincide with me. Should any still be disposed to treat these words so superficially as to rank them among the simple pronouns, let them answer the following interrogatory. If *what*, when compound, should be parsed as two words, why not *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, and *theirs*?

5. *Mine* and *thine*, instead of *my* and *thy*, are used in solemn style, before a word beginning with a vowel or silent *h*; as, "Blot out all *mine* iniquities; and when thus used, they are not compound. *His* always has the same form, whether simple or compound; as, "Give John *his* book; That desk is *his*." *Her*, when placed before a noun, is in the possessive case; as, "Take *her* hat;" when standing alone, it is in the objective case; as, "Give the hat to *her*."

When you shall have studied this lecture attentively, and committed the *declensions* of the personal pronouns, you may commit the following

---

* In the note next proceeding, it is asserted, that my, thy, his, her, our, your, and their, are personal pronouns. What can more clearly demonstrate the correctness of that assertion, than this latter construction of the word *them*? All admit, that, in the construction, "The faith *of them*," the word *them* is a personal pronoun; and for this conclusive reason,—it represents a noun understood. What, then, is *their*, in the phrase, "their faith?" Is it not obvious, that, if *them* is a personal pronoun, *their* must be, also? for the latter represents the same noun as the former.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing a PERSONAL PRONOUN is—a pronoun, and why ?—personal, and why ?—person, and why ?—gender and number, and why ?—RULE ; case, and why ?—RULE.—Decline it.

There are many peculiarities to be observed in parsing personal pronouns in their different persons; therefore if you wish ever to parse them correctly, you must pay particular attention to the manner in which the following are analyzed. Now notice, particularly, and you will perceive that we apply only *one* rule in parsing *I* and *my*, and *two* in parsing *thou*, *him*, and *they*.

"*I* saw *my* friend."

I is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—personal, it represents the person speaking, understood—first person, it denotes the speaker—singular number, it implies but one—and in the nominative case, it represents the actor and subject of the verb "saw," and governs it, agreeably to RULE 3. The *nom. case gov. the verb.* Declined—first pers. sing. num. nom. I, poss. my or mine, obj. me. Plur. nom. we, poss, our or ours, obj. us.

My is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—personal, it personates the person speaking, understood—first person, it denotes the speaker—sing. num. it implies but one—and in the possessive case, it denotes possession ; it is govered by the noun "friend," agreeably to RULE 12. *A noun or pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the noun it possesses.* Declined—first pers. sing. nom. I, poss. my or mine, obj. me. Plur. nom. we, poss. our or ours, obj. us.

"Young man, *thou* hast deserted thy companion, and left *him* in distress."

Thou is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—personal, it personates "man"—second person, it represents the person spoken to—mas. gend. sing. num. because the noun "man" is for which it stands, according to.

RULE 13. *Personal pronouns must agree with the nouns for which they stand in gender and number.*

Thou is in the nom. case, it represents the actor and subject of the verb 'hast deserted," and govern it agreeably to RULE 3. *The nom. case gov. the verb.* Declined—sec. pers. sing, num, nom. thou, poss. thy or thine. obj. thee. Plur. nom. ye or you, poss. your or yours, obj. you.

Him is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—personal, it personates "companion"—third pers. it represents the person spoken of—mas. gend. sing. num. because the noun "companion" is for which it stands: RULE 13. *Pers. pro.*, &c. (Repeat the Rule.)—*Him* is in the objective case, the object of the action expressed by the active-transitive verb "hast left," and gov. by it: RULE 20. *Active-trans. verbs gov. the obj. case.* Declined—third pers. mas. gend.

sing. num. nom. he, poss. his, obj. him. Plur. nom. they, poss. their or theirs, obj. them.

"Thrice I raised my voice, and called the chiefs to combat; but *they* dreaded the force of my arm."

They is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—personal, it represents "chiefs"—third pers. it denotes the persons spoken of—mas. gend. plur. num. because the noun "chiefs" is for which it stands; RULE 13. *Pers. pron.* &c. (Repeat the Rule.) It is the nom. case, it represents the actors and subject of the verb "dreaded," and governs it: RULE 3. *The nom. case gov. the verb.* Declined—third pers. mas. gend. sing. num. nom. he, poss. his, obj. him. Plur. nom. they, poss. their or theirs, obj. them.

NOTE. We do not apply gender in parsing the personal pronouns, (excepting the third person singular,) if the nouns they represent are understood; and therefore we do not, in such instances, apply Rule 13. But when the noun is expressed, gender should be applied, and *two* Rules.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

I saw a man leading his horse slowly over the new bridge. My friends visit me very often at my father's office. We improve ourselves by close application. Horace, thou learnest many lessons. Charles, you, by your diligence, make easy work of the task given you by your preceptor. Young ladies, you run over your lessons very carelessly. The stranger drove his horses too far into the water, and, in so doing, he drowned them.

Gray morning rose in the east. A green narrow vale appeared before us; its winding stream murmured through the grove. The dark host of Rothmar stood on its banks with their glittering spears. We fought along the vale. They fled. Rothmar sunk beneath my sword. Day was descending in the west, when I brought his arms to Crothar. The aged hero felt them with his hands: joy brightened his thoughts.

NOTE. *Horace, Charles,* and *ladies,* are of the second person, and nom. case, *independent;* see RULE 5, and NOTE. The first *you* is used in the nom. poss. and obj. case. It represents Charles, therefore it is *singular* in sense, although plural in form. In the next ample, *you* personifies *ladies*, therefore it is *plural*. *Given* is a perfect participle. *You* following given, is governed by *to* understood, according to Note 1, under Rule 32. *Run over* is a compound verb. *And* is a conjunction. The first *its* personates vale; the second *its* represents stream.

You may now parse the following examples three times over.

COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

"Juliet, retain her paper, and present *yours.*"

Yours is a compound personal pronoun, representing both the possessor and the thing possessed, and is equivalent to *your paper*. *Your* is a pronoun; a word used instead of a noun—personal, it personates "Juliet"—second person, it represents the person spoken to—fem. gender, sing. number, (singular in sense, but—*plural* in form,) because the noun Juliet is for which it stands: Rule 13. *Pers. Pron.*, &c,—*your* is in the possessive case, it denotes possession, and is governed by "paper," according to Rule 12. *A noun or pron.*, &c. (Repeat the Rule, and decline the pronoun.) *Paper* is a noun, the name of a thing—common, the name of a sort of things—neuter gender, it denotes a thing without sex—third

person, spoken of—sing. number, it implies but one—and the obj. case, it is the object of the action expressed by the transitive verb "present," and governed by it: Rule 20. *Active-transitive verbs govern the obj. case.*

NOTE. Should it be objected, that *yours* does not mean *your paper*, any more than it means, *your book, your house, your* any thing, let it borne in mind, that pronouns have no *definite* meaning, like other words; but their *particular* signification is always determined by the nouns they represent.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Julia injured her book, and soiled mine: hers is better than mine. My friend sacrificed his fortune to secure yours: his deeds deserve reward; yours merit disgrace. Henry's labours are past; thine are to come. We leave your forests of beasts for ours of men. My sword and yours are kin.

NOTE. *She* understood, is nominative to *soiled*, in the first example; and the substantive part of *mine*, after than, is nom. to *is*, understood: Rule 35. The verbs *to secure* and *to come* have no nominative. The pronouns *mine, my, yours, thine, we, your, ours, my*, and *yours*, personate nouns understood.

REMARKS ON *IT*.

For the want of a proper knowledge of this little pronoun *it*, many grammarians have been greatly puzzled how to dispose of it, or how to account for its multiform, and, seemingly contradictory characters. It is in great demand by writers of every description, They use it without ceremony; either in the nominative or objective case; either to represent one person or thing, or more than one. It is applied to nouns in the masculine, feminine, or neuter gender, and, very frequently, it represents a member of a sentence, a whole sentence, or a number of sentences taken in a mass.

A little attention to its true character, will, at once, strip it of all its mystery. *It* formerly written *hit*, according to H. Tooke, is the past participle of the Moeso-Gothic verb *haitan*. It means, *the said*, and, therefore, like its near relative *that*, meaning, *the assumed*, originally, had no respect, in its application, to number, person, or gender. "*It* is a wholesome law;" i. e. *the said* (law) is a wholesome law; or, *that* (law) is a wholesome law;—*the assumed* (law) is a wholesome law. "*It* is the man; I believe *it* to be them:"—*the said* (man) is the man; *that* (man) is the man: I believe *the said* (persons) to be them; I believe *that* persons (according to the ancient application of *that*) to be them "*It* happened on a summer's day, that many people were assembled," &c.—Many people were assembled: *it, that*, or *the said* (fact or circumstance) happened on a summer's day.

It, according to its accepted meaning in modern times, is not referred to a noun understood after it, but it is considered a substitute. "How is *it* with you?" that is, "How is your *state or condition*?" "*It* rains; *It* freezes; *It* is a hard winter;"—*The rain* rains; *The frost* frosts or freezes: *The said* (winter) is a hard winter. "*It* is delightful to see brothers and sisters living in uninterrupted love to the end of their days." What is delightful? *To see brothers and sisters live in uninterrupted love to the end of their days. It, this thing*, is delightful. *It*, then, stands for all that part of the sentence expressed in Italics; and the sentence will admit of the following construction, "To see brothers and sisters living in uninterrupted love to the end of their days, is delightful."

OF ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, NOMINAL ADJECTIVES, or more properly, SPECIFYING ADJECTIVES, are a kind of adjectives which point out nouns by some distinct specification.

Pronouns and adjectives are totally distinct in their character. The former *stand* for nouns, and never belong to them; the latter *belong to* nouns, and never stand for them. Hence, such a thing as an *adjective-pronoun* cannot exist. *Each, every, either this, that some, other*, and the residue, are pure adjectives.

Those specifying adjectives commonly called Adjective Pronouns, may be divided into three sorts; the *distributive*, the *demonstrative*, and the *indefinite*. They are all known by the *lists*.

I. The *distributive adjectives* are those that denote the persons or things that make up a number, each taken separately and singly. *List: each, every, either*, and sometimes *neither*; as, "*Each* of his brothers is in a favourable situation;" "*Every* man must account for himself," "*Neither* of them is industrious."

These distributives are words which are introduced into language in its refined state in order to express the nicest shades and colours of thought. "*Man* must account for himself;" "*Mankind* must account for themselves;" "*All men* must account for themselves;" "*All men, women* and *children*, must account for themselves;" *Every man* must account for himself." Each of these assertions conveys the same fact or truth. But, the last, instead of presenting the whole human family for the mind to contemplate in a mass, by the peculiar force of *every, distributes* them, and presents each separately and singly; and whatever is affirmed of one individual, the mind instantaneously transfers to the whole human race.

Each relates to two or more persons or things, and signifies either of the two, or every one of any number taken separately.

Every relates to several persons or things, and signifies each one of them all taken separately.

Either relates to *two* persons or things taken separately, and signifies the one or the other. "*Either* of the *three*," is an improper expression. It should be, "any of the three."

Neither imports *not either;* that is, not one nor the other; as, "*Neither* of my friends was there." When an allusion is made to more than *two, none* should be used instead of *neither;* as, "*None* of my friends was there."

II. The *demonstratives* are those which precisely point out the sbuject to which they relate. *List: this* and *that*, and their plurals, *these* and *those*, and *former* and *latter;* as, "*This* is true charity; *that* is only its image.

There is but a slight shade of difference in the meaning and application of *the* and *that*. When reference is made to a particular book, we say, "Take *the* book;" but when we wish to be very pointed and precise, we say, "Take *that* book;" or, if it be near by, "Take *this* book." You perceive, then, that these demonstratives have all the force of the definite article, and a little more.

This and *these* refer to the nearest persons or things, *that* and *those* to the most distant; as, "*These* goods are superior to those." *This* and *these* indicate the latter, or last mentioned; *that* and *those*, the former, or first mentioned; as, "Both *wealth* and *poverty* are temptations; *that* tends to excite pride, *this*, disconteut."

"*Some* place the bliss in action, *some* in ease;
"*Those* call it pleasure, and contentment, *these*."

They, those. As it is the office of the personal *they* to represent a noun previously introduced to our notice, there appears to be a slight departure from analogy in the following application of it: "*They* who seek after wisdom, are sure to find her: *They* that sow in tears, sometimes reap in joy." This usage, however, is well established, and *they*, in such constructions, is generally employed in preference to *those*.

III. The *indefinite* are those which express their subjects in an indefinite or general manner. *List: some, other, any, one, all, such, both, same, another, none.* Of these, *one* and *other* are declined like nouns. *Another* is declined, but wants the plural.

The indefinite adjectives, like the indefinite article, leave the meaning unfixed, or, in some degree, vague. With a slight shade of difference of meaning, we say, Give me *a* paper, *one* paper, *any* paper *some* paper, and so on. Though these words restrict the meaning of the noun, they do not fix it to a *particular* object. We therefore call them indefinite.

These adjectives, or adjective pronouns, frequently belong to nouns understood, in which situation they should be parsed accordingly; as, "You may take *either;* He is pleased with *this* book, but dislikes *that* (book;) *All* (men) have sinned, but *some* (men) have repented."

The words *one, other*, and *none*, are used in both numbers; and when they stand *for* nouns, they are not adjectives, but indefinite *pronouns;* as, "The great *ones*

of the world have their failings;" "Some men increase in wealth, while *others* decrease;' "*None* escape."

The word "ones," in the preceding example, does not belong to a noun understood. If it did, we could supply the noun. The meaning is not "the great one men, nor ones men," therefore *one* is not an adjective pronoun; but the meaning is, "The great *men* of the world," therefore *ones* is a pronoun of the indefinite kind, representing the noun *men* understood, and it ought to be parsed like a personal pronoun. The word *others*, in the next example, is a compound pronoun, equivalent to *other men*; and should be parsed like *mine*, *thine*, &c. See Note 4th, page 100.

I will now parse two pronouns, and then present some examples for you to analyze. If, in parsing the following exercises, you should be at a loss for definitions and rules, please to refer to the Compendium. But before you proceed, you may commit the following

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing an ADJECTIVE PRONOUN, is—an adjective pronoun, and why?—distributive, demonstrative, or indefinite, and why?—to what noun does it belong, or with what does it agree?—RULE.

"*One* man instructs many *others*."

One is an adjective pronoun, or specifying adjective, it specifically points out a noun—indefinite, it expresses its subject in an indefinite or general manner, and belongs to the noun "man," according to

RULE 9. *Adjective pronouns belong to nouns, expressed or understood.*

Others is a compound pronoun, including both an adjective pronoun and a noun, and is equivalent to *other men*. *Other* is an adjective pronoun, it is used specifically to describe its noun—indefinite it expresses its subject in an indefinite manner, and belongs to *men*: RULE 19. (Repeat the rule.) *Men* is a noun, a name denoting persons—common, &c., (parse it in full;) and in the objective case, it is the object of the action expressed by the transitive verb "instructs," and gov. by it: RULE 20. *Active-transitive verbs*, &c.

"*Those* books are *mine*."

Those is an adjective pronoun, it specifies what noun it referred to—demonstrative, it precisely points out the subject to which it relates—and agrees with the noun "books" in the plural number, according to NOTE 1, under Rule 19. *Adjective pronouns must agree in number with their nouns.*

Mine is a compound personal pronoun, including both the possessor and the thing possessed, and is equivalent to *my books*. *My* is a pron. a word used instead of a noun—personal, it stands for the name of the person speaking—first person, it denotes the speaker—sing. number, it implies but one—and in the poss. case, it denotes

possession, and is gov. by "books," according to Rule 12. (Repeat the Rule, and decline the pronoun.) *Books* is a noun, the name of a thing—common, &c. (parse it in full;)—and in the nominative case after "are," according to Rule 21. *The verb* to be *admits the same case after it as before it.*

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Each individual fills a space in creation. Every man helps a little. These men rank among the great ones of the world. That book belongs to the tutor, this belongs to me. Some men labour, others labour not; the former increase in wealth, the latter decrease. The boy wounded the old bird, and stole the young ones. None performs his duty too well. None of these poor wretches complain of their miserable lot.

NOTE. In parsing the distributive pronominal adjectives, NOTE 2, under Rule 19, should be applied.

III. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS are such as relate, in general, to some word or phrase going before, which is called the antecedent. They are *who*, *which*, and *that*.

The word *antecedent*, comes from the two Latin words, *ante*, *before*, and *cedo*, *to go*. Hence, you perceive, that antecedent means going before; thus, "The *man* is happy *who* lives virtuously: This is the *lady* who relieved my wants; *Thou who* lovest wisdom, &c. *We who* speak from experience," &c. The relative who, in these sentences, relates to the several words, *man*, *lady*, *thou*, and *we*, which words, you observe, come before the relative: they are, therefore, properly called antecedents.

The relative is not varied on account of gender, person, or number, like a personal pronoun. When we use a personal pronoun, in speaking of a man, we say *he*, and of a woman, *she*; in speaking of of one person or thing, we use a singular pronoun, of more than one, a plural, and so on; but there is no such variation of the relative. *Who*, in the first of the preceding examples, relates to an antecedent of the mas. gend. third pers. sing.; in the second, the antecedent is of the fem. gend.; in the third, it is of the second pers.; and in the fourth, it is of the first pers. plur. num.; and, yet, the relative is in the same form in each example. Hence you perceive, that the relative has no peculiar *form* to denote its gend. pers. and numb., but it always agrees with its antecedent *in sense*. Thus, when I say, The *man who* writes, *who* is masculine gend. and sing.; but when I say, The *ladies who* write, *who* is feminine, and plural. In order to ascertain the gend. pers. and numb. of the relative, you must always look at its antecedent.

WHO, WHICH, and THAT.

Who is applied to *persons*, *which* to *things* and *brutes*;

as, "He is a *friend who* is faithful in adversity; The *bird which* sung so sweetly, is flown; This is the *tree which* produces no fruit."

That is often used as a relative, to prevent the too frequent repetition of *who* and *which*. It is applied both to persons and things; as, "He *that* acts wisely, deserves praise; Modesty is a *quality that* highly adorns a woman."

NOTES.

1. *Who* should never be applied to animals. The following application of it is erroneous:—"He is like a *beast* of prey, *who* destroys without pity." It should be, *that* destroys, &c.

2. *Who* should not be applied to children. It is incorrect to say, "The *child whom* we have just seen." &c. It should be, "the child *that* we have just seen."

3. *Which* may be applied to persons when we wish to distinguish one person of two, or a particular person among a number of others; as, "*Which* of the two? *Which* of them is he?"

4. *That*, in preference to *who* or *which*, is applied to persons when they are qualified by an adjective in the superlative degree, or by the pronominal adjective *same*; as, "Charles XII., king of Sweden, was one of the *greatest* madmen *that* the world ever saw;—He is the *same* man *that* we saw before."

5. *That* is employed after the interrogative *who*, in cases like the following: "Who *that* has any sense of religion, would have argued thus?"

When the word *ever* or *soever* is annexed to a relative pronoun, the combination is called a *compound pronoun*; as, *whoever* or *whosoever*, *whichever* or *whichsoever*, *whatever* or *whatsoever*.

DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Nom.	who,	*Poss.*	whose,	*Obj.*	whom.
"	whoever,	"	whosever,	"	whomever.
"	whosoever,	"	whosesoever,	"	whomsoever.

Which and *that* are indeclinable, except that *whose* is sometimes used as the possessive case of *which*; as, "Is there any other doctrine *whose* followers are punished?" that is, the followers *of which* are punished. The use of this license has obtained among our best writers; but the construction is not to be recommended, for it is a departure from a plain principle of grammar, namely, who, whose, whom, in their applications, should be confined to rational beings.

That may be used as a pronoun, an adjective, and a conjunction, depending on the office which it performs in the sentence.

That is a relative only when it can be changed to *who* or *which* without destroying the sense; as, "They *that* (who) reprove us, may be our best friends; From every thing *that* (which) you see, derive instruction." *That* is a demonstrative adjective, when it belongs to, or points out, some particular noun, either expressed or implied; as, "Return *that* book; *That* belongs to me; Give me *that*." When *that* is neither a relative nor an adjective pronoun, it is a conjunction; as, "Take care *that* every day be well employed." The word *that*, in this last sentence, cannot be changed to *who* or *which* without destroying the sense, therefore you know it is not a relative pronoun; neither does it point out any particular noun, for which reason you know it is not an adjective pronoun; but it connects the sentence, therefore it is a conjunction.

If you pay particular attention to this elucidation of the word *that*, you will find no difficulty in parsing it. When it is a relative or an adjective pronoun, it may be known by the signs given; and whenever these signs will not apply to it, you know it is a conjunction.

Some writers are apt to make too free a use of this word. I will give you one example of affronted *that* which may serve as a caution. The tutor said, in speaking of the word that, that that that that that lady parsed, was not the that that that gentleman requested her to analyze. This sentence, though rendered inelegant by a bad choice of words, is strictly grammatical. The first *that* is a noun; the second, a conjunction; the third, an adjective pronoun; the fourth, a noun; the fifth, a relative pronoun; the sixth, an adjective pronoun; the seventh, a noun; the eight, a relative pronoun; the ninth, an adjective pronoun. The meaning of the sentence will be more obvious, if rendered thus: The tutor said, in speaking of the word that, that that that *which* that lady parsed, was not the that *which* that gentleman requested her to analyze.

WHAT.

What is generally a compound relative, including both the antecedent and the relative, and is equivalent to *that which;* as, "This is *what* I wanted;" that is, *that which*, or, *the thing which* I wanted.

What is a compound of *which that*. These words have been contracted and made to coalesce, a part of the orthography of both being still retained: *what—wh*[*ich*]*—th*[*at;* (*which-that.*) Anciently it appeared in the varying forms, *tha qua, qua tha, qu'tha, quthat, qwhat, hwat*, and finally *what*.

What may be used as three kinds of a pronoun, and as an interjection. When it is equivalent to *that which, the thing which*, or *those things which*, it is a compound relative, because it includes both the antecedent and the relative; as, "I will try *what* (that which) can be found in female delicacy; *What* you recollect with most pleasure,

are the virtuous actions of your past life;" that is, *those things which* you recollect, &c.

When *what* is a compound relative, you must always parse it as two words; that is, you must parse the antecedent part as a noun, and give it a case; the relative part you may analyze like any other relative, giving it a case likewise. In the first of the preceding examples, *that*, the antecedent part of *what*, it is in the obj. case, governed by the verb "will try;" *which*, the relative part, is the nom. case to "can be found." "I have heard *what* (i. e. *that which*, or *the thing which*) has been alleged."

Whoever and *whosoever* are also compound relatives, and should be parsed like the compound *what;* as, "*Whoever* takes that oath, is bound to enforce the laws." In this sentence, *whoever* is equivalent to *he who*, or, *the man who;* thus, "*He who* takes that oath, is bound," &c.

Who, *which*, and *what*, when used in asking questions, are called interrogative pronouns, or relatives of the interrogative kind; as, "*Who* is he? *Which* is the person? *What* are you doing?"

Interrogative pronouns have no antecedent; but they relate to the word or phrase which is the answer to the question, for their subsequent; as, "*Whom* did you see? The *preceptor*. *What* have you done? *Nothing*." Antecedent and subsequent are opposed to each other in signification. Antecedent means preceding, or going before and subsequent means following, or coming after. *What*, when used as an interrogative, is never compound.

What, *which*, and *that*, when joined to nouns, are specifying adjectives, or adjective pronouns, in which situation they have no case, but are parsed like adjective pronouns of the demonstrative or indefinite kind; as, "Unto *which* promise our twelve tribes hope to come;" "*What* misery the vicious endure! *What* havoc hast thou made, foul monster, sin."

What and *which*, when joined to nouns in asking questions, are denominated interrogative pronominal adjectives; as, "*What man* is that? *Which road* did he take?"

What, *whatever*, and *whatsoever*, *which*, *whichever*, and *whichsoever*, in constructions like the following, are compound pronouns, but not compound relatives; as, "In *what* character Butler was admitted, is unknown; Give him *what* name you choose; Nature's care largely endows *whatever* happy man will deign to use her treasures; Let him take *which* course, or, *whichever* course he will." These sentences may be rendered thus; "*That* character, or, *the* character in *which* Butler was admitted, is unknown; Give him *that* name, or, *the* name *which* you choose; Nature's care endows *that* happy man *who* will deign, &c.; Let him take *that* course, or, *the* course *which* he will." A compound relative necessarily includes both an antecedent and a relative. These compounds, you will notice, do not include antecedents, the first part of each word being the article *the* or the adjective pronoun *that;* therefore they cannot properly be de-

nominated compound relatives.—With regard to the word *ever* annexed to these pronouns, it is a singular fact, as soon as we analyze the word to which it is subjoined, *ever* is entirely excluded from the sentence.

What is sometimes used as an interjection; as, "But *what!* is thy servant a dog, that he should do this? *What!* rob us of our right of suffrage, and then shut us up in dungeons!"

You have now come to the most formidable obstacle, or, if I may so speak, to the most rugged eminence in the path of grammatical science; but be not disheartened, for, if you can get safely over this your future course will be interrupted with only here and there a gentle elevation. It will require close application, and a great deal of sober thinking, to gain a clear conception of the nature of the relative pronouns, particularly the compound relatives, which are not easily comprehended by the young learner. As this VIII. lecture is a very important one, it becomes necessary for you to read it carefully four or five times over before you proceed to commit the following order. Whenever you parse, you may spread the Compendium before you, if you please.

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing a RELATIVE PRONOUN, is—a pronoun, and why?—relative, and why?—gender, person, and number, and why?—RULE; case, and why?—RULE.—Decline it.

"This is the man *whom* we saw."

Whom is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—relative, it relates to "man" for its antecedent—mas. gend. third pers. sing. num., because the antecedent "man" is with which it agrees, according to

RULE 14. *Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender, person, and number.* *Whom* is in the objective case, the object of the action expressed by the active-transitive verb "saw" and governed by it, agreeably to

RULE 16. *When a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the following verb, or some other word in its own member of the sentence.*

Whom, in the objective case, is placed before the verb that governs it, according to NOTE 1, under Rule 16. (Repeat the Note, and decline *who*.)

"From *what* is recorded, he appears," &c.

What is a comp. rel. pron., including both the antecedent and the relative, and is equivalent to *that which*, or the *thing which*.—*Thing*, the antecedent part of *what*, is a noun, the name of a thing—com. the name of a species—neuter gender, it has no sex—third person, spoken of—sing. number, it implies but one—and in the obj. case, it

is the object of the relation expressed by the prep. "from," and gov. by it: RULE 31. (Repeat the Rule, and every other Rule to which I refer.) *Which*, the relative part of *what*, is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—relative, it relates to "thing" for its antecedent—neut. gend. third pers. sing. number, because the antecedent "thing" is with which it agrees, according to RULE 14. *Rel. pron.*, &c. *Which* is in the nom. case to the verb "is recorded," agreeably to

RULE 15. *The relative is the nominative case to the verb, when no nominative comes between it and the verb.*

"*What* have you learned? Nothing."

What is a pron., a word used, &c.—relative of the interrogative kind, because it is used in asking a question—it refers to the word "nothing" for its *subsequent*, according to

RULE 17. *When the rel. pron. is of the interrog. kind, it refers to the word or phrase containing the answer to the question for its subsequent, which subsequent must agree in case with the interrogative.* *What* is of the neut. gend. third pers. sing., because the subsequent "nothing" is with which it agrees: RULE 14. *Rel. pron. agree.* &c. —It is in the objective case, the object of the action of the active-transitive verb "have learned," and gov. by it, agreeably to RULE 16. *When a nom.*, &c. See NOTE 1, under the Rule.

NOTE 1. You need not apply gend. pers. and numb. to the interrogative when the answer to the question is not expressed.

WHO, WHICH, WHAT.

Truth and simplicity are twin sisters, and generally go hand in hand. The foregoing exposition of the "relative pronouns," is in accordance with the usual method of treating them; but if they were unfolded according to their true character, they would be found to be very simple, and, *doubtless*, much labour and perplexity, on the part of the learner, would thereby be saved.

Of the words called "relatives," *who*, only, is a pronoun; and this is strictly *personal*; more so, indeed, if we except *I* and *we*, than any other word in our language, for it is always restricted to persons. It ought to be classed with the personal pronouns. *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you*, and *they*, *relate* to antecedents, as well as *who*. *Which, that*, and *what*, are always adjectives. They never *stand for*, but always *belong to*, nouns, either expressed or implied. They *specify*, like many other adjectives, and *connect* sentences.

Who supplies the place of *which* or *what*, and its *personal noun*. *Who* came? i. e. *what man, what woman, what person*;—*which man, woman*, or *person*, came? "They heard *what* I said"—they heard *that* (thing) *which* (thing) I said. "Take *what* (or *whichever*) course you please;"—take *that* course *which* (course) you please to take. "*What* have you done?" i. e. *what thing, act*, or *deed*, have you done? "*Which thing* I also did at Jerusalem." "*Which* will you take?"—*which book, hat*, or something else? "This is the true

which (tree) produces no fruit." "He *that* (man, or *which* man) acts wisely, deserves praise."

They who prefer this method of treating the "Relatives," are at liberty to adopt it, and parse it accordingly.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

The man who instructs you, labours faithfully. The boy whom I instruct, learns well. The lady whose house we occupy, bestows many charities. That modesty which highly adorns a woman, she possesses. He that acts wisely, deserves praise. This is the tree which produces no fruit. I believe what he says. He speaks what he knows. Whatever purifies the heart, also fortifies it. What doest* thou? Nothing. What book have you? A poem. Whose hat have you? John's. Who does that work? Henry. Whom seest thou? To whom gave you the present? Which pen did he take? Whom you ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you. I heard what he said. George, you may pursue whatever science suits your taste. Eliza, take whichever pattern pleases you best. Whoever lives to see this republic forsake her moral and literary institutions, will behold her liberties prostrated. Whosoever, therefore, will be a friend of the world, is the enemy of God.

NOTE The nominative case is frequently placed after the verb, and the objective case, before the verb that governs it. *Whom*, in every sentence except one, *house*, *modesty*, *book*, *hat*, *pen*, *him*, the third *what* and *which*, the relative part of the first *two whats*, are all in the objective case, and governed by the several verbs that follow them. See RULE 16, and NOTE 1. *Tree* is nom. after *is*, according to RULE 21. Thing, the antecedent part of *whatever*, is nom. to "fortifies;" *which*, the relative part, is nom. to "purifies." *Nothing* is governed by *do*, and *poem* by *have*, understood. *Henry* is nom. to *does*, understood. *Whose* and *John's* are governed according to RULE 19. *I*, *thou*, *you*, *him*, &c., represent nouns understood. *Him*, in the last sentence but five, is governed by *declare*, and *I* is nominative to *declare*. *George* and *Eliza* are in the nominative case independent: RULE 5. "*Whatever* science," &c., is equivalent to, *that* science *which* suits your taste;—"*whichever* pattern" i. e. *that* pattern *which* pleases you best. *Whoever* is a compound relative; *he*, the antecedent part, is nominative to "will behold." *Take* agrees with *you* understood. *Forsake* is the infinitive mood after "see:" RULE 25.

REMARKS ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Which sometimes relates to a member of a sentence, or to a whole sentence, for its antecedent; as, "We are required to fear God and keep his commandments, *which* is the whole duty of man." What is the whole duty of man? "To fear God and keep his commandments;" therefore, this phrase is the antecedent to *which*.

The conjunction *as*, when it follows *such*, *many*, or *same*, is frequently

---

* The second person singular of *do*, when used as a principal verb, is spelled with an *e*; thus, "What thou *doest*, do quickly;" but when employed as an auxiliary, the *e* should be omitted; as, "*Dost* thou not *behold* a rock with its head of heath?"

denominated a relative pronoun; as, "I am pleased with *such as* have a refined taste;" that is, with *those who*, or *them who have*, &c. "Let *such as* presume to advise others, look well to their own conduct;" that is, Let *those* or *them who* presume, &c. "*As many as* were ordained to eternal life, believed;" that is, *they*, *those*, or *all who* were ordained, believed. "He exhibited the *same* testimonials *as* were adduced on a former occasion;" that is, *those* testimonials *which* were adduced, &c. But, in examples like these, if we supply the ellipsis which a critical analysis requires us to do, *as* will be found to be a conjunction; thus, "I am pleased with *such persons, as those persons are who* have a refined taste; Let *such persons, as those persons are who* presume," &c.

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

From what words is the term pronoun derived?—Do pronouns always avoid the repetition of nouns?—Name the three kinds of pronouns.—What distinguishes the personal from the relative pronouns?—How many personal pronouns are there?—Repeat them.—What belong to pronouns?—Is gender applied to all the personal pronouns?—To which of them is it applied?—Which of the personal pronouns have no peculiar terminations to denote their gender?—How many persons have pronouns?—Speak them in their different persons.—How many numbers have pronouns?—How many cases?—What are they?—Decline all the personal pronouns.—When *self* is added to the personal pronouns, what are they called, and how are they used?—When is *you* singular in sense?—Is it ever singular in form?—Why are the words *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, called personal pronouns?—Why are the words *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs* denominated compound personal pronouns?—How do you parse these compounds?—What is said of *others*?—Repeat the order of parsing a personal pronoun?—What Rule do you apply in parsing a pronoun of the first person, and in the nominative case?—What Rule when the pronoun is in the possessive case?—What Rules apply in parsing personal pronouns of the second and third person?—What Rules in parsing the compounds, *yours, ours, mine*, &c.?—What is said of the pronoun *it*.

What are adjective pronouns?—Name the three kinds.—What does *each* relate to?—To what does *every* relate?—To what does *either* relate?—What does *neither* import?—To what do *this* and *these* refer?—Give examples.—To what do *that* and *those* refer?—Give examples.—Repeat all the adjective pronouns. When adj. pronouns belong to nouns understood, how are they parsed?—When they stand for, or represent nouns, what are they called?—Give examples.—Repeat the order of parsing an adjective pronoun.—What Rule do you apply in parsing the indefinite adjective pronouns?—What Notes, in parsing the distributives and demonstratives?

What are relative pronouns?—Repeat them.—From what words is the term antecedent derived?—What does *antecedent* mean?—Are relatives varied on account of gender, person, or number?—To what are *who* and *which* applied?—To what is *that* applied?—Should *who* ever be applied to irrational beings or children?—In what instance may *which* be applied to persons?—Decline the relative pronouns.—Can *which* and *that* be declined?—Is *that* ever used as three parts of speech?—Give examples.—What part of speech is the word *what*?—Is *what* ever used as three kinds of a pronoun?—Give examples.—What is said of *whoever*? What words are used as interrogative pronouns?—Give examples.—When

are the words *what*, *which*, and *that*, called adjective pronouns?—When are they called interrogative pronominal adjectives?—What is said of *whatever* and *whichever*?—Is *what* ever used as an interjection?—Give examples.—Repeat the order of parsing a relative pronoun.—What Rules do you apply in parsing a relative?—What Rules in parsing a compound relative?—What Rules in parsing an interrogative?—Does the relative *which* ever relate to a sentence for its antecedent?—When does the conjunction *as* become a relative?—Give examples.

EXERCISES IN FALSE SYNTAX.

NOTE 1, to RULE 13. When a noun or pronoun is the subject of a verb, it must be in the nominative case.

Who will go? Him and I. How does thee do? Is thee well?

"Him and I;" not proper, because the pronoun *him* is the subject of the verb *will go* understood, therefore him should be in the nominative case, *he*, according to the above NOTE. (Repeat the NOTE.) *Him* and *I* are connected by the conjunction *and*, and *him* is in the objective case, and *I* in the nominative, therefore RULE 33rd is violated. (Repeat the RULE.) In the second and third examples, *thee* should be *thou*, according to the NOTE. The verbs, *does* and *is*, are of the third person, and the nominative *thou* is second, for which reason the verbs should be of the second person, *dost*, *do* and *art*, agreeably to RULE 4. You may correct the other examples, *four* times over.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Him and me went to town yesterday. Thee must be attentive. Him who is careless, will not improve. They can write as well as me. This is the man whom was expected. Her and I deserve esteem. I have made greater proficiency than he. Whom, of all my acquaintances, do you think was there? Whom, for the sake of his important services, had an office of honour bestowed upon him.

NOTE 2, to RULE 13. Personal pronouns being used to supply the place of nouns, should not be employed in the same member of the sentence with the noun which they represent.

FALSE SYNTAX.

The men they are there. I saw him the king. Our cause it is just. Many words they darken speech. The noble general who had gained so many victories, he died, at last, in prison. Who instead of going about doing good, they are continually doing evil.

In each of the preceding examples, the personal pronoun should be omitted, according to NOTE 2.

NOTE 3, to RULE 13. A personal pronoun in the objective case, should not be used instead of *these* and *those*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Remove them papers from the desk. Give me them books. Give them men their discharge. Observe them three there. Which of them two persons deserves most credit?

In all these examples, *those*, should be used in place of *them*. The use of the personal, *them*, in such constructions, presents two adjectives after one verb or preposition. This is a solecism which may be avoided by employing an adjective pronoun in its stead.

LECTURE IX.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences, joining two or more simple sentences into one compound sentence: it sometimes connects only words; as, "Thou *and* he are happy, *because* you are good."

Conjunctions are those parts of language, which, by joining sentences in different ways, mark, the connexions and various dependances of human thought. They belong to language only in its refined state.

The term CONJUNCTION comes from the two Latin words *con*, which signifies *together*, and *jugo*, to *join*. A conjunction. then, is a word that conjoins, or joins together something. Before you can fully comprehend the nature and office of this sort of words, it is requisite that you should know what is meant by a sentence, a simple sentence, and a compound sentence, for conjunctions are chiefly used to connect sentences.

A SENTENCE is an assemblage of words forming complete sense.

A SIMPLE SENTENCE contains but one subject, or nominative, and one verb which agrees with that nominative; as, "*Wheat grows* in the field."

You perceive that this sentence contains several words besides the nominative and the verb, and you will often see a simple sentence containing many parts of speech; but, if it has only one nominative and one *finite* verb, (that is, a verb *not* in the infinite mood.) it is a simple sentence, though it is longer than many compound sentences.

A COMPOUND SENTENCE is composed of two or more simple sentences connected together; as, "*Wheat grows* in the field and *men reap* it."

This sentence is compound, because it is formed of two simple sentences joined together by the word *and;* which word, on account of its connecting power, is called a conjunction. If we write this sentence without the conjunction, it becomes two simple sentences; thus, "Wheat grows in the field. Men reap it."

The nature and importance of the conjunction, are easily illustrated. After expressing one thought or sentiment, you know we frequently wish to *add* another, or several others, which are closely connected with it. We generally effect this addition by means of the conjunction: thus, "The Georgians cultivate rice *and* cotton;" that

is, "They cultivate rice, *add* cotton." This sentence is compound, and without the use of the conjunction, it would be written in two separate, simple sentences: thus, "The Georgians cultivate rice. They cultivate cotton." The conjunction, though chiefly used to connect sentences, sometimes connects only words; in which capacity it is nearly allied to the preposition; as, "The sun *and* (*add*) the planets constitute the solar system." In this, which is a simple sentence, *and* connects two *words*.

A few more examples will illustrate the nature, and exhibit the use of this part of speech so clearly, as to enable you fully to comprehend it. The following simple sentences are members of sentences, have no relation to each other until they are connected by conjunctions. He labours harder—more successfully—I do. That man is healthy—he is temperate. By filling up the vacancies in those sentences with conjunctions, you will see the importance of this sort of words; thus, "He labours harder *and* more successfully *than* I do. That man is healthy *because* he is temperate."

Conjunctions are divided into two sorts, the Copulative and the Disjunctive.

I. The Conjunction *Copulative* serves to connect and continue a sentence by joining on a member which expresses an addition, a supposition, or a cause; as, "Two *and* three are five; I will go *if* he will accompany me; You are happy *because* you are good."

In the first of these examples, *and* joins on a word that expresses an *addition*; in the second, *if* connects a member that implies a *supposition* or *condition;* and in the third, *because* connects a member that expresses a *cause*.

II. The Conjunction *Disjunctive* serves to connect and continue a sentence by joining on a member that expresses opposition of meaning; as, "They came with her, *but* they went away without her.'

But joins on a member of this sentence which expresses, not only something added, but, also, *opposition* of meaning.

The principal conjunctions may be known by the following *lists*, which you may now commit to memory. Some words in these lists are however, frequently used as adverbs, and sometimes as prepositions; but if you study well the nature of all the different sorts of words, you cannot be at a loss to tell the part of speech of any word in the language.

LISTS OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

Copulative. And, if, that, both, then, since, for, because, therefore, wherefore, provided, besides.

Disjunctive. But, or, nor, as, than, least, though, unless, either, neither, yet notwithstanding, nevertheless, except, whether, whereas, as well as.

Some conjunctions are followed by corresponding conjunctions, so that in the subsequent member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former; as,

1. *Though—yet* or *nevertheless;* as, "*Though* he was rich, *yet* for our sakes he became poor."
2. *Whether—or;* as, "*Whether* he will go *or* not, I cannot tell." It is improper to say, "Whether he will go or *no*."
3. *Either—or;* as, "I will *either* send it, *or* bring it myself."
4. *Neither —nor;* as, "*Neither* thou *nor* I can comprehend it."
5. *As—as;* as, "She is *as* amiable *as* her sister."
6. *As—so;* as, "As the stars, *so* shall thy seed be."
7. *So—as;* as, "To see thy glory, *so as* I have seen thee in the sanctuary."
8. *So—that;* as, "He became *so* vain, *that* every one disliked him."

NOTES.

1. Some conjunctions are used to connect simple *sentences* only, and form them into compound *sentences;* such as, further, again, besides, &c. Others are employed to connect simple *members* only, so as to make them compound *members;* such as, than, least, unless, that, so that, if, though yet, because, as well as, &c. But, and, therefore, or, not, for, &c., connect either whole sentences, or simple members.

2. Relative pronouns, as well as conjunctions, serve to connect sentences; as "Blessed is the man *who* feareth the Lord, *and* keepeth his commandments."

You will will now please to turn back and read this lecture four or five times over; and then, after committing the following order, you may parse the subsequent exercises.

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

On scientific principles, our *connectives*, commonly denominated prepositions and conjunctions, are but one part of speech, the distinction between them being merely technical. Some conjunctions unite only words, and some prepositions connect sentences. They are derived from nouns and verbs; and the time has been, when, perhaps, in our language, they did not perform the office of connectives.

"I wish you to believe, *that* I would not wilfully hurt a fly." Here, in the opinion of H Tooke, our modern conjunction *that*, is merely a demonstrative adjective, in a disguised form; and he attempts to prove it by the following resolution; "I would not wilfully hurt a fly. I wish you to believe *that* [*assertion.*"] Now, if we admit, that *that* is an adjective in the latter construction, it does not necessarily follow, that it is the same part of speech, nor that its associated meaning is precisely the same, in the former construction. Instead of expressing our ideas in two detached sentences, by the former phraseology we have a quicker and closer transition of thought, and both the mode of employing *that*, and its *inferen-*

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing a CONJUNCTION, is—a conjunction, and why?—copulative or disjunctive, and why?—what does it connect?

"Wisdom *and* virtue *form* the good man's character."

And is a conjunction, a word that is chiefly used to connect sentences; but in this example it connects only words—copulative, it serves to connect and continue the sentence by joining on a member which expresses an addition—it connects the words "wisdom and virtue."

Wisdom is a noun, the name of a thing—(You may parse it in full.)—*Wisdom* is one of the nominatives to the verb "form."

Virtue is a noun, the name, &c.—(Parse it in full:)—and in the nom. case to the verb "form," and connected to the noun "wisdom" by *and*, according to

RULE 33. *Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case.*

Form is a verb, a word which signifies to do &c.—of the third person *plural*, because its two nominatives, "wisdom and virtue," are connected by a copulative conjunction, agreeably to

RULE 8. *Two or more nouns in the singular number, joined by copulative conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns agreeing with them in the* plural.

"Wisdom *or* folly *governs* us."

Or is a conjunction, a word that is chiefly used to connect sentences: it sometimes connects words—disjunctive, it serves not only to connect and continue the sentence, but also to join on a member which expresses opposition of meaning—it connects the nouns "wisdom and folly."

Governs is a verb, a word that signifies, &c.—of the third person, singular number, agreeing with "wisdom or folly," according to

RULE 9. *Two or more nouns singular, joined by* disjunctive *conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns agreeing with them in the singular.*

---

tial meaning, are changed. Moreover, if we examine the meaning of each of these constructions, taken as a whole, we shall find, that they do not both convey the same ideas. By the latter, I assert, positively, that, "I would not wilfully hurt a fly; whereas, by the former, I merely *wish* you *to believe* that "I would not wilfully hurt a fly;" but I do not *affirm* that as a fact.

That being the past part. of *thean*, to get, take, assume, by rendering it as a *participle*, instead af an adjective, we should come nearer to its primitive character. Thus, "I would not wilfully hurt a fly. I wish you to believe the *assumed* [*fact or statement;*] or, the fact *assumed* or *taken*.

If, formerly written (*gif, give, gin,*) as previously stated, is the imperative of the Anglo-Saxon verb *gifan*, to give. In imitation of Horne

If you reflect, for a few moments, on the meaning of the last two Rules presented, you will see, at once, their propriety and importance. For example; in the sentence, "Orlando *and* Thomas, *who study their lessons, make* rapid progress," you notice that the two singular nouns, *Orlando* and *Thomas*, are connected by the copulative conjunction *and*, therefore the verb *make*, which agrees with them, is plural, because it expresses the action of *both* its nominatives or actors. And you observe, too, that the pronouns *who* and *their*, and the noun *lessons*, are *plural*, agreeing with the nouns *Orlando* and *Thomas*, according to RULE 8. The verb *study* is plural, agreeing with *who*, according to RULE 4.

But let us connect these two nouns by a disjunctive conjunction and see how the sentence will read: Orlando *or* Thomas, *who studies his lesson, makes* rapid progress," Now, you perceive, that a different construction takes place, for the latter expression does not imply, that Orlando and Thomas, *both* study, and make rapid progress; but it asserts, that either the one *or* the other studies, and makes rapid progress. Hence the verb *makes* is singular, because it expresses the action of the one *or* the other of its nominatives. And you observe, too, that the pronouns *who* and *his*, and the noun *lesson*, are likewise in the singular, agreeing with Orlando *or* Thomas, agreeably to RULE 9. *Studies* is also singular, agreeing with *who*, according to RULE 4.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Joseph and his brother reside in New-York. The sun, moon, and stars, admonish us of a superior and superintending Power. I respect my friend, because he is upright and obliging. Henry and William, who obey their teacher, improve rapidly. Henry or William, who obeys his teacher, improves very fast. Neither rank nor possession makes the guilty mind happy. Wisdom, virtue, and meekness, form the good man's happiness and interest: they support him in adversity, and comfort him in prosperity. Man is a little lower than the angels. The United States, as justly as Great Britain, can now boast of their literary institutions.

NOTE. The verb *form* is plural, and agrees with three nouns singular, connected by copulative conjunctions, according to RULE 8. The verb *comfort* agrees with *they* for its nominative. It is connected to *support* by the conjunction *and*, agreeable to RULE 34. *Angels* is nom. to *are* understood, and *Great Britain* is nom. to *can boast* understood, according to RULE 35.

Tooke, some of our modern philosophical writers are inclined to teach pupils to render it as a verb. Thus, "I will go, *if* he will accompany me;—" He will accompany me. *Grant—give* that [fact,] I will go." For the purpose of ascertaining the *primitive* meaning of this word. I have no objections to such a resolution; but, by it, do we get the exact meaning and force of *if* as it is applied in our modern, refined state of the language? I *trow* not. But, admitting we do, does this prove that such a mode of resolving sentences can be advantageously adopted by learners in common schools? I presume it cannot be denied, that instead of teaching the learner to express himself correctly in modern English, such a

REMARKS ON CONJUNCTIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

The same word is occasionally employed, either as a conjunction, an adverb, or a preposition. "I submitted, *for* it was in vain to resist;" in this example, *for* is a conjunction, because it connects the two members of a compound sentence. In the next it is a preposition, and governs *victory* in the objective case: "He contended *for* victory only."

In the first of the following sentences, *since* is a conjunction; in the second, it is a preposition, and in the third, an adverb; "*Since* we must part, let us do it peaceably; I have not seen him *since* that time; Our friendship commenced long *since*."

"He will repent *before* he dies; Stand *before* me; Why did you not return *before*" [that or this *time?*] In the first of these three examples, *before* is an adverbial conjunction, because it expresses time and connects; and in the second and third, it is a preposition.

As the words of a sentence are often transposed, so are also its members. Without attending to this circumstance, the learner may sometimes be at a loss to perceive the *connecting* power of a preposition or conjunction, for every preposition and every conjunction connects either words or phrases, sentences or members of sentences. Whenever a sentence begins with a preposition or conjunction, its members are transposed; as, "*In* the days of Joram, king of Israel, flourished the prophet Elisha;" "*If* thou seek the Lord, he will be found of thee; but, *if* thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever."

"*When* coldness wraps this suffering clay,
"Ah, whither strays the immortal mind?"

That the words *in*, *if*, and *when*, in these examples, connect the members of the respective sentences to which they are attached, will obvious-

---

resolution is merely making him familiar with an ancient and barbarous construction which modern refinement has rejected. Our forefathers, I admit, who were governed by those laws of necessity which compel all nations in the early and rude state of their language, to express themselves in short, detached sentences, employed *if* as a verb when they used the following circumlocution: "My son will reform. *Give that fact*. I will forgive him." But in the present, improved state of our language, by using *if* as a *conjunction*, (for I maintain that it is one,) we express the same thought more briefly; and our modern mode of expression has, too, a decided advantage over the ancient, not only in point of elegance, but also in perspicuity and force. In Scotland and the north of England, some people still make use of *gin*, a contraction of *given:* thus, "I will pardon my son, *gin* he reform." But who will contend, that they speak pure English?

But perhaps the advocates of what *they* call a philosophical development of language, will say, that by their resolution of sentences, they merely supply an ellipsis. If, by an ellipsis, they mean such a one as is necessary to the grammatical construction, I cannot accede to their assumption. In teaching grammar, as well as in other things, we ought to avoid extremes:—we ought neither to pass superficially over an ellipsis necessary to the sense of a phrase, nor to put modern English to the blush, by adopting a mode of resolving sentences that would entirely change the character of our language, and carry the learner back to the Vandalick age.

But comes from the Saxon verb, *beon-utan*, to be-out. "All were well

ly appear if we restore these sentences to their natural order, and bring these particles *between* the members which they connect: thus, "Elisha the prophet flourished *in* the days of Joram king of Israel;" "The Lord will be found of thee *if* thou seek him; but he will cast thee off for ever *if* thou forsake him:"

"Ah, whither strays the immortal mind,
"*When* coldness wraps this suffering clay?"

As an exercise on this lecture, you may now answer these

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

From what words is the term conjunction derived?—What is a sentence?—What is a simple sentence?—What is a compound sentence?—Give examples.—In what respect do conjunctions and prepositions agree in their nature?—How many sorts of conjunctions are there?—Repeat the list of conjunctions.—Repeat some conjunctions with their corresponding conjunctions.—Do relative pronouns ever connect sentences?—Repeat the order of parsing a conjunction.—Do you apply any Rule in parsing a conjunction?—What Rule should be applied in parsing a noun or pronoun connected with another?—What Rule in parsing a verb agreeing with two or more nouns singular, connected by a copulative conjunction?—What Rule when the nouns are connected by a disjunctive?—In parsing a verb connected to another by a conjunction, what Rule do you apply?—Is a conjunction ever used as other parts of speech?—Give examples.—What is said of the words *for*, *since*, and *before*?—What is said of the transposing of sentences?

QUESTIONS ON THE PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

From what parts of speech are prepositions and conjunctions derived?

---

but (*be-out leave-out*) the stranger." Man is *but* a reed, floating on the current of time." Resolution: "Man is a reed floating on the current of time; *but* (*be-out* this fact) he is not a stable being."

And—aned, an'd, and, is the past part. of *ananad,* to add, join. *A, an and,* or *one,* from the same verb, points out whatever is *aned, oned,* or made *one. And* also refers to the thing that is *joined* to, *added* to, or *made one* with, some other person or thing mentioned. "Julius *and* Harriet will make a happy pair." Resolution: "Julius, Harriet *joined, united,* or *aned,* will make a happy pair; i. e. Harriet *made one* with Julius, will make a happy pair.

For means *cause.*

Because—be-cause, is a compound of the verb *be* and the noun *cause.* It retains the meaning of both; as, "I believe the maxim, *for* I know it to be true;"—I believe the maxim, *be-cause* I know it to be true;" i. e. the *cause* of my belief, *be,* or *is,* I know to be true.

Nor is a contraction of *ne or. Ne* is a contraction of *not,* and *or,* of *other. Nor* is, *not other*-wise; *not* in the *other* way or manner.

Else is the imperative of *alesan, unless,* of *onlesan,* and *lest,* the past part. of *lesun,* all signifying to dismiss, release, loosen, set free. "He will be punished, *unless* he repent;"—"*Unless, release, give up,* (the fact) he repents, he will be punished."

Though is the imperative of the Saxon verb *thafigan,* to allow, and *yet,* of *getan* to get. *Yet* is simply, *get;* ancient *g* is our modern *y.*—"*Though* he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him:—*Grant* or *allow* (the fact) he slay me, *get,* or *retain* (the opposite fact;) I will trust in him."

What is Horne Tooke's opinion of that?—From what is each of the following words derived, *that, if, but, and, because, nor, else, unless, least, though,* and *yet?*

LECTURE X.

OF INTERJECTIONS.—CASES OF NOUNS.

INTERJECTIONS are words which express the sudden emotions of the speaker; as "*Alas!* I fear for life;" "*O* Death! where is thy sting."

Interjections are not so much the signs of thought, as of feeling. Almost any word may be used as an interjection; but when so employed, it is not the representative of a *distinct* idea. A word which denotes a distinct conception of the mind, must necessarily belong to some other part of speech. They who wish to speak often, or rather, to make *noises*, when they have no useful information to communicate, are apt to use words very freely in this way; such as the following expressions, *la, la me, my, O my, O dear, dear me, surprising, astonishing*, and the like.

Interjections not included in the following list, are generally known by their taking an exclamation point after them.

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

The term INTERJECTION is applied to those *inarticulate* sounds employed both by men and brutes, not to express distinct ideas, but emotions, passions, or feelings. The sounds employed by human beings in groaning, sighing, crying, screaming, shrieking, and laughing, by the dog in barking, growling, and whining, by the horse in snorting and neighing, by the sheep in bleating, by the cat in mewing, by the dove in cooing, by the duck in quacking, and by the goose in hissing, we sometimes attempt to represent by words; but, as *written* words are the ocular representatives of *articulate* sounds, they cannot be made clearly to denote *inarticulate* or *indistinct noises*. Such indistinct utterances belong to natural language; but they fall below the bounds of regulated speech. Hence, *real* interjections are not a part of written language.

The meaning of those words commonly called interjections, is easily shown by tracing them to their notes.

Pish and *Pshaw* are the Anglo-Saxon *paec, paeca;* and are equivalent to *trumpery!* i. e. *trumperie* from *tromper.*

Fy or *fie* is the imperative, *foe*, the past tense, and *foh* or *faugh*, the past part. of the Saxon verb *fian* to hate.

Lo is the imperative of *look*. *Halt* is the imperative of *healden*, to hold. *Farewell—fare-well*, is a compound of *faran*, to go, and the adverb *well*. It means, to *go well*. *Welcome—wel-come*, signifies, it is *well* that you are *come*. *Adieu* comes from the French *a Dieu*, to God; meaning, I commend you *to God*.

A LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL INTERJECTIONS.

1. Of *earnestness* or *grief*; as, O! oh! ah! alas!
2. *Contempt*; as, Pish! tush!
3. *Wonder*; as, Heigh! really! strange!
4. *Calling*; as, Hem! ho! halloo!
5. *Disgust* or *aversion*; as, Foh! fy! fudge! away!
6. *Attention*; as, Lo! behold! hark!
7. *Requesting silence*; as, Hush! hist!
8. *Salutation*; as, Welcome! hail! all hail!

NOTE. We frequently meet with what some call an *interjective phrase*; such as, Ungrateful wretch! impudence of hope! folly in the extreme! what ingratitude! away with him!

As the interjection is the least important part of speech in the English language, it will require but little attention. You may, however, make yourself well acquainted with what has been said respecting it, and then commit the

SYSTEMATIC ORDER OF PARSING.

The order of parsing an INTERJECTION, is—an interjection, and why?

"O virtue! how amiable thou art!"

O is an interjection, a word used to express some passion, or emotion of the speaker.

The ten parts of speech have now been unfolded and elucidated, although some of them have not been fully explained. Before you proceed any farther, you will please to begin again at the first lecture, and read over, attentively, the whole, observing to parse every example in the exercises systematically. You will then be able to parse the following exercises, which contain all the parts of speech. If you study faithfully *six* hours in a day, and pursue the directions given, you may become, if not critical, at least, a good, practical grammarian, in *six weeks*; but if you study only *three* hours in a day, it will take you nearly *three months* to acquire the same knowledge.

EXERCISES IN PARSING

True cheerfulness makes a man happy in himself, and promotes the happiness of all around him.

Modesty always appears graceful in youth; it doubles the lustre of every virtue which it seems to hide.

He who, every morning, plans the transactions of the day, and follows out that plan, carries on a thread that will guide him through the labyrinth of the most busy life.

The king gave me a generous reward for committing that barbarous act; but, alas! I fear the consequence.

E'en now, where Alpine solitudes ascend,
I set me down a pensive hour to spend;
And, placed on high, above the storm's career,
Look downward where a hundred realms appear:—

Alas! the joys that fortune brings,
Are trifling, and decay;
And those who mind the paltry things,
More trifling still than they.

NOTE. In the second sentence of the foregoing exercises, *which* is governed by the verb *to hide*, according to RULE 16. *He* is nom. to *carries; who* is nom. to *plans*. *Follows* agrees with *who* understood, and is connected to *plans* by *and;* RULE 34. What did the king give? A *reward* to me. Then *reward* is in the *obj.* case, gov. by *gave;* RULE 20. *Me* is gov. by *to* understood; NOTE 1, under RULE 32. The phrase, *committing that barbarous act*, is gov. by *for;* NOTE 2, under RULE 28. *Hour* is in the *obj.* case, gov. by *to spend;* RULE 20. *Look* is connected to *set* by *and;* RULE 34. *Joys* is nom. to *are*. *That* is gov. by *brings;* RULE 16. *Those* is nom. to *are* understood. *They* is nom. to *are* understood; RULE 35.

CASES OF NOUNS.

In a former lecture, I promised to give you a more extensive explanation of the cases of nouns; and, as they are, in many situations, a little difficult to be ascertained, I will now offer some remarks on this subject. But before you proceed, I wish you to parse the examples in the exercises just presented, observing to pay particular attention to the remarks in the subjoined NOTE. Those remarks will assist you much in analyzing.

A noun is sometimes nominative to a verb placed many lines after the noun. You must exercise your judgment in this matter. Look at the sentence in the preceding exercises beginning with, "He who, every morning," &c., and see if you can find the verb to which *he* is nominative. What does *he* do? He carries on a thread, &c., *He*, then, is nominative to the verb *carries*. What does *who* do?—Who *plans*, and who *follows*, &c. Then *who* is nom. to *plans*, and *who* understood, is nominative to *follows*.

"A soul without reflection, like a pile.
"Without inhabitant, to ruin runs."

In order to find the verb to which the noun *soul*, in this sentence, is the nominative, put the question; What does a *soul* without reflection do? Such a soul *runs* to ruin, like a pile without inhabitant. Thus you discover, that *soul* is nominative to *runs*.

When the words of a sentence are arranged according to their natural order, the nominative case, you recollect, is placed before the verb, and the objective, after it; but when the words of a sentence are transposed; that is, not arranged according to their natural order, it frequently happens, that the nominative comes *after*, and the objective, *before* the verb; especially in poetry, or when a question is asked; as, "Whence *arises* the *misery* of the present world?" "What

good *thing shall* I *do* to inherit eternal life?" Put these expressions in the declarative form, and the nominative will *precede*, and the objective *follow* its verb: thus, "The *misery* of the present world *arises* whence; I *shall do* what good *thing* to inherit eternal life."

"Now came still *evening* on, and twilight gray
"Had, in her sober livery, all *things* clad."

"Stern rugged nurse, thy rigid *lore*
"With patience many a *year* she bore."

What did the *evening* do? The evening *came on.* Gray *twilight* had clad what? Twilight had clad all *things* in her sober livery. *Evening*, then, is nom. to *came*, and the noun *thing* is in the objective case, and gov. by *had clad:* RULE 20. What did *she* bear? She bore thy rigid *lore* with patience, *for*, or *during*, many a year. Hence you find, that *lore* is in the objective case, and governed by *bore*, according to RULE 20. *Year* is governed by *during* understood: RULE 32.

A noun is frequently nominative to a verb understood, or in the objective, and governed by a verb understood; as, "Lo, [*there is*] the poor *Indian!* whose untutored mind." "O, the *pain* [*there is*] the *bliss* [*there is*] in dying!" "All were sunk, but the wakeful *nightingale* [*was not sunk.*"] "He thought as a *sage* [thinks,] though he felt as a *man* [*feels.*"] "His hopes, immortal, blew them by, as *dust* [*is blown by.*"] RULE 35 applies to these last three examples.

In the next place I will explain several cases of nouns and pronouns which have not yet come under our notice. Sometimes a noun or pronoun may be in the nominative case when it has no verb to agree with it.

OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE INDEPENDENT.

Whenever a direct address is made, the person or thing spoken *to*, is in the *nominative case independent;* as, "*James*, I desire you to study."

You notice that, in this expression, I address myself to *James;* that is, I speak to him; and you observe, too, that there is no verb, either expressed or implied, to which James can be the nominative; therefore you know *James* is in the nom. case independent, according to Rule 5. Recollect, that *whenever a noun is of the second person*, it is in the nom. case independent; that is, independent of any verb; as *Selma*, thy halls are silent; Love and meekness, my *lord*, become a churchman, better than ambition; *O Jerusalem, Jerusalem*, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, but ye would not!—For a farther illustration of this case, see Note 2, under the 5th Rule of Syntax.

NOTE. When a pronoun of the *second* person is in apposition with a noun independent, it is in the same case; as, "*Thou traitor*, I detest thee.

OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE ABSOLUTE.

A noun or pronoun placed before a participle, without any verb to agree with it, is in the nominative case *absolute;* as, The *sun being risen*, we pursued our journey."

Sun is here placed before the participle "being risen" and has no verb to agree with it; therefore it is in the nominative case absolute, according to RULE 6.

NOTE 1. A noun or pronoun in the nominative case independent, is always of the *second* person; but, in the case absolute, it is generally of the *third* person.

2. The case absolute is always nominative; the following sentence is therefore incorrect: "Whose top shall tremble, *him* descending," &c.; it should be, *he* descending.

OF NOUNS IN APPOSITION.

Two or more nouns or pronouns signify the same person of thing, are put, by *apposition*, in the same case; as "*Cicero*, the great *orator*, *philosopher*, and *statesman* of Rome, was murdered by Anthony."

Apposition, in a grammatical sense, means something added, or names added, in order more fully to define or illustrate the sense of the first name mentioned.

You perceive that *Cicero*, in the preceding example, is merely the proper name of a man; but when I give him the three additional appellations, and call him a great *orator*, *philosopher*, and *statesman*, you understand what kind of a man he was; that is, by giving him these three additional names, his character and abilities as a man are more fully made known. And surely you cannot be at a loss to know that these four nouns must be in the same case, for they are all names given to the same person; therefore, if *Cicero* was murdered, the *orator* was murdered, and the *philosopher* was murdered, and the *statesman* was murdered, because they all mean one and the same person.

Nouns and pronouns in the objective case, are frequently in *apposition;* as, He struck *Charles* the *student*. Now it is obvious, that, when he struck *Charles*, he struck the *student*, because Charles was the *student*, and the *student* was *Charles;* therefore the noun *student* is in the objective case, governed by "struck," and put by apposition with Charles, according to RULE 7.

Please to examine this lecture very attentively. You will then be prepared to parse the following examples correctly and systematically.

PARSING.

"Weep on the rocks of roaring winds, O *maid* of Inistore."

Maid is a noun, the name of a person—com. the name of a sort—

fem. gender, it denotes a female—second pers. spoken to—sing. num. it implies but one—and in the nominative case independent, because it is addressed, and has no verb to agree with it, according to

RULE 5. *When an address is made, the noun or pronoun addressed, is put in the nominative case independent.*

"The *general* being ransomed, the barbarians permitted him to depart."

General is a noun, the name, &c. (parse it in full:)—and in the nominative case absolute, because it is placed before the participle "being ransomed," and it has no verb to agree with it, agreeably to

RULE 6. *A noun or pronoun placed before a participle, and being independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case absolute.*"

Thou man of God, flee to the land of Judah."

Thou is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun—personal, it personates "man"—second pers. spoken to—mas. gender, sing. num. because the noun "man" is for which it stands; RULE 13. (Repeat the Rule.)—*Thou* is in the nominative case independent, and put by *apposition* with *man*, because it signifies the same thing, according to

RULE 7. *Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, signifying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case.*

Man is in the nominative case independent, according to Rule 5. *Flee* agrees with *thou* understood.

"Lo! *Newton, priest* of Nature, shines afar,
"Scans the wide world, and numbers every star."

Newton is a noun, (parse it in full,) and in the nom. case to "shines:" RULE 3.

Priest is a noun (parse it in full), and in the nom. case, it is the actor and subject of the verb "shines," and put by apposition with "Newton," because it signifies the same thing, agreeably to Rule 7. (Repeat the Rule.)

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Turn from your evil ways, O house of Israel! Ye fields of light, celestial plains, ye scenes divinely fair! proclaim your Maker's wondrous power. O king! *live* for ever. The murmur of thy streams, O Lora, brings back the memory of the past. The sound of thy woods, Garmallar, is lovely in my ear. Dost thou not behold, Malvina, a rock with its head of heath! Three aged pines bend from its face; green is the plain at its feet; there the flower of the mountain grows, and shakes its white head in the breeze.

The General being slain, the army was routed. Commerce having thus got into the legislative body, privilege must be done away. Jesus had conveyed himself away, a multitude being in that place. I being in great haste, he consented. The rain having ceased, the dark clouds rolled away. The Son of God, while clothed in flesh, was subject to all the frailties and inconveniences of human nature, sin excepted; (that is, sin being excepted.)

In the days of Joram, king of Israel, flourished the prophet Elisha. Paul the apostle suffered martyrdom. *Come*, peace of mind, delightful guest! and *dwell* with me. Friends, Romans, countrymen! *lend* me your ears.

Soul of the just, companion of the dead!
Where is thy home, and whither art thou fled?

Till Hymen brought his love-delighted hour,
There dwelt no joy in Eden's rosy bower:—
The world was sad, the garden was a wild,
And man the hermit sighed, till woman smiled.

NOTE. Those verbs in *italics*, in the preceding examples, are all in the imperative mood, and *second* person, agreeing with *thou, ye, or you*, understood. *House of Israel* is a noun of multitude. *Was routed* and *must be done* are passive verbs. *Art fled* is a neuter verb in a passive form. *Clothed* is a perfect participle. *Till* is an adverbial conjunction.

When you shall have analyzed, systematically, every word in the foregoing exercises, you may answer the following

QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED IN PARSING.

Repeat the list of interjections,—Repeat some interjective phrases.—Repeat the order of parsing an interjection.—In order to find the verb to which a noun is nom., what question do you put?—Give examples.—Is the nominative case ever placed after the verb?—When?—Give examples.—Does the objective case ever come before the verb?—Give examples.—Is a noun ever nominative to a verb understood?—Give examples.—When is a noun or pronoun in the nom. case independent?—Give examples.—Are nouns of the *second* person always in the nom. case independent?—When a pronoun is put by apposition with a noun independent in what case is it?—When is a noun or pronoun in the nom. case absolute?—Give examples.—When are nouns or nouns and pronouns put, by apposition, in the same case?—Give examples.—In parsing a noun or pronoun in the nom. case independent, what Rule should be applied?—In parsing the nom. case absolute, what Rule?—What Rule in parsing nouns or pronouns in apposition?—Do real interjections belong to written language? (*Phil. Notes*)—From what are the following words derived, *pish, fy, to, halt, farewell, welcome, adieu?*

LECTURE XI.

OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF VERBS.

You have now acquired a general, and, I may say, an extensive, knowledge of the nine parts of speech; but you know but little, as yet, respecting the most important one of all; I mean the VERB. I will, therefore, commence this lecture by giving you an explanation of the Moods and Tenses of verbs. Have the goodness, however, first to turn back and read over Lecture II., and reflect well upon what is there said respecting the verb; after which I will conduct you so smoothly through the moods and tenses, and the conjugation of verbs

that, instead of finding yourself involved in obscurities and deep intricacies, you will scarcely find an obstruction to impede your progress.

I. OF THE MOODS.

The Mood or Mode of a verb means the *manner* in which its action, passion, or being is represented.

When I wish to assert a thing, positively, I use the *declarative* or *indicative* mode; as, The man *walks;* but sometimes the action or occurence of which I wish to speak, is doubtful, and then I must not declare positively, but I must adopt another *mode* of expression; thus, *If* the man *walk*, he will refresh himself with the bland breezes. The second mode or manner of representing the action, is called the *subjunctive* or *conditional* mode.

Again, we sometimes employ a verb when we do not wish to *declare* a thing, nor to represent the action in a *doubtful* or *conditional* manner; but we wish to *command* some one to act. We then use the *imperative* or *commanding* mode, and say, *Walk*, sir. And when we do not wish to command a man to act, we sometimes allude to his *power* or *ability* to act. This fourth mode of representing action, is called the *potential* mode; as, He *can walk;* He *could walk.* The fifth and last mode, called the *infinite* or *unlimited* mode, we employ in expressing action in an unlimited manner; that is, without confining it, in respect to number and person, to any particular agent; as, *To walk, to ride.* Thus you perceive, that the *mood*, mode or manner of representing the action, passion, or being of a verb, must vary according to the different intentions of the mind.

Were we to assign a particular name to *every* change in the mode or manner of representing action or being, the number of moods in our language would amount to many hundreds. But this principle of division and arrangement, if followed out in detail, would lead to great perplexity, without producing any beneficial result. The division of Mr. Harris, in his Hermes, is much more curious than instructive. He has fourteen moods: his *interrogative, optative, portative, hortative, promissive, precautive, requisitive, enunciative,* &c. But, as far as philosophical accuracy and the convenience and advantage of the learner are concerned, it is believed that no arrangement is preferable to the following. I am not unaware that plausible objections may be raised against it; but what arrangement cannot be objected to?

There are five moods of verbs, the Indicative, the Subjunctive, the Imperative, the Potential, and the Infinitive.

The Indicative Mood simply indicates or declares a thing; as, "He *writes;*" or it asks a question; as, "*Does* he *write?* Who *wrote* that?"

The term *indicative*, comes from the Latin *indico, declare.* Hence

the legitimate province of the indicative mood is to *declare* things, whether positively or negatively; thus, *positively*, He *came* with me; *negatively*, He *came not* with me. But in order to avoid a multiplication of moods, we extend its meaning, and use the indicative mood in asking a question; as, Who *came* with you?

The subjunctive mood being more analogous to the indicative in conjunction, than any other, it ought to be presented next in order. This mood, however, differs materially from the indicative in sense; therefore you ought to make yourself well acquainted with the nature of the indicative, before you commence with the subjunctive.

The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD expresses action, passion, or being, in a doubtful or conditional manner: or

When a verb is preceded by a word that expresses a condition, doubt, motive, wish, or supposition, it is in the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD; as, "*If* he *study*, he will improve; I will respect him, *though* he *chide* me; He will not be pardoned, *unless* he *repent*; *Had* he *been* there, he would have conquered;" (that is, *if*, he *had been* there.)

The conjunctions *if*, *though*, *unless*, in the preceding examples, express condition, doubt, &c; therefore the verbs *study*, *chide*, *repent*, and *had been*, are in the subjunctive mood.

NOTE 1. A verb in this mood is generally attended by another verb in some other mood. You observe, that each of the first three of the preceding examples, contains a verb in the indicative mood, and the fourth, a verb in the potential.

2. Whenever the conjunctions *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *whether*, *lest*, or any others, denote contingency or doubt, the verbs that follow them are in the subjunctive, mood; as, "*If* he *ride* out every day, his health will probably improve;" that is, if he *shall* or *should* ride out hereafter. But when these conjunctions do not imply doubt, &c., the verbs that follow them are in the indicative, or some other mood; as, "*Though* he *rides* out daily, his health is no better." The conjunctive and indicative forms of this mood, are explained in the conjunction of the verb to *love*. See page 145.

The IMPERATIVE MOOD is used for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting; as, "*Depart* thou; *Remember* my abominations; *Tarry* awhile longer; *Go* in peace."

The verb *depart* expresses a command; *remember* exhorts; *tarry* expresses entreaty; and *go*, permission; therefore they are all in the imperative mood.

The *imperative*, from *impero*, to command, is literally that mode of the verb used in *commanding*; but its technical meaning in grammar

is extended to the use of the verb in exhorting, entreating, and permitting.

A verb in the imperative mood is always of the second person, though never varied in its terminations, agreeing with *thou*, *ye* or *you* either expressed or implied. You may know a verb in this mood by the sense; recollect, however, that the nominative always is *second* person, and frequently understood; as, "George *give* me my hat; that is, give thou, or give you. When the nominative is expressed, it is generally placed after the verb; as, "Go *thou*; Depart *ye*; or between the auxiliary and the verb; as, "Do *thou* go; Do *ye* depart. (*Do* is the auxiliary.)

The POTENTIAL MOOD implies possibility, liberty, or necessity, power, will, or obligation; as, "It *may rain*: He *may go* or *stay*; We *must eat* and *drink*: I *can ride*; He *would walk*; They *should learn*.

In the first of these examples, the auxiliary *may* implies possibility; in the second it implies liberty; that is, he is at liberty to go or to stay; in the third, *must* denotes necessity; *can* denotes power or ability; *would* implies will or inclination; that is, he had a *mind* to walk; and *should* implies obligation. Hence you perceive, that the verbs, may rain, may go, must eat, must drink, can ride, would walk, and should learn, are in the *potential* mood.

NOTE 1. As a verb in the indicative mood is converted into the subjunctive when it is preceded by a conjunction expressing doubt, contingency, supposition, &c., so a verb in the potential mood, may, in like manner, be turned into the subjunctive; as, *If* I *could deceive* him, I should abhor it; *though* he *should increase* in wealth, he would not be charitable." I *could deceive*, is in the potential; *If* I *could deceive*, is in the subjunctive mood.

1. The potential mood, as well as the indicative, is used in asking a question; as, "May I go? Could you understand him? Must we die?"

PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

The changes in the terminations of words, in all languages, have been formed by the *coalescence* of words of appropriate meaning. This subject was approached on page 49. It is again taken up for the purpose of showing, that the moods and tenses, as well as the number and person, of English verbs, do not solely depend on inflection.

The coalescing syllables which form the number and person of the Hebrew verb, are still considered pronouns; and, by those who have investigated the subject, it is conceded, that the same plan has been adopted in the formation of the Latin and Greek verbs, as in the Hebrew. Some languages have carried this process to a very great extent. Ours is remarkable for the small number of its inflections. But they who reject the passive verb, and those moods and tenses which are formed by employing what are called "auxiliary verbs," *because they are formed by two or more*

The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses action, passion, or being, in a general and unlimited manner, having no nominative, consequently, neither person nor number; as, "*To speak, to walk.*"

Infinitive means *unconfined*, or *unlimited*. This mood is called the infinite, because its verb is not confined or limited to a nominative. A verb in any other mood is limited; that is, it must agree in number and person with its nominative; but a verb in this mood has *no* nominative, therefore, it never changes its termination, except to form the perfect tense. Now you understand why all verbs are called *finite* or *limited*, excepting those in the infinitive mood.

NOTE. *To*, the sign of the infinitive mood, is often understood before the verb; as, "Let me proceed;" that is, Let me *to* proceed. See Rule 25. *To* is not a preposition when joined to a verb in this mood; thus *to* ride, *to* rule; but it should be parsed with the verb, and as a part of it.

---

verbs, do not appear to reason soundly. It is inconsitent to admit, that walk-*eth*, and walk-*ed*, are tenses, because each is but one word, and to reject *have* walk-ed, and *will* walk, as tenses, because each is composed of two words. *Eth*, as previously shown, is a contraction of *doeth*, or *haveth*, and *ed*, of *dede*, *dodo*, *doed*, or *did*; and, therefore, walk-*eth*; i. e. walk-*doeth*, or *doe'h*-walk, and walk-*ed*; i. e. walk-*did*, or *doed* or *did*-walk, are, when analyzed, as strictly compound, as *will* walk, *shall* walk, and *have* walked. The only difference in the formation of these tenses, is that in the two former, the associated verbs have been contracted and made to coalesce with the main verb, but in the two latter, they still maintain their ground as separate words.

If it be said that *will walk* is composed of two words, each of which conveys a distinct idea, and, therefore, should be analyzed be itself, the same argument, with all its force may be applied to walk-*eth*, walk-*ed*, walk-*did*, or *did* walk. The result of all the investigations of this subject, appears to settle down into the hackneyed truism, that the passive verbs, and the moods and tenses, of some languages, are formed by inflections, or terminations either prefixed or postfixed, and of other languages, by the association of auxiliary verbs, which have not yet been contracted and made to coalesce as *terminations*. The auxiliary, when contracted, into a *terminating syllable*, retains its distinct and intrinsic meaning, as much as when associated with a verb by juxtaposition; consequently, an "auxiliary verb" may form a part of a mood or tense, or passive verb, with as much propriety as a *terminating syllable* They who contend for the ancient custom of keeping the auxiliaries distinct, and parsing them as primary verbs, are, by the same principle, bound to extend their dissecting-knife *to every compound word in the language*.

Having thus attempted briefly to prove the philosophical accuracy of the theory which recognises the tenses, moods, and passive verbs, formed by the aid of auxiliaries, I shall now offer one argument to show that this theory, and this *only*, will subserve the purposes of the practical grammarian.

If you study this lecture attentively, you will perceive, that when I say, I *write*, the verb is in the indicative mood; but when I say, *if* I write, or, *unless* I write, &c., the verb is in the subjunctive mood; *write* thou, or *write* ye or you, the imperative; I *may write*, I *must write*, I *could write*, &c., the potential; and *to write*, the infinitive. Any other verb (except the defective) may be employed in the same manner.

II. OF THE TENSES.

TENSE means time.

Verbs have six tenses, the Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, and the First and Second Future Tenses.

The PRESENT TENSE represents an action or event as taking place at the time in which it is mentioned; as, "I *smile*; I *see*; I *am seen*."

NOTE 1. The present tense is also used in speaking of actions continued, with occasional intermissions, to the present time; as "He *rides* out every morning."

2. This tense is sometimes applied to represent the actions of persons long since dead; as, "Seneca *reasons* and *moralizes* well; An honest man *is* the noblest work of God."

3. When the present tense is preceded by the words, *when*, *before*, *after*, *as soon as*, &c., it is sometimes used to point out the relative time of a future action; as, "*When* he *arrives* we shall hear the news.

As it is not so much the province of philology to instruct in the exact meaning of single and separate words as it is to teach the student to combine and employ them properly in framing sentences, and as those *combinations* which go by the name of compound tenses and passive verbs, are necessary in writing and discourse, it follows, conclusively, that that theory which does not explain these verbs in their *combined* state, cannot teach the student the correct use and application of the verbs of our language. By such an arrangement, he cannot learn when it is proper to use the phrases, *shall have walked*, *might have gone*, *have seen*, instead of, *shall walk*, *might go*, and *saw*, because this theory has nothing to do with the combining of verbs. If it be alleged, that the speaker or writer's own good sense must guide him in combining these verbs, and, therefore, that the directions of the grammarian are unnecessary, it must be recollected, that such an argument would bear, equally, against every principle of grammar whatever. In short, the theory of the compound tenses, and of the passive verb, appears to be so firmly based in the genius of our language, and so practically important to the student, as to defy all the engines of the paralogistic speculator, and the philosophical quibbler, to batter it down.

But the most plausible objection to the old theory is, that it is encumbered with much useless technicality and tedious prolixity, which are avoided

The IMPERFECT TENSE denotes a past action or event, however distant; or,

The IMPERFECT TENSE represents an action, or event as past and finished, but without defining the precise time of its completion; as, "I *loved* her for her modesty and virtue; They *were* travelling post when he *met* them."

In these examples, the verbs *loved* and *met* express past and *finished* actions, and therefore constitute a perfect tense strictly as any form of the verb in our language; but as they do not define the precise time of the completion of these actions, their tense may properly be denominated an *indefinite past*. By defining the present participle in conjunction with the verb, we have an *imperfect* tense in the expression, *were travelling*. This course, however, would not be in accordance with the ordinary method of treating the participles. Hence it follows, that the terms *imperfect* and *perfect*, as applied to this and the next succeeding tense, are not altogether significant of their true character; but if you learn to apply these tenses *correctly*, the propriety or impropriety of their names is not a consideration of very great moment.

---

by the *simple* process of exploding the passive verb, and reducing the number of the moods to three, and of the tenses to two. It is certain, however, that if we reject the *names* of the perfect, pluperfect, and future tenses, the *names* of the potential and subjunctive moods, and of the passive verb, in writing and discourse, we must still employ those *verbal combinations* which form them; and it is equally certain, that the proper mode of employing such combinations, is as easily taught or learned by the old theory, which *names them*, as by the new, which gives them no name.

On philosophical principles, we might, perhaps, dispense with the *future* tenses of the verb, by analyzing each word separately; but, as illustrated on page 79, the combined words which form our perfect and pluperfect tenses, have an *associated* meaning, which is destroyed by analyzing each word separately. That arrangement, therefore, which rejects these tenses, appears to be, not only *unphilosophical*, but inconsistent and inaccurate.

For the satisfaction of those teachers who prefer it, and for their adoption, too, a modernized *philosophical* theory of the moods and tenses is here presented. If it is not quite so convenient and useful as the old one, they need not hesitate to adopt it. It has the advantage of being *new*; and, moreover, it sounds *large*, and will make the *commonality stare*. Let it be distinctly understood, that you teach "*philosophical grammar, founded on reason and common sense*," and you will pass for a very learned man, and make all the good housewives wonder at the rapid march of intellect, and the vast improvements of the age.

MOOD.

Verbs have three moods, the indicative, (embracing what is commonly included under the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *potential*,) the imperative, and the infinitive.—For definitions, refer to the body of the work.

The PERFECT TENSE denotes past time, and also conveys an allusion to the present; as, "I *have* finished my letter."

The verb *have finished*, in this example, signifies that the action, though passed, was perfectly finished at a point of time immediately preceding, or in the course of a period which comes to the present. Under this view of the subject, the term *perfect* may be properly applied to this tense, for it specifies, not only the completion of the action, but, also, alludes to the particular period of its accomplishment.

The PLUPERFECT TENSE represents a past action or event that transpired before some other past time specified; as, "I *had finished* my letter before my brother arrived."

You observe that the verb *had finished*, in this example, represents one *past* action, and the arrival of my brother, another *past* action; therefore *had finished* is in the pluperfect tense, because the action took place prior to the taking place of the other past action specified in the same sentence.

TENSE OR TIME.

Verbs have only two tenses, the present and the past.

A verb expressing action commenced and not completed, is in the present tense; as, "Religion *soars;* it *has* gained many victories; it *will* [to] *carry* its votaries to the blissful regions."

When a verb expresses finished action, it is in the past tense; as, "This page (the Bible) God *hung* out of heaven, and *retired*."

A verb in the imperative and infinitive moods, is always in the *present* tense, high authorities to the contrary notwithstanding. The *command* must *necessarily* be given in time present, although its *fulfilment* must be future.—John, what are you doing? Learning my task. Why do you learn it?—Because my preceptor commanded me to do so. When *did* he command you? *Yesterday*.—Not *now*, of course.

That it is inconsistent with the nature of things for a command to be given in *future* time, and that the *fulfilment* of the command, though future, has nothing to do with the tense or time of the command itself, are truths so plain as to put to the blush the gross absurdity of those who identify the time of the fulfilment with that of the command.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

You *may read* the book which I *have printed*.

May, an irregular active verb, signifying "to have and to exercise might or strength," indic. mood, pres. tense, second pers. plur. agreeing with its nom. *you*. *Read*, an irregular verb active, infinitive mood, present tense, with the sign *to* understood, referring to *you* as its agent. *Have*, an active verb, signifying to *possess*, indic. present, and having for its object, book understood after "which." *Printed*, a perf. participle, referring to book understood.

The First Future Tense denotes a future action or event; as, "I *will finish*; I *shall finish*; my letter."

The Second Future Tense represents a future action that will be fully accomplished, at or before the time of another future action or event; as, "I *shall have finished* my letter when my brother arrives."

This example clearly shows you the meaning and the proper use of the second future tense. The verb "shall have finished" implies a future action that will be completely finished, at or before the time of the other future event denoted by the phrase "*when* my brother *arrives*."

Note. What is sometimes called the *Inceptive* future, is expressed thus; "I am going *to write*; "I am about *to write*." Future time is also indicated by placing the infinitive present immediately after the indicative present of the verb *to be*; thus, "I am *to write*;" "Harrison is *to be*, or ought *to be*, commander in chief;" "Harrison is *to command* the army."

You may now read what is said respecting the moods and tenses several times over, and then may learn to *conjugate* a verb. But, before you proceed to the conjugation of verbs, you will please to commit the following paragraph on the *Auxiliary* verbs, and, also, the *signs* of the moods and tenses; and, in conjugating, you must pay particular attention to the manner in which these signs are applied.

OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Auxiliary or Helping Verbs are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. *May*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, and *shall*, are always auxiliaries; *do*, *be*, *have* and *will*, are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs.

Johnson, and Blair, and Lowth, *would have been laughed at*, *had* they *essayed* to *thrust* any thing like our modernized philosophical grammar down the throats of their cotemporaries.

Would, an active verb, signifying "to exercise volition," in the past tense of the indicative. *Have*, a verb, in the infinitive, *to* understood. *Been*, a perfect part. of to *be*, referring to Johnson, Blair, and Lowth. *Laughed at*, perf. part. of to *laugh at*, referring to the same as *been*. *Had*, active verb, in the past tense of the indicative, agreeing with its nom. *they*. *Essayed*, perf. part. referring to they.

Call this "*philosophical* parsing, on reasoning principles, according to the original law of nature and of thought" and the *pill* will be swallowed, by pedants and their dupes, with the greatest ease imaginable.

The use of the auxiliaries is shown in the following conjunction.

SIGNS OF THE MOODS.

The *Indicative* Mood is known by the *sense*, or by its having *no sign*, except in asking a question; as, "Who *loves*?"

The conjunctions *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *whether*, and *lest* are generally signs of the *Subjunctive*; as, "*If* I *love*; *unless* I *love*." &c.

A verb is generally known to be in the *Imperative* Mood by its agreeing with *thou*, or *ye* or *you* understood, as, "*Love* virtue, and *follow* her steps;" that is love *thou*, or love *ye* or *you*; follow *thou*." &c.

May, *can* and *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, are signs of the *Potential* Mood; as, "I *may* love; I *must* love; I *should* love." &c

To is the sign of the *Infinite*; as, "*to* love, *to* smile, *to* hate, *to* walk."

SIGNS OF THE TENSES.

The first form of the verb is the sign of the present tense; as, *love*, *smile*, *hate*, *walk*.

Ed—the imperfect tense of regular verbs; as, *loved*, *smiled*, *hated*, *walked*.

Have—the perfect; as, *have* loved.

Had—the pluperfect; as, *had* loved.

Shall or *will*—the first future: as, *shall* love, or *will* love; *shall smile*, *will smile*.

Shall or *will have*—the second future; as, *shall have* loved, or *will have* loved.

NOTE. There are some exceptions to these signs, which you will notice by referring to the conjugation in the potential mood.

Now, I hope you will so far consult your own ease and advantage, as to commit, perfectly, the signs of the moods and tenses before you proceed farther than to the subjunctive mood. If you do, the supposed Herculean task of learning to conjugate verbs, will be transformed into a few hours of pleasant pastime.

The Indicative Mood has *six* tenses.
The Subjunctive has also *six* tenses.
The Imperative has only *one* tense.
The Potential has *four* tenses.
The Infinite has *two* tenses.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The Conjugation of a verb is the regular combination and arrangement of its several numbers, persons, moods, and tenses.

The Conjugation of an active verb, is styled the *active voice;* and that of a passive verb, the *passive vioce.*

Verbs are called Regular when they form their imperfect tense of the indicative mood, and their perfect participle, by adding to the present tense *ed,* or *d* only when the verb ends in *e;* as,

Pres. Tense.	*Imp. Tense.*	*Perf. Participle.*
I favour.	I favour*ed.*	favour*ed.*
I love.	I lov*ed.*	lov*ed.*

A Regular Verb is conjugated in the following manner.

To Love.—Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. *Pers.* I love,	1. We love,
2. *Pers.* Thou lovest,	2. Ye *or* you love,
3. *Pers.* He, she, *or* it loveth *or* loves.	3. They love.

When we wish to express energy or positiveness, the auxiliary *do* should precede the verb in the present tense: thus,

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I do love,	1. We loved,
2. Thou doest love,	2. Ye *or* you do love,
3. He doth *or* does love.	3. They do love.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I loved,	1. We loved,
2. Thou lovest,	2. Ye *or* you loved,
3. He loved.	3. They loved.

Or by prefixing *did* to the present: thus,

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I did love.	1. We did love,
2. Thou didst love,	2. Ye *or* you did love,
3. He did love.	3. They did love.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I have loved,	1. We have loved,
2. Thou hast loved,	2. Ye *or* you have loved,
3. He hath *or* has loved.	3. Thy have loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I had loved,	1. We had loved,
2. Thou hast loved,	2. Ye *or* you had loved,
3. He had loved.	3. They had loved.

First Future Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I shall *or* will love,	1. We shall *or* will love,
2. Thou shalt *or* wilt love,	2. Ye *or* you shall or will love.
3. He shall *or* will love.	3. They shall *or* will love.

Second Future Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I shall have loved,	1. We shall have loved,
2. Thou wilt have loved,	2. Ye *or* you will have loved,
3. He will have loved.	3. They will have loved.

NOTE. Tenses formed without auxiliaries, are called *simple* tenses; as, I *love;* I *loved;* but those formed by the help of auxiliaries, are denominated *compound* tenses; as, I *have loved;* I *had loved,* &c.

This display of the verb shows you, in the clearest light, the application of the *signs* of the *tenses,* which signs ought to be perfectly committed to memory before you proceed any farther. By looking again at the conjugation, you will notice, that *have,* placed before the perfect participle of any verb, forms the perfect tense; *had,* the pluperfect; *shall* or *will* the first future, and so on.

Now speak each of the verbs, *love, hate, walk, smile, rule,* and *conquer,* in the first person of each tense in this mood, with the pronoun *I* before it; thus, indicative mood, pres. tense, first pers. sing. I love; imperf. I loved; perf. I have loved; and so on, through all the tenses. If you learn thoroughly the conjugation of the verb in the indicative mood, you will find no difficulty in conjugating it through those that follow, for in the conjugation through all the moods, there is a great similarity.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, or elliptical future—*Conjunctive form.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I love,	1. If we love,
2. If thou love,	2. If ye *or* you love,
3. If he love.	3. If they love.

Look again at the conjunction in the indicative present, and you will observe, that the form of the verb differs from this form in the subjunctive. The verb in the present tense of this mood, does not vary its termination on account of number or person. This is called the *conjunctive* form of the verb: but sometimes the verb in the subjunctive mood, present tense, is conjugated in the same manner as it is in the indicative, with this exception, *if*, *though*, *unless*, or some other conjunction, is prefixed; as,

Indicative form.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I love,	1. If we love,
2. If thou lovest,	2. If ye *or* you love,
3. If he loves.	3. If they love.

The following general rule will direct you when to use the *conjunctive* from of the verb, and when the *indicative*. When a verb in the subjunctive mood, present tense, has a *future* signification, or a reference to *future* time, the conjunctive form should be used; as, "If thou *prosper*, thou shouldst be thankful;" "He will mantain his principles, though he *lose* his estate;" that is, If thou *shall* or *shouldest* prosper; though he *shall* or *should* lose, &c. But when a verb in the subjunctive mood, present tense, has *no* reference to future time, the indicative form ought to be used; as "Unless he *means* what he says, he is doubly faithless." By this you perceive, that when a verb in the present tense of the subjunctive mood, has a future signification, an *auxiliary* is always understood before it, for which reason, in this construction, the termination of the principal verb never varies; as, "He will not become eminent unless he *exert* himself;" that is, unless he *shall* exert, or *should* exert himself. This tense of the subjunctive mood ought to be called *elliptical future*.

The imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first future tenses of this mood, are conjugated, in every respect, like the same tenses of the indicative, with this exception; in the subjunctive mood, a conjunction implying doubt, &c., is prefixed to the verb.

In the second future tense of this mood, the verb is conjugated thus,

Second Future Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I shall have loved,	1. If we shall have loved,
2. If thou shalt have loved,	2. If you shall have loved,
3. If he shall have loved.	3. If they shall have loved.

Look at the same tense in the indicative mood, and you will readily perceive the distinction between the two conjugations.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.	*Plural.*
2. Love, *or* love thou, *or* do thou love.	2. Love, *or* love ye *or* you, *or* do ye *or* you love.

NOTE. We cannot command, exhort, &c. either in *past* or *future* time; therefore a verb in this mood is always in the *present* tense.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may, can, *or* must love,	1. We may, can, *or* must love,
2. Thou mayst, canst, *or* must love,	2. Ye *or* you may, can, *or* must love,
3. He may, can, *or* must love.	3. They may, can, *or* must love.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* should love,	1. We might, could, would, *or* should love,
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, *or* shouldst love,	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* should love.
3. He might, could, would, *or* should love.	3. They might, could, would, *or* should love.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may, can, *or* must have loved,	1. We may, can, *or* must have loved,
2. Thou mayst, canst, *or* must have loved,	2. Ye *or* you may, can, *or* must have loved,
3. He may, can, *or* must have loved.	3. They may, can, *or* must have loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* should have loved,	1. We might, could, would, *or* should have loved,
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, *or* shouldst have loved,	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* should have loved,
3. He might, could, would, *or* should have loved.	3. They might, could, would, *or* should have loved.

By examining carefully the conjugation of the verb through this mood, you will find it very easy; thus, you will notice, that whenever any of the auxiliaries, *may*, *can*, or *must*, is placed before a verb, that verb is in the potential mood, *present* tense; *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, renders it in the potential mood, *imperfect* tense; *may*, *can*, or *must have*, the *perfect* tense; and *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*, the *pluperfect* tense.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense. To love. Perf. Tense. To have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present *or* imperfect,	Loving.
Perfect *or* passive,	Loved.
Compound,	Having loved.

NOTE. The perfect participle of a regular verb, corresponds exactly with the imperfect tense; yet the former may, at all times, be distinguished from the latter, by the following rule; In composition, the imperfect tense of a verb *always* has a nominative, either expressed or implied: the perfect participle *never* has.

For your encouragement, allow me to inform you, that when you shall have learned to conjugate the verb to *love*, you will be able to conjugate all the regular verbs in the English language, for they are all conjugated precisely in the same manner. By pursuing the following direction, you can, in a very short time, learn to conjugate any verb. Conjugate the verb *love* through all the moods and tenses, in the first person singular, with the pronoun *I* before it, and speak the Participles: thus, Indicative mood, pres. tense, first pers. sing. I *love*; imperf. tense, I *loved*; perf. tense, I *have loved*: and so on, through every mood and tense. Then conjugate it in the second pers. singular, with the pronoun *thou* before it, through all the moods and tenses; thus, Indic. mood, pres. tense, second pers. sing. thou *lovest*; imperf. tense, thou *lovedst*: and so on, through the whole. After that, conjugate it in the third pers. sing. with *he* before it; and then in the first pers. plural, with *we* before it, in like manner, through all the moods and tenses. Although this mode of procedure may, at first, appear to be laborious, yet, as it is necessary, I trust you will not hesitate to adopt it. My confidence in your perseverance, induces me to recommend any course which I know will tend to facilitate your progress.

When you shall have complied with my requisition, you may conjugate the following verbs in the same manner; which will enable you, hereafter, to tell the mood and tense of any verb without hesitation: *walk, hate, smile, rule, conquer, reduce, relate, melt, shun, fail.*

LECTURE XII.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR verbs are those that do not form their imperfect tense and perfect participle by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present tense; as,

Pres. Tense.	*Imperf. Tense.*	*Perf. or Pass. Part.*
I write	I wrote	written
I begin	I began	begun
I go	I went	gone

The following is a list of the *irregular* verbs. Those marked with an R. are sometimes conjugated *regularly*.

Pres. Tense.	*Imperf. Tense.*	*Perf. or Pass. Part.*
Abide	abode	abode
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke, R.	awaked
Bear, *to bring forth*	bare	born
Bear, *to carry*	bore	borne
Beat	beat	beaten, beat
Begin	began	begun
Bend	bent	bent
Bereave	bereft, R.	bereft, R.
Beseech	besought	besought
Bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Bind	bound	bound
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Bleed	bled	bled
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built	built
Burst	burst, R.	burst, R.
Buy	bought	bought
Cast	cast	cast
Catch	caught, R.	caught, R.
Chide	chid	chidden, chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave, *to adhere*	clave, R.	cleaved
Cleave, *to split*	cleft *or* clove	cleft, cloven
Cling	clung	clung
Clothe	clothed	clad, R.
Come	came	come
Cost	cost	cost
Crow	crew, R.	crowed
Creep	crept	crept
Cut	cut	cut
Dare, *to venture*	durst	dared
Dare, *to challenge*	REGULAR	
Deal	dealt, R.	dealt, R.
Dig	dug, R.	dug, R.
Do	did	done
Draw	drew	drawn
Drive	drove	driven
Drink	drank	drunk, drank*
Dwell	dwelt, R.	dwelt, R.

* The men were drunk; i. e. inebriated. The toasts were drank.

Pres. Tense.	*Imperf. Tense.*	*Perf. or Pass. Part.*
Eat	eat, ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Fly	flew	flown
Forget	forgot	forgotten
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get	got	got†
Gild	gilt. R.	gilt, R.
Gird	girt, R.	girt, R.
Give	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grave	graved	graven, R.
Grind	ground	ground
Grow	grew	grown
Have	had	had
Hang	hung, R.	hung, R.
Hear	heard	heard
Hew	hewed	hewn, R
Hide	hid	hidden, hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold	held	held
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Knit	knit, R.	knit, R.
Know	knew	known
Lade	laded	laden
Lay	laid	laid
Lead	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie, *to lie down*	lay	lain
Load	loaded	laden, R.
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown, R.
Pay	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Read	read	read
Rend	rent	rent

†Gotten is nearly obsolete. Its compound forgotten, is still in good use.

Pres. Tense.	*Imperf. Tense.*	*Perf. or Pass. Part.*
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode	rode, ridden*
Ring	rung, rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
Rive	rived	riven
Run	ran	run
Saw	sawed	sawn, R.
Say	said	said
See	saw	seen
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Set	set	set
Shake	shook	shaken
Shape	shaped	shaped, shapen
Shave	shaved	shaven, R.
Shear	sheared	shorn
Shed	shed	shed
Shine	shone, R.	shone, R.
Show	showed	shown
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Shrink	shrunk	shrunk
Shred	shred	shred
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sung, sang†	sung
Sink	sunk, sank†	sunk
Sit	sat	sat
Slay	slew	slain
Sleep	slept	slept
Slide	slid	slidden
Sling	slung	slung
Slink	slunk	slunk
Slit	slit, R.	slit, R.
Smite	smote	smitten
Sow	sowed	sown, R.
Speak	spoke	spoken
Speed	sped	sped
Spend	spent	spent
Spill	spilt, R.	spilt, R.
Spin	spun	spun
Spit	spit, spat	spit, spitten‡
Split	split	split
Spread	spread	spread

* Ridden is nearly obsolete.

† Sang and sunk should not be used in familiar style.

‡ Spitten is nearly obsolete.

Pres. Tense.	*Imperf. Tense.*	*Perf. or Pass. Part.*
Spring	sprung, sprang	sprung
Stand	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stunk	stunk
Stride	stro'e, strid	stridden
Strike	struck	struck *or* stricken
String	strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Strow *or* Strew	strowed *or* strewed	strown, strowed *or* strewed
Sweat	swet, R.	swet, R.
Swear	swore	sworn
Swell	swelled	swollen, R.
Swim	swum, swam	swum
Swing	swung	swung
Take	took	taken
Teach	taught	taught
Tear	tore	torn
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Thrive	throve, R.	thriven
Throw	threw	thrown
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread	trod	trodden
Wax	waxed	waxen, R.
Wear	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Wet	wet	wet, R.
Weep	wept	wept
Win	won	won
Wind	wound	wound
Work	wrought, worked	wrought, worked
Wring	wrung	wrung
Write	wrote	written.

In familiar writing and discourse, the following, and some other verbs, are often improperly terminated by *t* instead of *ed;* as, "learnt, spelt, spilt, stopt, latcht." They should be "learned, spelled, spilled, stopped, latched."

You may now conjugate the following irregular verbs in a manner similar to the conjugation of regular verbs: *arise, begin, bind, do, go, grow, run, lend, teach, write.* Thus, to *arise*—Indicative mood, pres. tense, first pers. sing. I arise; imperf. tense I arose; perf. tense, I have arisen: and so on, through all the moods, and all the tenses of each mood; and then speak the participles: thus, pres. arising, perf. arisen, comp. having arisen. In the next place, conjugate the same verb in the second pers. sing. through all the moods and tenses; and

then in the third person sing. and in the first person plural. After that, you may proceed in the same manner with the words *begin*, *bind*, &c.

Now read the XI. and XII. lectures *four* or *five* times over, and learn the order of parsing a verb. You will then be prepared to parse the following verbs in full: and I presume, all the other parts of speech. Whenever you parse, you must refer to the Compendium for definitions and rules, if you cannot repeat them without. I will now parse a verb, and describe all its properties by applying the definitions and rules according to the systematic order.

"We *could* not *accomplish* the business."

Could accomplish is a verb, a word which signifies to do—active, it expresses action—transitive, the action passes over from the nom. "we" to the object "business"—regular, it will form its imperfect tense of the indic. mood and perf. part. in *ed*—potential mood, it implies possibility or power—imperf. tense, it denotes past time however distant—first pers. plural, because the nom. "we" is with which it agrees, agreeably to RULE 4. *A verb must agree*, &c. Conjugated—Indic. mood, present tense, first pers. sing. I accomplish; imperfect tense, I accomplished; perfect, I have accomplished; pluperfect, I had accomplished; and so on.—Speak it in the person of each tense through all the moods, and conjugate in the same manner every verb you parse.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

These exercises contain a complete variety of Moods and Tenses.

I learn my lesson well. Charles, thou learnest thy lesson badly. John, do you write a good hand? Those ladies wrote a beautiful letter, but they did not despatch it. Have you seen the gentleman to whom I gave the book? He has gone. They had received the news before the messenger arrived. When will those persons return? My friend shall receive his reward. He will have visited me three times, if he come to-morrow.

If Eliza study diligently, she will improve. If Charles studies, he does not improve. Unless that man shall have accomplished his work by midsummer, he will receive no wages. Orlando, obey my precepts, unless you wish to injure yourself. Remember what is told you. The physician may administer the medicine, but Providence only can bless it. I told him that he might go, but he would not. He might have gone last week, had he conducted himself properly; (that is, *if he had conducted*, &c.) Boys, prepare to recite your lessons. Young ladies, let me hear you repeat what you have learned. Study, diligently, whatever task may be allotted to you. To correct the spirit of discontent, let us consider how little we deserve. To die for one's country, is glorious. How can we become wise? To seek God is wisdom. What is true greatness? Active benevolence. A good man is a great man.

NOTE 1. *Man*, following *great*, and *what*, in the two last examples, are nom. after *is*: RULE 21. *To seek God*, and *to die for one's country*

are members of sentences each put as the nom. case to *is* respectively: RULE 24. The verb *to correct* is the infinitive mood absolute: NOTE under RULE 23. *May be allotted* is a passive verb, agreeing with *which*, the relative part of *whatever*. *That*, the first part of whatever, is an adj. pronoun, agreeing with *task*; and *task* is governed by *study*. *Hear*, following *let*, and *repeat*, following *hear*, are in the infinitive mood without the sign *to*, according to RULE 25. *To recite* is governed by *prepare*: RULE 23. *Is told*, is a passive verb, agreeing with *which*, the relative part of *whatever*; and *you*, following, is governed by *to* understood: NOTE 1, under RULE 32.

2. In parsing a pronoun, if the noun for which it stands is not expressed, you must say it represents some person or thing understood.

LECTURE XIII.

OF THE AUXILIARY, PASSIVE, AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

I. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Before you attend to the following additional remarks on the Auxiliary Verbs, you will do well to read again what is said respecting them in lecture XI. page 140. The short account there given, and their application in conjugating verbs, have already made them quite familiar to you; and you have undoubtedly observed, that, without their help, we cannot conjugate any verb in any of the tenses, except the present and imperfect of the indicative and subjunctive moods, and the present of the imperative and infinitive. In the formation of all the other tenses, tney are brought into requisition.

Most of the auxiliary verbs are defective in conjugation; that is, they are used only in some of the moods and tenses; and when unconnected with principal verbs, they are conjugated in the following manner:

MAY.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I may, thou mayst, he may.
	Plur.	We may, ye *or* you may, they may.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I might, thou mightst, he might.
	Plur.	We might, ye *or* you might, they might.

CAN.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I can, thou canst, he can.
	Plur.	We can, ye *or* you can, they can.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I could, thou couldst, he could.
	Plur.	We could, ye *or* you could, they could.

WILL.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I will, thou wilt, he will.
	Plur.	We will, ye *or* you will, they will.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I would, thou wouldst, he would.
	Plur.	We would, ye *or* you would, they would.

SHALL.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I shall, thou shalt, he shall.
	Plur.	We shall, ye *or* you shall, they shall.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I should, thou shouldst, he should.
	Plur.	We should, ye *or* you should, they should.

TO DO.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I do, thou dost *or* doest, he doth or does.
	Plur.	We do, ye *or* you do, they do.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I did, thou didst, he did.
	Plur.	We did, ye *or* you did, they did.

Participles. Pres. doing. Perf. done.

TO BE.

Pres Tense.	*Sing.*	I am, thou art, he is.
	Plur.	We are, ye *or* you are, they are.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I was, thou wast, he was.
	Plur.	We were, ye *or* you were, they were.

Participles. Pres. being. Perf. been.

TO HAVE.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I have, thou hast, he hath *or* has.
	Plur.	We have, ye *or* you have, they have.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I had, thou hadst, he had.
	Plur.	We had, ye *or* you had, they had.

Participles. Pres. having. Perf. had.

Do, *be*, *have*, and *will*, are sometimes used as principal verbs; and when employed as such, *do*, *be*, and *have*, may be conjugated, by the help of other auxiliaries, through all the moods and tenses.

Do. The different tenses of *do* in the several moods, are thus formed: Indicative mood, pres. tense, first pers. sing. I do; imperfect tense, I did; perf. I have done; pluperfect, I had done; first future, I shall or will do; sec. fut. I shall have done. Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, If I do; imperf. if I did; and so on. Imperative mood, do thou. Potential, pres. I may, can, or must do, &c. Infinitive, present, to do; perf. to have done. Participles, pres. doing; perf. done; compound, having done.

HAVE. *Have* is in great demand. No verb can be conjugated through all the moods and tenses without it. *Have*, when used as a principal verb, is doubled in some of the past tenses, and becomes an auxiliary to itself; thus, Indic. mood. pres. tense, first pers. sing. I have; imp. tense, I had; perf. I have had; pluperf. I had had; first fut. I shall or will have; sec. fut. I shall have had. Subjunctive, present, if I have; imperf. if I had; perf. if I have had; pluperf. if I had had; first fut. if I shall or will have; sec. fut. if I shall have had. Imper. mood, have thou. Potential. present, I may, can, or must have; imp. I might, could, would, or should have; perf. I may, can, or must have had; pluperf. I might, could, would, or should have had. Infinitive, present, to have; perf. to have had. Participles, pres. having; perf. had; compound, having had.

BE. In the next place I will present to you the conjugation of the irregular, neuter verb, *Be*, which is an auxiliary whenever it is placed before the perfect participle of another verb; but in every other situation, it is a *principal* verb.

TO BE.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I am, thou art, he, she, *or* it is.
	Plur.	We are, ye *or* you are, they are.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I was, thou wast, he was.
	Plur.	We were, ye *or* you were, they were.
Perf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I have been, thou hast been, he hath *or* has been.
	Plur.	We have been, ye *or* you have been, they have been.
Plup. Tense.	*Sing.*	I have been, thou hadst been, he had been.
	Plur.	We had been, ye *or* you had been, they had been.
First Fut. T.	*Sing.*	I shall *or* will be, thou shalt *or* wilt be, he shall *or* will be
	Plur.	We shall *or* will be, you shall *or* will be, they shall *or* will be
Second Fut. T.	*Sing.*	I shall have been, thou wilt have been, he will have been.
	Plur.	We shall have been, you will have been, they will have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	If I be, if thou be, if he be.
	Plur.	If we be, if ye *or* you be, if they be.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	If I were, if thou wert, if he were.
	Plur.	If we were, if ye *or* you were, if they were.

The neuter verb *to be*, and all passive verbs, have two forms in the imperfect tense of this mood, as well as in the present; therefore, the following rule will serve to direct you in the proper use of each form. When the sentence implies doubt, supposition, &c., and the neuter verb *be*, or the passive verb, is used with a reference to present or future time, and is either followed or preceded by another verb in the imperfect of the potential mood, the *conjunctive* form of the imperfect tense must be employed: as, "*If* he *were* here, we *should* rejoice together;" "She *might* go, *were* she so disposed." But when there is no reference to present or future time, and the verb is neither followed nor preceded by another in the potential imperfect, the *indicative* form of the imperfect tense must be used; as, "*If* he *was* ill, he did not make it known;" "*Whether* he *was* absent or present, is a matter of no consequence." The general rule for using the conjunctive form of the verb, is presented on page 145. See, also, page 135.

The perfect, pluperfect, and first future tenses of the subjuctive mood, are conjugated in a manner similar to the correspondent tenses of the indicative. The second future is conjugated thus:

Second Fut. T.	*Sing.*	If I shall have been, if thou shalt have been, if he shall, &c.
	Plur.	If we shall have been, if you shall have been, if they, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	Be, *or* be thou, *or* do thou be.
	Plur.	Be, *or* be ye *or* you, *or* do ye *or* you be.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I may, can, *or* must be, thou mayst, canst, *or* must be, he may, can, *or* must be.
	Plur.	We may, can, *or* must be, ye *or* you may, can, *or* must be, they may, can, *or* must be.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I might, could, would, *or* should be, thou mightst, &c.
	Plur.	We might, could, would, *or* should be, you might, &c.
Perf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I may, can, *or* must have been, thou mayst, canst, &c.
	Plur.	We may, can, *or* must have been, you may, can, &c.
Pluper. Tense.	*Sing.*	I might, could, would, *or* should have been, thou, &c.
	Plur.	We might, could, would, *or* should have been, you, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense. To be. Perf. Tense. To have been.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Being. Perf. been. Compound. Having been.

This verb to be, though very irregular in its conjugation, is by far the most important verb in our language, for it is more frequently used than any other; many rules of syntax depend on constructions associated with it, and, without its aid, no passive verb can be conjugated. You ought, therefore, to make yourself perfectly familiar with all its changes, before you proceed any farther.

II. PASSIVE VERBS.

The *cases of nouns* are a fruitful theme for investigation and discussion. In the progress of these lectures, this subject has frequently engaged our attention; and, now, in introducing to your notice the passive verb, it will, perhaps, be found both interesting and profitable to present one more view of the nominative case.

Every sentence, you recollect, must have one *finite* verb, or more than one, and one *nominative*, either expressed or implied, for, without them, no sentence can exist.

The *nominative* is the *actor* or *subject* concerning which the verb makes an affirmation. There are three kinds of nominatives, *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

The nominative to an *active* verb, is *active*, because it *produces* an action, and the nominative to a *passive* verb, is *passive*, because it *receives* or *endures* the action expressed by the verb; for,

A PASSIVE VERB denotes action *received* or *endured* by the person or thing which is the nominative; as, "The *boy* is *beaten* by his father."

You perceive, that the nominative *boy*, in this example, is not represented as the *actor*, but as the *object* of the action expressed by the verb *is beaten*; that is, the boy *receives* or *endures* the action performed by his father; therefore *boy* is a *passive* nominative. And you observe, too, that the verb *is beaten* denotes the *action* received *or* endured by the nominative; therefore *is beaten* is a *passive* verb.

If I say, John *kicked* the horse, John is an active nominative, because he performed or produced the action; but if I say, John *was kicked* by the horse, John is a passive nominative, because he received or endured the action.

The nominative to a *neuter* verb, is *neuter*, because it does not produce an action nor receive one; as, John *sits* in the chair. John is here connected with the neuter verb *sits*, which expresses simply the state of being of its nominative, therefore *John* is a neuter nominative.

I will now illustrate the active, passive, and neuter nominatives by a few examples.

I. Of ACTIVE NOMINATIVES; as, "The *boy* beats the dog; The *lady* sings; The *ball* rolls; The *man* walks."

II. Of PASSIVE NOMINATIVES; as, "The *boy* is beaten; The *lady* is loved; The *ball* is rolled; The *man* was killed."

III. Of NEUTER NOMINATIVES; as, "The *boy* remains idle; The *lady* is beautiful; The *ball* lies on the ground; The *man* lives in town."

You may now proceed to the conjugation of passive verbs.

Passive Verbs are called *regular* when they end in *ed;* as, was *loved;* was *conquered.*

All Passive Verbs *are formed* by adding the *perfect participle* of an active-transitive verb, to the neuter verb *to be.*

If you place a perfect participle of an active-transitive verb after this neuter verb *be*, in any mood or tense, you will have a *passive* verb in the same mood and tense that the verb *be* would be in if the participle were not used; as, I am *slighted;* I was *slighted;* He will be *slighted;* If I be *slighted;* I may, can, *or* must be *slighted*, &c. Hence you perceive, that when you shall have learned the conjugation of the verb *be*, you will be able to conjugate any passive verb in the English language.

The regular passive verb to *be loved*, which is formed by adding the perfect participle *loved* to the neuter verb to *be*, is conjugated in the following manner:

TO BE LOVED.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense.	*Sing.*	I am loved, thou art loved, he is loved.
	Plur.	We are loved, ye *or* you are loved, they are loved.
Imperf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I was loved, thou wast loved, he was loved.
	Plur.	We were loved, ye *or* you were loved, they were loved.
Perf. Tense.	*Sing.*	I have been loved, thou hast been loved, he had been loved.
	Plur.	We have been loved, you have been loved, they have been loved.

Plup. Tense. { *Sing.* I had been loved, thou hadst been loved, he had been loved. *Plur.* We had been loved, you had been loved, they had been loved.

First Future. { *Sing.* I shall *or* will be loved, thou shalt *or* wilt be loved, he shall *or* will be loved. *Plur.* We shall *or* will be loved, you shall *or* will be loved, they shall *or* will be loved.

Second Future. { *Sing.* I shall have been loved, thou wilt have been loved, he, &c. *Plur.* We shall have been loved, you will have been loved, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense. { *Sing.* If I be loved, if thou be loved, if he be loved. *Plur.* If we be loved, if ye *or* you be loved, if they be loved.

Imperf. Tense. { *Sing.* If I were loved, if thou wert loved, if he were loved. *Plur.* If we were loved, if you were loved, if they were loved.

This mood has six tenses:—See conjugation of the verb to *be*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense. { *Sing.* Be thou loved, *or* do thou be loved. *Plur.* Be ye *or* you loved, *or* do ye be loved.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Pres. Tense. { *Sing.* I may, can, *or* must be loved, thou mayst, canst, *or* must be loved, &c. *Plur.* We may, can, *or* must be loved, you may, can, *or* must be loved, &c.

Imperf. Tense. { *Sing.* I might, could, would, *or* should be loved, thou mightst &c. *Plur.* We might, could, would, *or* should be loved, ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* should be loved, &c.

Perf. Tense. { *Sing.* I may, can, *or* must have been loved, thou mayst, canst, *or* must have been loved, &c. *Plur.* We may, can, *or* must have been loved, you may, can, *or* must have been loved, &c.

Pluper. Tense. { *Sing.* I might, could, would, *or* should have been loved, thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, *or* shouldst have been loved, &c. *Plur.* We might, could, would, *or* should have been loved, you might, could, would, *or* should have been loved, they, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense. To be loved. Perf. Tense. To have been loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. Being loved. Perfect *or* Passive. Loved.

Compound. Having been loved.

NOTE. This conjugation of the passive verb *to be loved*, is called the *passive voice* of the regular active-transitive verb *to love*.

Now conjugate the following passive verbs; that is, speak them in the first pers. sing. and plur. of each tense, through all the moods;

and speak the participles; "to be loved, to be rejected, to be slighted, to be conquered, to be seen, to be beaten, to be sought, to be taken."

NOTE 1. When the perfect participle of an *intransitive* verb is joined to the neuter verb *to be*, the combination is not a passive verb, but a *neuter* verb in a *passive form*; as, "He *is gone*; The birds *are flown*; The boy *is grown*; My friend *is arrived*." The following mode of construction is not to be preferred: "He *has* gone; The birds *have* flown; The boy *has* grown; My friend *has* arrived."

2. Active and neuter verbs may be conjugated by adding their present participle to the auxiliary verb *to be*, through all its variations; as, instead of, I teach, thou teachest, he teaches, &c., we may say, I am teaching, thou art teaching, he is teaching, &c.; and, instead of, I taught, &c., I was teaching, &c. This mode of conjugation expresses the continuation of an action or state of being; and has, on some occasions, a peculiar propriety, and contributes to the harmony and precision of language. When the present participle of an active verb is joined with the neuter verb to be, the two words united, are, by some grammarians, denominated an active verb, either transitive or intransitive, as the case may be; as, "I am writing a letter; He is walking; and when the present participle of a neuter verb is thus employed, they term the combinations a neuter verb; as, "I am sitting; He is standing." Others, in constructions like these, parse each word separately. Either mode may be adopted.

III. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those which are used only in some of the moods and tenses.

The principal of them are these.

Pres. Tense.	*Imperf. Tense.*	*Perfect or Passive Participle is wanting.*
May,	might.	———
Can,	could.	———
Will,	would.	———
Shall,	should.	———
Must,	must.	———
Ought,	ought.	———
———	quoth.	———

NOTE. *Must* and *ought* are not varied. *Ought* and *quoth* are never used as auxiliaries. *Ought* is always followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, which verb determines its sense. *Ought* is in the *present* tense when the infinitive following it is in the present; as, "He *ought* to do it;" and *ought* is in the *imperfect* tense when followed by the perfect of the infinitive; as, He *ought* to have done it."

Before you proceed to the analysis of the following examples, you may read over the last *three* lectures carefully and attentively; and as soon as you become acquainted with all that has been presented, you will understand nearly all the principles and regular constructions of our language. In parsing a verb, or any other part of speech, be careful to pursue the *systematic order*, and to conjugate every verb until you become familiar with all the moods and tenses.

"He *should have been punished* before he committed that atrocious deed."

Should have been punished is a verb, a word that signifies to do—passive, it denotes action received or endured by the nom.—it is formed by adding the perf. part. *punished* to the neuter verb to *be*—regular, the perf. part. ends in *ed*—potential mood, it implies obligation, &c.—pluperfect tense, it denotes a past action which was prior to the other past time specified by "committed"—third pers. sing. num. because the nom, "he" is with which it agrees: RULE 4. *The verb must agree*, &c.—Conjugated, Indic. mood, pres. tense, he is punished; imperf. tense, he was punished; perf. tense, he has been punished; and so on. Conjugate it through all the moods and tenses, and speak the participles.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Columbus discovered America. America was discovered by Columbus. The preceptor is writing a letter. The letter is written by the preceptor. The work can be done. The house would have been built ere this, had he fulfilled his promise. If I be beaten by that man, he will be punished. Young man, if you wish to be respected, you must be more assiduous. Being ridiculed and despised, he left the institution. He is reading Homer. They are talking. He may be respected, if he become more ingenious. My worthy friend ought to be honoured for his benevolent deeds. This ought ye to have done.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES IN PARSING.

All the most important principles of the science, together with many of the rules, have now been presented and illustrated. But before you proceed to analyze the following exercises, you may turn over a few pages, and you will find all the rules presented in a body. Please to examine them critically, and parse the *examples* under each rule and note. The examples, you will notice, are given to illustrate the respective rules and notes under which they are placed: hence, by paying particular attention to them, you will be enabled fully and clearly to comprehend the meaning and application of all the rules and notes.

As soon as you become familiarly acquainted with all the *definitions*, so that you can apply them with facility, you may omit them in parsing; but you must always apply the rules of Syntax. When you parse without applying the definitions, you may proceed in the following manner:

"Mercy is the true badge of nobility."

Mercy is a noun common, of the neuter gender, third person, singular number, and in the nominative case to "is:" RULE 3. *The nominative case governs the verb.*

Is is an irregular neuter verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person, singular number, agreeing with "mercy," according to RULE 4. *The verb must agree*, &c.

The is the definite article, belonging to "badge" in the singular number: RULE 2. *The definite article* the, &c.

True is an adjective in the positive degree, and belongs to the noun "badge:" RULE 18. *Adjectives belong*, &c.

Badge is a noun common, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and in the nominative case *after* "is," and put by apposition with "mercy," according to RULE 21. *The verb to be may have the same case after it as before it.*

Of is a preposition, connecting "badge" and "nobility," and showing the relation between them.

Nobility is a noun of multitude, mas. and fem. gender, third pers. sing. and in the obj. case, and governed by "of;" RULE 31. *Prepositions govern the obj. case.*

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Learn to unlearn what you have learned amiss.

What I forfeit for myself is a trifle; that my indiscretions should reach my posterity, wounds me to the heart.

Lady Jane Gray fell a sacrifice to the wild ambition of the duke of Northumberland.

King Micipsa charged his sons to consider the senate and people of Rome as proprietors of the kingdom of Numidia.

Hazael smote the children of Israel in all their coasts; and from what is left on record of his actions, he plainly appears to have proved what the prophet foresaw him to be, a man of violence, cruelty and blood.

Heaven hides from brutes what men, from men what spirits know.

He that formed the ear, can he not hear?

He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.

NOTE 1. *Learn*, in the first of the preceding examples, is a transitive verb, because the action passes over from the nom. *you* understood, to *the rest of the sentence* for its object: RULE 24. In the next example, *that my indiscretions should reach my posterity*, is a part of a sentence but as the nominative to the verb *wounds*, according to the same Rule.

2. The noun *sacrifice*, in the third example, is nom. after the active-intransitive verb *fell*: RULE 22. The noun *proprietors*, in the next sentence, is in the objective case, and put by apposition with *senate* and *people*: RULE 7, or governed by *consider*, understood, according to RULE 35.

3. In the fifth example, *what* following *proved*, is a compound relative. *Thing*, the antecedent part, is in the nom. case after *to be*, understood and put by apposition with *he*, according to RULE 21, and NOTE. *Which*, the relative part, is in the obj. case after *to be*, expressed, and put by apposition with *him*, according to the same Rule. *Man* is in the obj. case, put by apposition with *which*: RULE 7. The latter part of the sentence may be *literally* rendered thus: He plainly appears to have proved *to be that base character which* the prophet foresaw him to be, viz, a *man* of violence, cruelty, and blood. The antecedent part of the first *what*, in the next sentence, is governed by *hides*; and *which*, the relative part, is

governed by *know* understood. The antecedent part of the second *what* is governed by *hides* understood, and the relative part is governed by *know* expressed.

4. The first *he*, in the seventh example, is, in the opinion of some, nom. to *can hear* understood; but Mr. N. R. Smith, a distinguished and acute grammarian, suggests the propriety of rendering the sentence thus: "He that formed the ear, *formed it to hear;* can he not hear?" The first *he*, in the last example, is redundant; yet the construction is sometimes admissible, for the expression is more forcible than it would be to say, "Let him hear who hath ears to hear;" and if we adopt the ingenious method of Mr. Smith, the sentence is grammatical, and may be rendered thus: "He that hath ears, *hath ears* to hear; let him hear."

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Idioms, anomalies, and intricacies.

1. "The wall is three *feet* high."
2. "His son is eight *years* old."
3. "My knife is worth a *shilling*."
4. "She is worth *him* and all his *connexions*."
5. "He has been there three *times*."
6. "The hat cost ten *dollars*."
7. "The load weighs a *ton*."
8. "The spar measures ninety *feet*."

REMARKS.—*Anomaly* is derived from the Greek, *a*, without, and *omalos*, similar; that is, *without similarity*. Some give its derivation thus; *anomaly*, from the Latin, *ab*, from, or out of, and *norma*, a rule, or law, means an *outlaw;* a mode of expression that departs from the rules, law, or *general* usages of the language; a construction in language peculiar to itself. Thus, it is a general rule of the language, that adjectives of one syllable are compared by adding *r*, or *er*, and *st*, or *est*, to the positive degree; but good, *better*, *best;* bad, *worse*, *worst*, are not compared according to the general rule. They are, therefore, anomalies. The plural number of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular: man, *men*; woman, *women;* child, *children;* penny, *pence*, are anomalies. The use of *news*, *means*, *alms*, and *amends*, in the singular, constitutes anomalies. Anomalous constructions are correct according to custom; but, as they are departures from general rules, by them they cannot be analyzed.

An *idiom*, Latin *idioma*, a construction peculiar to a language, may be an anomaly, or it may not. An idiomatical expression which is not an anomaly, can be analyzed.

Feet and *years*, in the 1, and 2, examples, are not in the nominative after *is*, according to RULE 21, because they are not in apposition with the respective nouns that precede the verb; but the constructions are anomalous: and, therefore, no rule can be applied to analyze them. The same ideas, however, can be conveyed by a legitimate construction which can be analyzed; thus, "The *height* of the wall is three *feet;*" "The *age* of my son is eight *years*."

"An anomaly, when ascertained to be such, is easily disposed of; but sometimes it is very difficult to decide whether a construction is anomalous or not. The 3d, 4th, and 5th examples, are generally considered

anamolies; but if we supply, as we are, perhaps, warranted in doing, the associated words which modern refinement has dropped, they will cease to be anomolies; thus, "My knife is *of the* worth *of* a shilling;" "*of the* worth *of* him," &c. "He has been there *for* three times;" as we say, "I was unwell *for* three days, after I arrived;" or, "I was unwell three days." Thus it appears, that by tracing back, *for* a few centuries, what the merely modern English scholar supposes to be an anomaly, an ellipsis will frequently be discovered, which, when supplied, destroys the anomaly.

On extreme points, and peculiar and varying constructions in a living language, the most able philologists can never be agreed; because many usages will always be unsettled and fluctuating, and will, consequently, be disposed of according to the caprice of the grammarian. By some, a sentence may be treated as an anomaly; by others who contend for, and supply, an elipsis, the same sentence may be analyzed according to the ellipsis, supplied; whilst others, who deny both the elliptical and anomalous character of the sentence, construct a rule by which to analyze it, which rule has for its foundation the principle contained in that sentence only. This last mode of procedure, inasmuch as it requires us to make a rule for every peculiar construction in the language, appears to me to be the most exceptionable of the three. It appears to be multiplying rules beyond the bounds of unity.

The verbs, *costs*, *weights*, and *measures*, in the 6th, 7th, and 8th examples, may be considered as transitive. See remarks on *resemble*, *have*, *own*, &c., page 56.

EXAMPLES.

1. "And God said, "*Let* there be light,' and there was light." "Let us make man." "Let us bow before the Lord." "Let high-born seraphs tune the lyre."

2. "*Be it* enacted." "*Be it* remembered." *Blessed be he* tha blesseth thee; and *cursed be he* that curseth thee." "My soul, turn from them:—*turn we* to survey." &c.

3. "*Methinks* I see the portals of eternity wide open to receieve him." "*Methought* I was incarcerated beneath the mighty deep." "I was there just thirty *years ago*."

4. "Their laws and their manners, generally *speaking*, were extremely rude." "*Considering* their means, they have effected much."

5. "Ah *me*! nor hope nor life remains."
"*Me!* miserable! which way shall I fly?"

6. "*O happiness!* our being's end and aim!
Good, pleasure, ease, content! whate'er thy name;
That something still which prompts th' eternal sigh,
For which we bear to live or dare to die."—

The verb *let*, in the idiomatic examples under number 1, has no nominative specified, and is left applicable to a nominative of the first, second, or third person, and of either number. Every action necessarily depends on an agent or moving cause; and hence it follows, that the verb, in such constructions, has a nominative understood; but as that nominative is not particularly *pointed out*, the constructions may be considered anomalous.

Instead of saying, "*Let* it [*to*] be enacted;" or "It *is* or *shall* be enacted;" "*Let* him [*to*] be blessed;" or, "He *shall* be blessed;" *Let us* turn to survey," &c.; the verbs, *be enacted, be blessed, turn*, &c., according to an idiom of our language, or the poet's license, are used in the *imperative*, agreeing with a nominative of the first or third person.

The phrases, *methinks* and *methought*, are anomalies, in which the objective pronoun *me*, in the *first* person, is used in place of a nominative, and takes a verb after it in the *third* person. *Him* was anciently used in the same manner; as, "*him thute*, him thought." There was a period when these constructions were not anomalies in our language. Formerly, what we call the *objective* cases of our pronouns, were employed in the same manner as our present *nominatives* are. *Ago* is a contraction of *agone*, the past part. of to *go*. Before this participle was contracted to an adverb, the noun *years* preceding it, was in the nominative case absolute; but now the construction amounts to an anomaly. The expressions "generally speaking," and "considering their means," under number 4, are idiomatical and anomolous, the subjects to the participles not being specified.

According to the genius of the English language, transitive verbs and prepositions require the *objective* case of a noun or pronoun after them; and this requisition is all that is meant by government, when we say, that these parts of speech govern the objective case. See pages 52, 57, and 94. The same principle applies to the interjection. Interjections require the *objective* case of a pronoun of the second or third person; as, "Ah *me!* Oh *thou!* O my *country!*" To say, then, that interjections *require* particular cases after them, is synonymous with saying, that they *govern* those cases; and this office of the interjection is in perfect accordance with that which it performs in the Latin, and many other languages. In the examples under number 5, the first *me* is in the objective after "ah," and the second *me* after *ah* understood; thus, "Ah miserable me!" according to NOTE 2, under RULE 5.—*Happiness*, under number 6, is nom. independent; RULE 5, or in the nom. after *O*, according to this NOTE. The principle contained in the note, proves that every noun of the second person is in the *nominative* case; for, as the pronoun of the second person, in such a situation, is always nominative, which is shown by its *form*, it logically follows that the noun, under such circumstances, although it has *no form* to show its case, must necessarily be in the same case as the pronoun. "Good, pleasure, ease, content, *that*," the antecedent part of "whatever," and *which*, the relative part, are nom. after *art* understood; RULE 21, and *name* is nom. to *be* understood.

The second line may be rendered thus; Whether thou art good, or whether thou art pleasure, &c., or *be* thy *name* that [thing] which [ever thing] it may be: putting *be* in the imperative, agreeing with *name* in the third person. *Something* is nominative after *art* understood.

EXAMPLES.

1. "All were well *but* the *stranger*." "I saw nobody *but* the *stranger*." "All had returned *but* he." "None *but* the *brave* deserve the fair." "The thing they can't *but* purpose, they postpone." "This life, at best, is *but* a dream." "It affords *but* a scanty measure of enjoyment." "If he *but* touch the hills, they will smoke." "Man is *but* a reed, floating on the current of time."

2. "Notwithstanding his poverty, he is content."

3. "Open your hand *wide*." "The apples boil *soft*." "The purest clay is that which burns *white*." "Drink *deep*, or taste not the Pierian spring.

4. "*What though* the swelling surge thou see?" &c. "*What if* the foot, ordain'd the dust to tread?" &c.

REMARKS.—According to the principle of analysis assumed by many of our most critical philologists, *but* is *always* a disjunctive conjunction; and agreeably to the same authorities, to construe it, in any case, as a preposition, would lead to error. See false Syntax under Rule 35. They maintain, that its legitimate and undeviating office is, to join on a member of a sentence which *expresses opposition of meaning*, and thereby forms an exception to, or takes from the universality of, the preposition contained in the preceding member of the sentence. That it sustains its true character as a conjunction in all the examples under number 1, will be shown by the following resolution of them.—"All were well but the *stranger* [*was not well.*"] "I saw nobody but [*I saw*] the *stranger*." "None deserve the fair but the *brave* [*deserve the fair.*"] "They postpone the thing which [*they ought to do, and do not,*] *but* which [thing] they cannot avoid purposing to do." "This life, at best, [*is not a reality,*] *but* it is a dream. It [*affords not unbounded fruition*] *but* it affords a scanty measure of enjoyment." "If he *touch* the hills, *but exert no greater power upon them*, they will smoke;"—"If *he exert no greater power upon the hills, but* [*be-out* of *this fact*] if he touch them, they will smoke."—"Man *is not a stable being, but* he is a reed, floating on the current of time." This method of analysing sentences, however, if I mistake not, is too much on the plan of our pretended philosophical writers, who, in their rage for ancient constructions and combinations, often overlook the modern associated meaning and application of this word. It appears to me to be more consistent with the *modern* use of the word, to consider it an *adverb* in constructions like the following: "If *he but* (*only merely*) touch the hills, they will smoke."

Except and *near*, in examples like the following, are generally construed as prepositions: "All went *except* him;" "She stands *near them*." But many contend, that when we employ *but* instead of *except*, in such constructions, a *nominative* should follow: "All went *but he* [*did not go.*"] On this point and many others, *custom* is *variable*; but the period will doubtless arrive, when *but*, *worth*, and *like*, will be considered prepositions, and, in constructions like the foregoing, invariably be followed by an objective case. This will not be the case, however, until the practice of supplying an ellipsis after these words is entirely dropped.

Poverty, under number 2, is governed by the preposition *notwithstanding*: RULE 31. The adjectives *wide*, *soft*, *white* and *deep*, under number 3, not only express the quality of nouns, but also qualify verbs: Note 4, under Rule 18.—*What*, in the phrases "what though" and "what if," is an interrogative in the objective case, and governed by the verb *matters* understood, or by some other verb; thus, "What matters it—what dost thou fear, though thou see the swelling surge?" "What would you think, if the foot, which is ordained to tread the dust, aspired to be the head?"

In the following examples, the same word is used as several parts of speech. But by exercising judgment sufficient to comprehend the

meaning, and by supplying what is understood, you will be able to analyze them correctly.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

I like what you dislike.
Every creature loves its like.
Anger, envy, and like passions, are sinful.
Charity, like the sun, brightens every object around it.
Thought flies swifter than light.
He thought as a sage, though he felt as a man.
Hail often proves destructive to vegetation.
I was happy to hail him as my friend.
Hail! beauteous stranger of the wood.
The more I examine the work, the better I like it.
Johnson is a better writer than Sterne.
Calm was the day, and the scene delightful.
We may expect a calm after a storm.
To prevent passion is easier than to calm it.
Damp air is unwholesome.
Guilt often casts a damp over our sprightliest hours.
Soft bodies damp the sound much more than hard ones.
Much money has been expended.
Of him to whom much is given, much will be required.
It is much better to give than to receive.
Still water runs deep.
He laboured to still the tumult.
Those two young profligates remain still in the wrong.
They wrong themselves as well as their friends.

I will now present to you a few examples in poetry. Parsing in poetry, as it brings into requisition a higher degree of mental exertion than parsing in prose, will be found a more delightful and profitable exercise. In this kind of analysis, in order to come at the meaning of the author, you will find it necessary to *transpose* his language, and supply what is understood; and then you will have the literal meaning in prose.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Apostrophe to Hope.—Campbell

Eternal Hope! when yonder spheres sublime
Pealed their first notes to sound the march of time,
Thy joyous youth began:—but not to fade.—
When all the sister planets have decayed;
When wrapt in flames the realms of ether glow,
And Heaven's last thunder shakes the world below;
Thou, undismay'd, shall o'er the ruins smile,
And light thy torch at Nature's funeral pile!

Transposed.

Eternal Hope! thy joyous youth began when yonder sublime spheres pealed their first notes to sound the march of time:—but it began

not to fade.—Thou, undismayed, shalt smile over the ruins, when all the sister planets shall have decayed; and thou shalt light thy torch at Nature's funeral pile, when wrapt in flames, the realms of ether glow, and Heaven's last thunder shakes the world below.

ADDRESS TO ADVERSITY.—GRAY.

Daughter of heaven, relentless power,
Thou tamer of the human breast,
Whose iron scourge, and tort'ring hour,
The bad affright, afflict the best!
The gen'rous spark extinct revive;
Teach me to love and to forgive.
Exact my own defects to scan:
What others are to feel; and know myself a man.

TRANSPOSED.

Daughter of heaven, relentless power, thou tamer of the human breast, whose iron scourge and torturing hour affright the bad, and afflict the best! Revive thou in me the generous, extinct spark; and teach thou me to love others, and to forgive them; and teach thou me to scan my own defects exactly, or critically: and teach thou me that which others are to feel; and make thou me to know myself to be a man.

ADDRESS TO THE ALMIGHTY.—POPE.

What conscience dictates to be done,
Or warns me not to do,
This teach me more than hell to shun,
That more than heav'n pursue.

TRANSPOSED.

O God, teach thou me to pursue that (*the thing*) which conscience dictates to be done, more ardently than I pursue heaven; and teach thou me to shun this (*the thing*) which conscience warns me not to do, more cautiously than would I shun hell.

TRIALS OF VIRTUE.—MERRICK.

For see, ah! see, while yet her ways
With doubtful step I tread,
A hostile world its terrors rise,
Its snares delusive spread.
O how shall I, with heart prepared,
Those terrors learn to meet?
How, from the thousand snares to guard
My unexperienced feet?

TRANSPOSED.

For see thou, ah! see thou a hostile world *to* raise its terrors, and see thou a hostile world *to* spread its delusive snares, while I yet tread her (*virtue's*) ways with doubtful steps.

O how shall I learn to meet those terrors with a prepared heart? How shall I learn to guard my unexperienced feet from the thousand snares of the world?

THE MORNING IN SUMMER.—THOMPSON.

Short is the doubtful empire of the night;
And soon, observant of approaching day,
The meek-eyed morn appears, mother of dews,
At first, faint gleaming in the dappled east,
Till far o'er ether spreads the wid'ning glow,
And from before the lustre of her face
White break the clouds away.

TRANSPOSED.

The doubtful empire of the night is short; and the meek-eyed morn (*which is the*) mother of dews, observant of approaching day, soon appears, gleaming faintly, at first, in the dappled east, till the widening glow spreads far over ether, and the white clouds break away from before the lustre of her face.

NATURE BOUNTIFUL.—AKENSIDE.

———Nature's care, to all her children just,
With richest treasures, and an ample state,
Endows at large whatever happy man
Will deign to use them.

TRANSPOSED.

Nature's care, which is just to all her children, largely endows, with richest treasures and an ample state, that happy man who will deign to use them.

NOTE. *What*, in the second example, is a comp. rel. *The* antecedent part is gov. by *teach* understood; and the relative part by *to feel* expressed. *To shun* and *to pursue*, in the third example, are in the infinitive mood, gov. by *than*, according to a NOTE under Rule 23. *Faint* and *from*, in the fifth example, are adverbs. An adverb, in poetry, is often written in the form of an adjective. *Whatever*, in the last sentence, is a comp. pron. and its equivalent to *that* and *who*. *That* is an adj. pron. belonging to "man;" *who* is nom. to "will deign;" and *ever* is excluded from the sentence in sense. See page 113. Parse these examples as they are transposed, and you will find the analysis very easy.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES IN PARSING.

GOLD, NOT GENUINE WEALTH.

Where, thy true treasure? Gold says, "not in me;"
And, "not in me," the Diamond. Gold is poor.

TRANSPOSED.

Where is thy true treasure? Gold says, "It is not in me;" and the Diamond says, "It is not in me." Gold is poor.

SOURCE OF FRIENDSHIP.—DR. YOUNG.

Lorenzo, pride repress; nor hope to find
A friend but what has found a friend in thee.

TRANSPOSED.

Lorenzo, repress thou pride; nor hope thou to find a friend, only in him who has already found a friend in thee.

TRUE GREATNESS.—POPE.

Who noble ends by noble means obtains,
Or, failing, smiles in exile or in chains,
Like good Aurelius let him reign, or bleed
Like Socrates, that man is great indeed.

TRANSPOSED.

That man is great indeed, let him *to* reign like unto good Aurelius, or let him *to* bleed like unto Socrates, who obtains noble ends by noble means; or that man is great indeed, who, failing to obtain noble ends by noble means, smiles in exile or in chains.

INVOCATION.—POLLOK.

Eternal Spirit! God of truth! to whom
All things seem as they are, inspire my song;
My eye unscale: me what is substance teach;
And shadow what, while I of things to come,
As past rehearsing, sing. Me thought and phrase
Severely sifting out the whole idea, grant.

TRANSPOSED.

Eternal Spirit! God of Truth! to whom all things seem to be as they really are, inspire thou my song; and unscale thou my eyes: teach thou *to* me the thing which is substance; and teach thou *to* me the thing which is shadow, while I sing of things which are to come, as one sings of things which are past rehearsing. Grant thou *to* me thought and phraseology which shall severely sift out the whole idea.

THE VOYAGE OF LIFE.

How few, favoured by ev'ry element,
With swelling sails make good the promised port,
With all their wishes freighted! Yet ev'en these,
Freighted with all their wishes, soon complain,
Free from misfortune, not from nature free,
They still are men; and when is man secure?
As fatal time, as storm. The rush of years
Beats down their strength; their numberless escapes
In ruin end: and, now, their proud success,
But plants new terrors on the victor's brow.
What pain, to quit the world just made their own!
Their nests so deeply downed and built so high!
Too low they build, who build beneath the stars.

TRANSPOSED.

How few persons, favoured by every element, safely make the promised port with swelling sails, and with all their wishes freighted! Yet even these few persons who do safely make the promised port with all their wishes freighted, soon complain. Though they are free from misfortune, yet, (*though* and *yet*, corresponding conjunctions, form only *one* connexion,) they are not free from the course of nature, for they still are men; and when is man secure? Time is as fatal to him, as a storm is to the mariner.—The rush of years

beats down their strength; (*that is, the strength of these few;*) and their numberless escapes ends in ruin; and then their proud success only plants new terrors on the victor's brow. What pain it is to them to quit the world, just as they have made it to be their own world; when their nests are built so high, and when they are downed so deeply:—They who build beneath the stars, build too low for their own safety.

Reflections on a Skull.—Lord Byron.

Remove yon skull from out the scattered heaps.
Is that a temple, where a God may dwell?
Why, ev'n the worm at lasts disdains her shattered cell?
Look on its broken arch, its ruined wall,
Its chambers desolate, and portals foul;
Yes, this was once ambition's airy hall,
The dome of thought, the palace of the soul.
Behold, through each lack-lustre, eyeless hole,
The gay recess of wisdom and of wit,
And passion's host, that never brooked control,
Can all, saint, sage, or sophist ever writ,
People this lonely tower, this tenement refit?

Transposed.

Remove thou yonder skull out from the scattered heaps. Is that a temple, where a God may dwell? Why, even the worm at last disdains her shattered cell! Look thou on its broken arch, and look thou on its ruined wall, and on its desolate chambers, and on its foul portals;—yes, this skull was once ambition's airy hall; (*it was*) the dome of thought, the palace of the soul. Behold thou, thorough each lack-lustre, eyeless hole, the gay recess of wisdom and of wit, and passion's host, which never brooked control. Can all the works which saints, or sages, or sophists have ever written, repeople this lonely tower, or can they refit this tenement?

For your future exercises in parsing, you may select pieces from the English Reader, or any other grammatical work. I have already hinted, that parsing in poetry, as it brings more immediately into requisition the reasoning faculties, than parsing in prose, will necessarily tend more rapidly to facilitate your progress: therefore it is advisable that your future exercises in this way, be chiefly confined to the analysis of poetry. Previous to your attempting to parse a piece of poetry, you ought always to transpose it, in a manner similiar to the examples just presented; and then it can be as easily analyzed as prose.

Before you proceed to correct the following exercises in false syntax, you may turn back and read over the whole thirteen lectures, unless you have subject matter already stored in your mind.

LECTURE XIV.

OF DERIVATION.

At the commencement of Lecture II. I informed you that Etymology treats 3dly. of derivation. This branch of Etymology, important as it is, cannot be very extensively treated in an elementary work on grammar. In the course of the preceding lectures, it has been frequently agitated; and now I shall offer a few more remarks, which will doubtless be useful in illustrating some of the various methods in which one word is derived from another. Before you proceed, however, please to turn back and read again what is advanced on this subject on page 27, and in the PHILOSOPHICAL NOTES.

1. Nouns are derived from verbs.
2. Verbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, and sometimes from adverbs.
3. Adjectives are dreived from nouns.
4. Nouns are derived from adjectives.
5. Adverbs are derived from adjectives.

1. Nouns are derived from verbs; as, from "to love," comes "lover;" from "to visit, visiter;" from "to survive, surviver," &c.

In the following instances, and many others, it is difficult to determine whether the verb was deduced from the noun, or the noun from the verb, *viz.* "Love, to love; hate, to hate; fear, to fear; sleep, to sleep: walk, to walk; ride, to ride; act, to act," &c.

2. Verbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, and sometimes from adverbs; as, from the noun *salt*, comes "to salt;" from the adjective *warm*, "to warm;" and from the adverb *forward* "to forward." Sometimes they are formed by lengthening the vowel, or softening the consonant; as, from "grass, to graze;" sometimes by adding *en*; as, from "length, to lengthen;" especially to adjectives; as, form "short, to shorten; bright, to brighten."

3 Adjectives are derived from nouns in the following manner: adjectives denoting plenty are derived from nouns by adding *y*; as, from "Health, healthy; wealth, wealthy; might, mighty," &c.

Adjectives denoting the matter out of which any thing is made, are derived from nouns by adding *en*; as, from "Oak, oaken; wood, wooden; wool, woollen," &c.

Adjectives denoting abundance are derived from nouns by adding *ful*; as, from "Joy, joyful; sin, sinful; fruit, fruitful," &c.

Adjectives denoting plenty, but with some kind of diminution, are derived from nouns by adding *some*; as, from "Light, lightsome; trouble, troublesome; toil, toilsome," &c.

Adjectives denoting want are derived from nouns by adding *less*; as, from "Worth, worthless;" from "care, careless: joy, joyless," &c.

Adjectives denoting likeless are derived from nouns by adding *ly*; as, from "Man, manly; earth, earthly; court, courtly," &c.

Some adjectives are derived from other adjectives, or form nouns by adding *ish* to them; which termination when added to adjectives, imports diminution, or lessening the quality; as, "White, whitish; i. e. somewhat white. When added to nouns, it signifies similitude or tendency to a character; as, "Child, childish; thief, thievish."

Some adjectives are formed from nouns or verbs by adding the termination *able;* and those adjectives signify capacity; as, "Answer, answerable; to change, changeable."

4. Nouns are derived from adjectives, sometimes by adding the termination *ness;* as, "White, whiteness; swift, swiftness;" sometimes by adding *th* or, *t*, and making a small change in some of the letters; as, "Long, length; high, height."

5. Adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives, by adding *ly*, or changing *le* into *ly;* and denote the same quality as the adjectives from which they are derived; as, from "base," comes "basely;" from "slow, slowly; from "able, ably."

There are so many other ways of deriving words from one another, that it would be extremely difficult, if not impossible, to enumerate them. The primitive words of every language are very few; the derivations form much the greater number. A few more instances only can be given here.

Some nouns are derived from other nouns, by adding the terminations *hood* or *head, ship, cry, wic, ric, dom, ian, ment*, and *age.*

Nouns ending in *hood* or *head* are such as signify character or, qualities; as, "Manhood, knighthood, falsehood," &c.

Nouns ending in *ship*, are those that signify office, employment, state, or condition; as, "Lordship, stewardship, partnership," &c. Some nouns ending in *ship* are derived from adjectives; as, "Hard, hardship," &c.

Nouns which end in *ery*, signify action or habit; as, "Slavery, foolery, prudery," &c. Some nouns of this sort come from adjectives; as, "Brave, bravery," &c.

Nouns ending in *wic, ric*, and *dom*, denote dominion, jurisdiction or condition; as, "Bailiwic, bishopric, kingdom, dukedom, freedom," &c.

Nouns which end in *ian*, are those that signify profession; as, "Physician, musician," &c. Those that end in *ment* and *age*, come generally form the French, and commonly signify the act or habit; as, "Commandment," "usage."

Some nouns ending in *ard*, are derived from verbs or adjectives and denote character or habit; as, Drunk, drunkard; dote, dotard."

Some nouns have the form of diminutives; but these are not many. They are formed by adding to the terminations *kin, ling, ing, ock, el*, and the like; as, "Lamb, lambkin; goose, gosling; duck, duckling, hill, hillock; cock, cockerel," &c.

OF PREPOSITIONS USED AS PREFIXES.

I shall conclude this lecture by presenting and explaining a list of Latin and Greek prepositions which are extensively used in English as prefixes. By carefully studying their signification, you will be better qualified to understand the meaning of those words into the composition of which they enter, and of which they form a material part.

I. LATIN PREFIXES.

A, *ab*, *abs*,—signify from or away; as, *a-vert*, to turn from; *ab-ject* to throw away; *ab-stract*, to draw away.

Ad—to or at; as, *ad-here*, to stick to; *ad-mire*, to wonder at.

Ante—means before; as *ante-cedent*, going before.

Circum—signifies round, about; as, *circum-navigate*, to sail round.

Con, *com*, *co*, *col*—together; as, *con-join*, to join together; *com-press*, to press together; *co-operate*, to work together, *col-lapse*, to fall together.

Contra—against; as, *contra-dict*, to speak against.

De—from, down; as, *de-duct*, to take from; *de-scend*, to go down.

Di, *dis*—asunder, away, as, *di-lacerate*, to tear asunder; *dis-miss*, to send away.

E, *ef*, *ex*—out; as, *e-ject*, to throw out; *ef-flux*, to flow out; *ex-clude*, to shut out.

Extra—beyond, as, *extra-ordinary*. beyond what is ordinary.

In, *im*, *il*, *ir*—(*in* Gothic, *inna*, a cave or cell;) as, *in-fuse*, to pour in. These prefixes, when incorporated with adjectives or nouns, commonly reverse in their meaning; as, *in-sufficient*, *im-polite*, *il-legitimate*, *ir-reverence*, *irresolute*.

Inter—between; as, *inter-pose*, to put between.

Intro—within, into; as, *intro-vert*, to turn within; *intro-duce*, to lean into.

Op, *ob*—denote opposition; as, *ob-ject*, to bring against; *op-pugn*, to oppose.

Per—through, by; as, *per-ambulate*, to walk through; *per-haps*, by haps.

Post—after; as, *post-script*, written after; *post-fix*, placed after.

Præ, *pre*—before; as, *pre-fix*, to fix before.

Pro— for, forth, forward; as, *pro-noun*, for a noun; *pro-tend*, to stretch forth; *pro-ject*, to shoot forward.

Præter—past, beyond; as, *preter-perfect*, pastperfect; *preter-natural*, beyond the course of nature.

Re—again or back; as, *re-peruse*, to peruse again; *re-trace*, to trace back.

Retro—backwards; as, *retro-spective*, looking backwards.

Se—aside, apart; as, *se-duce*, to draw aside.

Sub—under; as, *sub-scribe*, to write under, or *sub-sign*.

Subter—under; as, *subter-fluous*, flowing under.

Super—above or over; as, *super-scribe*, to write above; *super-vise*, to overlook.

Trans—over, beyond, from one place to another; as, "*trans-port*, to carry over; *trans-gress*, to pass beyond.

II. GREEK PREFIXES.

A—signifies privation; as, *a-nonymous*, without name.

Amphi—both or two; as, *amphi-bious*, partaking of both or two natures.

Anti—against; as, *anti-masonry*, against masonry.

Dia—through; as, *dia-meter*, line passing through a circle.

Hyper—over; as, *hyper-critical*, over or too critical.

Hypo—under, implying concealment or disguise; as, *hypo-crite*, one dissembling his real character.

Meta—denotes change, or transmutation; as, *meta-morphose*, to change the shape.

Para—contrary or against; as, *para-dox*, a thing contrary to received opinion.

Peri—round about; as, *peri-phrasis*, circumlocution.

Syn, *syl*, *sym*—together; as, *syn-tax*, a placing together; *syn-od*, a meeting of coming together; *syl-lable*, that portion of a word which is taken together; *sym-pathy*, fellow-feeling, or feeling together.

RECAPITULATION OF

THE RULES OF SYNTAX,

With Additional Exercises in False Syntax.

The third part of Grammar is SYNTAX, which treats of the agreement and government of words, and of their proper arrangement in a sentence.

SYNTAX consists of two parts, *Concord* and *Government.*

CONCORD is the agreement which one word has with another, in gender, person, number, or case.

For the illustration of agreement and goverment, see pages 52, and 53.

For the definition of a sentence, and the transposition of its words and members, see pages 119, 124, 128, and 167.

The principal parts of a simple sentence are the *nominative* or subject, the *verb* or attribute, or word that makes the affirmation, and the *object,* or thing affected by the action of the verb; as, "A wise *man governs* his *passions.*" In this sentence, *man* is the subject; *governs* the attribute; and *passions* the object.

A PHRASE is two or more words rightly put together, making sometimes a part of a sentence, and sometimes a whole sentence.

ELLIPSIS is the omission of some word or words, in order to avoid disagreeable or unnecessary repetitions, and to express our ideas concisely, and with strength and elegance.

In this recapitulation of the rules, Syntax is presented in a condensed form, many of the essential NOTES being omitted. This is a necessary consequence of my general plan, in which Etymology and Syntax, you know, are blended. Hence, to acquire a complete knowledge of Syntax from this work, you must look over the whole.

You may now proceed and parse the following additional exercises in false Syntax; and, as you analyze, endeavor to correct all the errors without looking at the Key. If, in correcting these examples,

you should be at a loss in assigning the reasons why the constructions are erroneous, you can refer to the manner adopted in the foregoing pages.

RULE I.

The article *a* or *an* agrees with nouns in the *singular* number only, individually or collectively; as, *A* star, *an* eagle, *a* score, *a* thousand."

RULE II.

The definite article *the* belongs to nouns in the *singular* or *plural* number; as, "*The* star, *the* stars; *the* hat, *the* hats."

NOTE 1. A nice distinction in the meaning is sometimes effected by the use or omission of the article *a*. If I say, "He behaved with *a* little reverence," my meaning is positive. But if I say, "He behaved with little reverence," my meaning is negative. By the former, I rather praise a person; by the latter, I dispraise him. When I say, "There were few men with him," I speak diminutively, and mean to represent them as inconsiderable; whereas, when I say, "There were *a* few men with him," I evidently intend to make the most of them.

2. The indefinite article sometimes has the meaning of *every* or *each*; as, "They cost five shillings *a dozen*; that is, '*every* dozen.'

"A man he was to all the country dear,
"And passing rich with forty pounds *a* year!"

that is, '*every* year.'

3. When several adjectives are connected, and express the various qualities of things individually different, though alike in name, the article should be repeated; but when the qualities all belong to the same thing or things, the article should not be repeated. "*A* black and *a* white calf," signifies, A black *calf*, and a white *calf*; but "*A* black and white calf," describes the two colours of *one* calf.

RULE III.

The nominative case governs the verb; as, "*I* learn, *thou* learnest, *he* learns, *they* learn."

RULE IV.

The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as "The bird *sings*, the birds *sing*, thou *singest*."

NOTE 1. Every verb when it is not in the infinitive mood, must

have a nominative, expressed or implied; as, "Awake, arise;" that is, Awake *ye*; arise *ye*.

2. When a verb comes between two nouns, either of which may be considered as the subject of the affirmation, it must agree with that which is more naturally its subject; as, "The wages of sin *is* death; His meat *was* locusts and wild honey;" "His pavilion *were* dark *waters* and thick *clouds*."

EXAMPLES OF FALSE SYNTAX.

Frequent commission of sin harden men in it.

Great pains has been taken to reconcile the parties.

So much both of ability and merit, are seldom found.

The sincere is always esteemed.

Not one of them are happy.

What avails the best sentiments, if people do not live suitably to them?

Disappointments sinks the heart of man; but the renewal of hope give consolation.

The variety of the productions of genius, like that of the operations of nature, are without limit.

A variety of blessings have been conferred upon us.

Thou cannot heal him, it is true, but thou may do something to relieve him.

In piety and virtue consists the happiness of man.

O thou, my voice inspire,
Who touched Isaiah's hallowed lips with fire.

Note 1. Will martial flames forever fire thy mind,
And never, never be to heaven resigned?

He was a man whose inclinations led him to be corrupt, and had great abilities to manage the business.

Note 2. The crown of virtue is peace and honour.

His chief occupation and enjoyment were controversy.

RULE V.

When an address is made, the noun or pronoun addressed is put in the nominative case *independent*; as, "*Plato*, thou reasonest well; "Do, *Trim*, said my uncle Toby."

NOTE 1. A noun is independent when it has no verb to agree with it.

2. Interjections require the objective case of a pronoun of the *first* person after them, but the nominative of a noun or pronoun of the *second* or *third* person; as, "Ah! *me*; Oh! *thou*; O! *virtue*."

RULE VI.

A noun or pronoun placed before a participle, and

being independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case *absolute*; as, "*Shame being lost*, all virtue is lost;" "The *sun being risen*, we travelled on."

NOTE. Every nominative case, except the case absolute and independent, should belong to some verb expressed or understood; as, "To whom thus *Adam*;" that is, *spoke*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Him Destroyed,
Or won to what may work his utter loss,
All this will follow soon.

Note.—Two substantives, when they come together, and do not signify the same thing, the former must be in the genitive case.

Virtue, however it may be neglected for a time, men are so constituted as ultimately to acknowledge and respect genuine merit.

RULE VII.

Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, signifying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case; as, "*Paul* the *apostle*;" *Joram* the *king*; *Solomon*, the *son* of David, *king* of Israel, wrote many proverbs."

NOTE. A noun is sometimes put in apposition with a sentence; as, "The sheriff has just seized and sold his valuable library—(*which was*) *a misfortune* that greatly depressed him."

FALSE SYNTAX.

We ought to love God, he who created and sustains all things.

The pronoun *he* in this sentence is improperly used in the nominative case. It is the object of the action of the transitive verb "love," and put by apposition with "God;" therefore it should be the objective case, *him*, according to Rule 7. (Repeat the Rule, and correct the following.)

I saw Juliet and her brother, they that you visited.
They slew Varus, he that was mentioned before.
It was John, him who preached repentance.

Adams and Jefferson, them who died on the fourth of July, 1826, were both signers and the firm supporters of the Declaration of Independence.

Augustus the Roman emperor, him who succeeded Julius Cæsar, is variously described by historians.

RULE VIII.

Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, in the *singular* number, connected by copulative conjunctions,

must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns, agreeing with them in the *plural:* as, "Socrates *and* Plato *were* wise; *they* were eminent *philosophers.*"

NOTE 1. When *each* or *every* relates to two or more nominatives in the singular, although connected by a copulative, the verb must agree with each of them in the singular; as, "*Every* leaf, *and every* twig, *and every* drop of water, *teems* with life."

2. When the singular nominative of a complex sentence has another noun joined to it with a preposition, it is customary to put the verb and pronoun agreeing with it in the singular; as, "Prosperity, with humility, *renders its* possessor truly amiable; "The General, also, in conjunction with the officers, *has* applied for redress."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Coffee and sugar grows in the West Indies: It is exported in large quantities.

Two singular nouns coupled together, form a plural idea. The verb *grows* is improper, because it expresses the action of both its nominatives, "coffee and sugar," which two nominatives are connected by the copulative conjunction, *and;* therefore, the verb should be plural, *grow;* and then it would agree with coffee *and* sugar, according to Rule 8. (Repeat the Rule.) The pronoun *it*, as it represents both the nouns, "coffee and sugar," ought also to be plural, *they*, agreeably to Rule 8. The sentence should be written thus, "Coffee and sugar *grow* in the West Indies: *they are* exported in large quantities."

Time and tide waits for no man.

Patience and diligence, like faith, removes mountains.

Life and health is both uncertain.

Wisdom, virtue, happiness, dwells with the golden mediocrity.

The planetary system, boundless space, and the immense ocean, affects the mind with sensations of astonishment.

What signifies the counsel and care of preceptors, when you think you have no need of assistance?

Their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished.

Why is whiteness and coldness in snow?

Obey the commandments of thy father, and the law of thy mother: bind it continually upon thy heart.

Pride and vanity always render its possessor despicable in the eyes of the judicious.

There is error and discrepance in the schemes of the orthoepists, which shows the impossibility of carrying them into effect.

EXAMPLES FOR THE NOTE.

Every man, woman, and child were numbered.

Not proper; for although *and* couples things together so as to present the whole at one view, yet *every* has a contrary effect: it distributes them, and brings each separately and singly under considera-

tion. *Were* numbered is therefore improper. It should be, "*was* numbered," in the singular, according to the Note. (Repeat it.)

When benignity and gentleness reign in our breasts, every person and every occurrence are beheld in the most favourable light.

RULE IX.

Two or more nouns, or nouns and pronouns, in the *singular* number, connected by disjunctive conjunctions, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns, agreeing with them in the *singular*; as, "Neither John *nor* James *has* learned *his* lesson."

NOTE 1. When singular pronouns, or a noun and pronoun, of different persons, are disjunctively connected, the verb must agree, in person, with that which is placed nearest to it; as, "Thou *or* I *am* in fault; I *or* thou *art* to blame; *I*, *or* thou, *or* he, *is* the author of it." But it would be better to say, "Either I am to blame or thou art," &c.

2. When a disjunctive occurs between a singular noun or pronoun and a plural one, the verb must agree with the plural noun or pronoun, which should generally be placed next to the verb; as, "Neither poverty *nor* riches were injurious to him;" "I *or* they were offended by it."

Constructions like these ought generally to be avoided.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Ignorance or negligence have caused this mistake.

The verb, *have* caused, in this sentence, is improperly used in the plural, because it expresses the action, not of *both*, but of either the one or the other of its nominatives; therefore it should be in the singular, *has* caused; and then it would agree with "ignorance *or* negligence," agreeably to RULE 9. (Repeat the Rule.)

A circle or a square are the same in idea.

Neither whiteness nor redness are in the porphyry.

Neither of them are remarkable for precision.

Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which move merely as they are moved.

When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune, affect us, the sincerity of friendship is proved.

Man's happinese or misery are, in a great measure, put into his own hands.

Despise no infirmity of mind or body, nor any condition of life, for they may be thine own lot.

The prince, as well as the people, were blameworthy.

RULE X.

A collective noun or noun of multitude, conveying *unity* of idea, generally has a verb or pronoun agreeing

with it in the *singular*; as, "The *meeting was* large, and *it* held three hours."

NOTE. Rules 10, and 11, are limited in their application. See page 50.

FALSE SYNTAX.

The nation are powerful.
The fleet were seen sailing up the channel.
The church have no power to inflict corporeal punishment.
The flock, and not the fleece, are, or ought to be, the objects of the shepherd's care.
That nation was *once* powerful; but now they are feeble.

RULE XI.

A noun of multitude, conveying *plurality* of idea, must have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it in the *plural*; as, "The *council were* divided in *their* sentiments."

FALSE SYNTAX.

My people doth not consider.
The multitude eagerly pursues pleasure as its chief good.
The committee was divided in its sentiments, and it has referred the business to the general meeting.
The people rejoices in that which should give it sorrow.

RULE XII.

A noun or pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the noun it possesses; *as*, "*Man's* happiness;" *Its* value is great."

NOTE 1. When the possessor is described by circumlocution, the possessive sign should generally be applied to the last term only; as, "The *duke of Bridgewater's* canal; The *bishop of Landaff's* excellent book; The *captain of the guard's* house. This usage, however, ought generally to be avoided. The words do not literally convey the ideas intended. What nonsense to say, "This is *the governor of Ohio's* house!"

2. When nouns in the possessive case are in apposition, and follow each other in quick succession, the possessive sign is generally annexed to the last only; as "For *David* my *servant's* sake; *John* the *Baptist's* head; The canal was built in consequence of *De Witt Clinton* the *governor's* advice."

But when a pause is proper, and the governing noun not expressed, the sign should be applied to the first possessive only, and understood to the rest; as "I reside at Lord *Stormont's*, my old *patron* and *benefactor*."

3. *Its*, the possessive case of *it*, is often improperly used for *'tis*, or,

it is; as, '*Its* my book; *Its* his," &c.; instead of, "*It is* my book; or, "'*Tis* my book; *It is* his; or '*Tis* his."

4. Participles frequntly govern nouns and pronouns in the Possessive case; as, "In case of his *majesty's dying* without issue, &c.; Upon *God's having ended* all his works, &c.; I remember *its being reckoned* a great exploit; At *my* coming in he said," &c. But in such instances, the participle with its adjuncts may be considered a substantive phrase, according to Note 2, Rule 28.

5. Phrases like these, "A work of *Washington Irving's;* A brother of *Joseph's;* A friend of *mine;* A neighbour of *yours*" do not, as some have supposed, each contain a double possessive, or two possessive cases, but they may be thus construed: "A work of (*out of*, or, *among the number of*] *Washington Irving's works;* that is, One of the works of *Washington Irving;* One of the brothers of *Joseph;* One friend of *my friends;* One neighbour of *your neighbours.*"

FALSE SYNTAX.

Homers works are much admired.

Nevertheless, Asa, his heart was not perfect with the Lord.

James Hart, his book, bought August 17, 1829.

Note 1. It was the men's women's and children's lot to suffer great calamities.

This is Peter's, John's, and Andrew's occupation.

Note 2. This is Campell's, the poet's production.

The silk was purchased at Brown's,the mercer's and haberdasher's.

Note 4. Much will depend on the pupil composing frequently.

Much depends on this rule being observed.

The measure failed in consequence of the president neglecting to lay it before the council.

RULE XIII.

Personal pronouns must agree with the nouns for which they stand, in *gender* and *number;* as, "*John* writes, and *he* will soon write well"

NOTE. You, though frequently employed to represent a singular noun, is always *plural in form;* therefore the verb connected with it should be plural: as, "My friend, you *were* mistaken." See page 99 and 100.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Every man will be rewarded according to their works.

Incorrect, because the pronoun *their* does not agree in gender or number with the noun "man," for which it stands; consequently Rule 13, is violated. *Their* should be *his;* and then the pronoun would be of the masculine gender, singular number, agreeing with *man*, according to Rule 13. (Repeat the Rule.)

An orator's tongue should be agreeable to the ear of their audience.

Rebecca took goodly raiment, and put them on Jacob.

Take handfuls of ashes, and let Moses sprinkle it towards heaven, in the sight of Pharaoh, and it shall become small dust.

No one should incur censure for being tender of their reputation.

Note. Horace, you was blamed; and I think you was worthy of censure.

Witness, where was you standing during the transaction? How far was you from the defendant?

RULE. XIV.

Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents, in *gender, person,* and *number;* as, "Thou *who lovest* wisdom;" I *who speak* from experience."

NOTE. When a relative pronoun is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, the relative and the verb may agree in person with either, but not without regard to the sense; as, "I am the man *who command* you;" or, "I am the man *who commands* you." The meaning of the first of these examples will more obviously appear, if we render it thus, "I who command you, am the *man.*"

When the agreement of the relative has been fixed with either of the preceding antecedents, it must be preserved throughout the sentence; as, "I am the *Lord that maketh* all things; *that stretcheth* forth the heavens alone; *that spreadeth* abroad the earth by myself," &c.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Thou who has been a witness of the fact, canst state it.

The wheel killed another man, which make the sixth which have lost their lives by this means.

Thou great First Cause, least understood!

Who all my sense confined.

Note 2d part. Thou art the Lord, who didst choose Abraham, and brought him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees.

RULE XV.

The relative is the nominative case to the verb, when no nominative comes beteween it and the verb; as, "The master *who* taught us, was eminent."

FALSE SYNTAX.

If he will not hear his best friend, whom shall be sent to admonish him?

This is the man whom, he informed me, was my benefactor.

RULE XVI.

When a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the following verb, or by some other word in its own member of the sentence; as, "He *whom* I *serve,* is eternal."

NOTE 1. *Who, which, what*, the relative *that*, and their compounds, *whomever, whomsoever*, &c., though in the objective case, are always placed before the verb; as, "He *whom* ye *seek*, has gone hence."

2. Every relative must have an antecedent to which it relates, either expressed or implied; as, "*Who* steals my purse, steals trash;" that is, *he* who.

3. The pronouns *whichsoever, whatsoever*, and the like, are sometimes elegantly divided by the interposition of the corresponding nouns; as, "On *which* side *soever* the king cast his eyes," &c.

4. The pronoun *what* is sometimes improperly used instead of the conjunction *that*; as, "He would not believe but *what* I was in fault." It should be, "but *that*," &c.

FALSE SYNTAX.

This is the friend who I sincerely esteem.

Not proper, because *who*, which is the object of the action expressed by the transitive verb "esteem," is in the nominative case. It ought to be *whom*, in the objective; and then it would be governed by esteem, according to Rule 16. (Repeat the Rule:—and, also, according to Rule 20. "That is the friend *whom* I sincerely esteem."

They who much is given to, will have much to answer for.

From the character of those who you associate with, your own will be estimated.

He is a man who I greatly respect.

Our benefactors and tutors are the persons who we ought to love, and who we ought to be grateful to.

They who conscience and virtue support, may smile at the caprices of fortune.

Who did you walk with?

Who did you see there?

Who did you give the book to?

RULE XVII.

When a relative pronoun is of the interrogative kind, it refers to the word or phrase containing the answer to the question for its *subsequent*, which subsequent must agree in *case* with the interrogative; as, "*Whose* book is that? *Joseph's*; "*Who* gave you this? *John*."

NOTE. Whether the interrogative *really refers* to a subsequent or not, is doubtful; but it is certain that the subsequent should agree in case with the interrogative.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Who gave John those books? Us. Of whom did you buy them? Of a bookseller, he who lives in Pearl-street.

Who walked with you? My brother and him.

Who will accompany me to the country? Her and me.

RULE XVIII.

Adjectives belong to, and qualify nouns, expressed or understood; as, "He is a *good*, as well as a *wise* man."

NOTE 1. Adjectives frequently belong to pronouns; as, "*I* am *miserable*. "*He* is *industrious*."

2. Numeral adjectives belong to nouns, which nouns must agree in number with their adjectives, when of the *cardinal* kind; as "Ten *feet*; Eighty *fathoms*." But some anomalous and figurative expressions form an exception to this rule; as, "A fleet of *forty sail*;" "*Two hundred head of cattle*."

3. Adjectives sometimes belong to verbs in the infinitive mood, or to a part of a sentence; as, "*To see* is *pleasant*; To be blind is *unfortunate*; To die for our country, is *glorious*."

4. Adjectives are often used to modify the sense of other adjectives, or the action of verbs, and to express the quality of things in connexion with the action by which that quality is produced; as, "*Red hot* iron; *Pale blue* lining; *Deep sea-green* sash; The apples boil *soft*; Open your hand *wide*; The clay burns *white*; The fire burns *blue*; The eggs boil *hard*."

When an adjective is preceded by a preposition, and the noun is understood, the two words may be considered an adverbial phrase; as, "In general, in particular;" that is, generally, particularly.

6. Adjectives should be placed next to the nouns which they qualify; as, "A tract of *good* land."

7. We should generally avoid comparing such adjectives as do not literally admit of comparison; such as, *more impossible, most impossible; more unconquerable, more perfect*, &c. See REMARKS on adjectives, page 76.

8. When an adjective or an adverb is used in comparing two objects, it should be in the comparative degree; but when more than two are compared, the superlative ought to be employed; as, "Julia is the *taller* of the two; Her specimen is the *best* of the three."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Note 2. The boat carries thirty tun.

The chasm was twenty feet broad, and one hundred feet in depth.

Note 6. He bought a new pair of shoes, and an elegant piece of furniture.

My cousin gave his fine pair of horses for a poor tract of land.

Note 7. The contradictions of impiety are still more incomprehensible.

It is the most uncertain way that can be devised.

This is a more perfect model than I ever saw before.

Note 8. Which of those two cords is the strongest?

I was at a loss to determine which was the wiser of the three.

RULE XIX.

Adjective pronouns belong to nouns, expressed or understood; as, "*Any* man, *all* men."

NOTE 1. The demonstrative adjective pronouns must agree in number with their nouns; as, "*This* book, *these* books; *that* sort, *those* sorts."

2. The pronominal adjectives, *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, *another*, and *one*, agree with nouns in the singular number only; as, "*Each* man, *every* person, *another* lesson;" unless the plural nouns convey a collective idea; as, "*Every* six months."

3. *Either* is often improperly employed instead of ; as, "The king of Israel, and Jehosaphat, the king of Judah hem on his throne." *Each* signifies *both* taken separately, s only *the one* or *the other* taken disjunctively:—"sat *each* one."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Note 1. Those sort of favours do real injury.
They have been playing this two hours.
These kind of indulgences soften and injure the mind.
He saw one or more persons enter the garden.
Note 2. Let each esteem others better than themselves.
There are bodies, each of which are so small as to be invisible.
Every person, whatever their station may be, are bound by the laws of morality and religion.
Note 3. On either side of the river was the tree of life.
Nadab and Abihu took either of them his censer.

RULE XX.

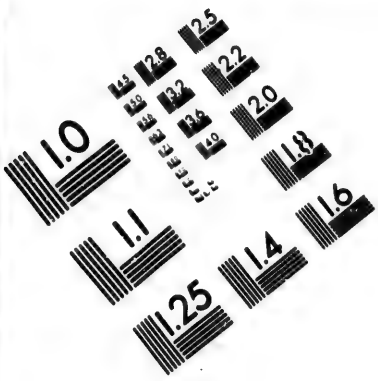
Active-transitive verbs govern the objective case; as, "Cæsar conquered *Pompey*;" "Columbus discovered *America*;" "Truth ennobles *her*."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Ye who were dead, hath he quickened.

Ye, in the nominative case, is erroneous, because it is the object of the action expressed by the transitive verb "hath quickened;" and therefore it should be *you*, in the objective case. *You* would then be governed by "hath quickened," agreeably to rule 20. *Active-transitive verbs govern the objective case.*

Who did they entertain so freely?
They who opulence has made proud, and who luxury has corrupted, cannot relish the simple pleasures of nature.
He and they we know, but who are ye?
She that is negligent, reprove sharply.
He invited my brother and I to pay him a visit.
Who did they send on that mission?
They who he has most injured, he had the greatest reason to love.



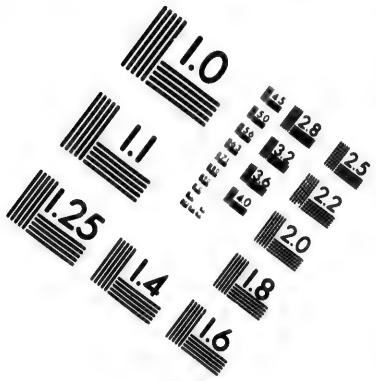
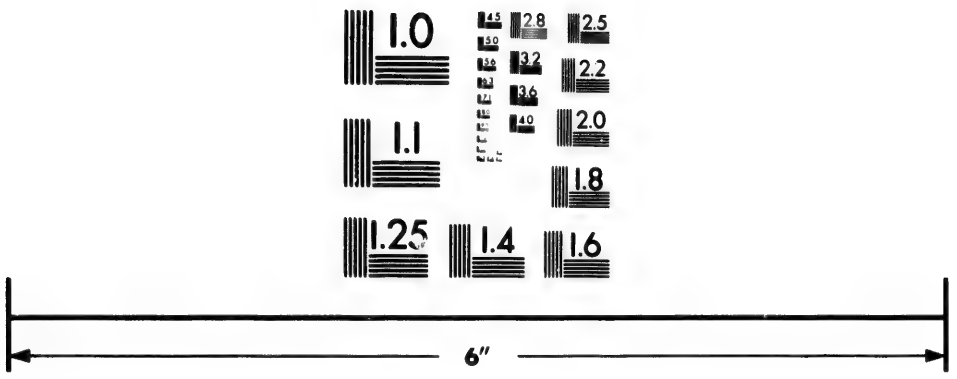
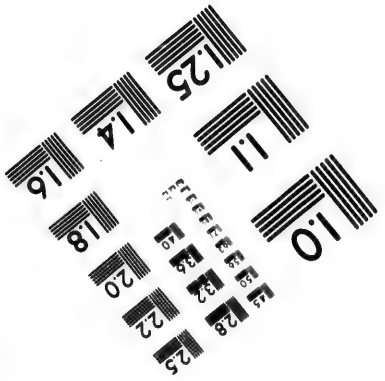


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

2.8
3.2
2.5
2.2
2.0
1.8
1.1
1.0

RULE XXI.

The verb *to be* may have the same case after it as before it; as, "*I* am the *man*;" I believe *it* to have been *them*;" "He is the *thief*."

NOTE 1. When nouns or pronouns next preceding and following the verb *to be*, signify the *same thing*, they are *in apposition*, and, therefore, in the *same, case*. Rule 21 is predicated on the principle contained in Rule 7.

2. The verb *to be* is often understood; as, "The Lord made *me man*; He made *him what* he was;" that is, "The Lord made me *to be* man; He made him *to be that which* he was;" "They desired me to call *them brethren*;" i. e. *by the name of* brethren. "They named him *John*;" i. e. *by the name of* John; or, by the *name* John; putting these two nouns in *apposition*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

I know it to be they.

Improper, because *it is* in the objective case before the verb "to be," and *they* is in the nominative after; consequently, Rule 21 is violated *They* is in apposition with *it*, therefore *they* should be *them*, in the objective after to be, according to Rule 51. (Repeat the Rule.)

Be composed, it is me.

I would not act thus, if I were him.

Well may you be afraid; it is him, indeed.

Who do you fancy him to be?

Whom do men say that I am? Whom say ye that I am?

If it was not him, who do you imagine it to have been?

He supposed it was me; but you know that it was him.

RULE XXII.

Active-intransitive and passive verbs, the verb *to become*, and other neuter verbs, have the same case after them as before them, when both words refer to, and signify, the same thing; as, "*Tom* struts a *soldier*;" "*Will* sneaks a *scrivener*;" "*He* was called *Cæsar*;" "The *general* was saluted *emperor*;" "*they* have become *fools*."

NOTE 1. Active-transitive verbs sometimes assume a transitive form, and govern the objective case; as, "*To dream* a *dream*; *To run* a *race*; *To walk* the *horse*; *To dance* the *child*; *To fly* the *kite*."

2. According to a usage too common in colloquial style, an agent not literally the correct one, is employed as the nominative to a passive, verb, which causes the verb to be followed by an *objective* case without the possibility of supplying before it a preposition; thus,

"*Pitticus* was offered a large *sum* by the king;" "*She* was promised *them* (the *jewels*) by her mother;" "*I* was asked a *question*." It would be better sense, and more agreeable to the idiom of our language, to say, "A large *sum* was offered *to Pitticus;*" "*They* were promised (*to*) *her;* "A *question* was put *to me*."

3. Some passive verbs are formed by using the participles of compound active verbs. To *smile*, to *wonder*, to *dream*, are intransitive verbs, for which reason they have no passive voice; but, to *smile on*, to *wonder at*, to *dream of*, are compound active-transitive verbs, and, therefore, admit of a passive voice; as, "He *was smiled on* by fortune; The accident is not *to be wondered at;*"

"There are more things in heaven and earth, Horatio,
"Than *are dreamed of* in your philosophy."

RULE XXIII.

A verb in the infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, participle, or pronoun; as, "*Cease* to do evil;" "We all have our *talent* to be improved;" "She is *eager* to learn; They are *preparing* to go;" "Let *him* do it."

ILLUSTRATION. The supposed principle of *government* referred to in this rule, may be thus illustrated. In the sentence, "Cease to do evil," the peculiar manner in which *cease* is introduced, *requires* or *compels* us to put the verb *do* in the infinitive mood; and according to the genius of our language, we cannot express this act of doing, when thus connected with *cease*, in any other mood, unless we change the construction of the sentence. Hence we say, that *cease*, governs the mood of the verb *do*. Similar remarks may be applied to the words *talent*, *eager*, *preparing*, and *him*, in the respective examples under the rule.

Many respectable grammarians refer the government of this mood invariably to the preposition *to* prefixed, which word they do not, of course, consider a part of the verb. Others contend, and with some plausibility, that this mood is not governed by any particular word. If we reject the idea of government, as applied to the verb in this mood, the following rule, if substituted for the foregoing, might, perhaps, answer all practical purposes.

RULE.

A verb in the infinitive mood, refers to some noun or pronoun, as its subject or actor.

ILLUSTRATION of the examples under Rule XXIII. "To do" refers to *thou* understood for its agent; "to be improved" refers to *talent;* "to learn," to *she;* "to go," to *they;* and "to do" refers to *him*.

NOTE 1. The infinitive mood absolute stands independent of the rest of the sentence; as, "*To confess* the truth, I was in fault."

2. The infinitive mood is sometimes governed by conjunctions or adverbs; as, "An object so high *as to be* invisible;" "He is wise *enough to deceive*;" "The army is *about to march*."

RULE XXIV.

The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence, is frequently put as the nominative case to a verb, or the object of an active-transitive verb; as, "*To play* is pleasant;" "Boys love *to play*;" "*That warm climates shorten life*, is reasonable to suppose;" "He does not consider *how near he approaches to his end*."

NOTE. *To*, the sign of the infinitive mood, is sometimes properly omitted; as, "I heard him *say* it;" instead of, "to *say* it."

RULE XXV.

The verbs which follow *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, help, let*, and their participles, are in the infinitive mood without the sign *to* prefixed; as, "He bids me *come*;" "I dare *engage*;" "Let me *go*;" "Help me *do it*;" i. e. *to come, to go, to do it*, &c. "He is *hearing* me *recite*."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Bid him to come.
He durst not do it without permission.
Hear him to read his lesson.
It is the difference in their conduct which makes us to love the one, and to reject the other.
It is better to live on a little, than outlive a great deal
I wish him not wrestle with his happiness.

RULE XXVI.

Participles have the same government as the verbs have from which they are derived; as, "I saw the tutor *instructing* his *pupils*."

NOTE. The present participle with the definite article *the* before it, becomes a noun, and must have the preposition *of* after it. *The* and *of* must both be used, or both be omitted: as, "*By* the observing *of* truth, you will command respect;" or, "By observing truth," &c.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Note. We cannot be wise and good without the taking pains for it.
The changing times and seasons, the removing and setting up kings, belong to providence alone.

These are the rules of grammar, by observing of which you may avoid mistakes.

RULE XXVII.

The present participle refers to some noun or pronoun denoting the subject or actor; as, "I see a *boy running*"

RULE XXVIII.

The perfect participle belongs, like an adjective, to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood; as, "I saw the *boy abused*"

NOTE 1. Participles of neuter verbs have the same case after them as before them; as, "*Pontius Pilate* being *governer* of Judea, and *Herod* being *Tetrarch*," &c.

2. A participle, with its adjuncts, may sometimes be considered as a substantive or participial phrase, which phrase may be the subject of a verb, or the object of a verb or preposition; as, "*Taking from another without his knowledge or assent*, is called stealing; He studied to avoid *expressing himself too severely;* I cannot fail of *having money*," &c.; By *promising much, and performing but little*, we become despicable."

3. As the perfect participle and the imperfect tense of irregular verbs, are sometimes different in their form, care must be taken that they be not indiscriminately used. It is frequently said, 'He begun,' for 'he began;' 'He run,' for 'he ran;' 'He come,' for 'he came;' the participles being here used instead of the imperfect tense; and much more frequently is the imperfect tense employed instead of the participle; as, 'I had wrote,' for 'I had written;' 'I was chose,' for 'I was chosen;' 'I have eat,' for 'I have eaten.' 'He would have spoke;'—*spoken.* 'He overrun his guide;'—*overran.* 'The sun had rose;'—*risen.*

FALSE SYNTAX.

I seen him I have saw many a one.

Seen is improper, the perfect participle being used instead of the imperfect tense of the verb. It ought to be, "*saw* him," according to Note 3. *Have saw* is also erroneous, the imperfect tense being employed instead of the perfect participle. The perfect tense of a verb is formed by combining the auxiliary *have* with its perfect participle: therefore the sentences should be written thus, "I have *seen* many a one;" Note 3.

Note 3. He done me no harm, for I had wrote my letter before he come home.

Had not that misfortune befel my cousin, he would have went to Europe long ago.

The sun had already arose, when I began my journey.

Since the work is begun, it must be prosecuted.

The French language is spoke in every state in Europe.

He writes as the best authors would have wrote, had they writ on the same subject

RULE XXIX.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as, "A *very good* pen *writes extremely well*;" "By *living temperately*." &c.,

NOTE 1. Adverbs are generally set before adjectives or adverbs, after verbs, or between the auxiliary and the verb: as, "He made a *very sensible* discourse, and was *attentively* heard."

2. When the qualifying word which follows a verb, expresses *quality*, it must be an adjective, but when it expresses *manner*, an adverb should be used; as, "She looks *cold*; She looks *coldly* on him; He feels *warm*; He feels *warmly* the insult offered to him." If the verb *to be* can be substituted for the one employed, an adjective should follow, and not an adverb; as, "She looks [*is*] *cold*; The hay smells [*is*] *sweet*; The fields look [*are*] *green*; The apples taste [*are*] *sour*; "The wind blows [*is*] *fresh*."

3. It is not strictly proper to apply the adverbs *here*, *there*, and *where* to verbs signifying motion, instead of the adverbs *hither*, *thither whither*; thus, "He came *here* [*hither*] hastily" "They rode *there* [*thither*] in two hours;" "*Where* [*whither*] will he go?" But in familiar style, those constructions are so far sanctioned as sometimes to be admissible.

4. The use of *where*, instead of *in which*, in constructions like the following, is hardly admissible; "The immortal sages of '76 formed a charter, *where* [*in which*] their rights are boldly asserted."

5. As the adverbs *hence*, *thence*, and *whence*, literally supply the place of a noun and preposition, there appears to be a solecism in employing a preposition in conjunction with them; "*From whence* it follows;" "He came *from thence* since morning." Better, "*Whence* it follows;" "He came *thence*." The following phrases are also exceptionable: "The *then* ministry;" "The *above* argument;" "Ask me *never* so much dowry;" "Charm he *never* so wisely." Better, "The ministry *of that time* or *period*;" "The *preceding* argument;" "*Ever* so much dowry;" "*Ever* so wisely."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Note 1. It cannot be impertinent or ridiculous therefore to remonstrate.

He was pleasing not often, because he was vain.
These things should be never separated.
We may happily live, though our possessions are small.

RULE XXX.

Two negatives destroy one another, and are generally equivalent to an affirmative; as, "Such things are *not* uncommon;" i. e. they are common.

NOTE. When one of the two negatives employed is joined to another word, it forms a pleasing and delicate variety of expression; as, "His language, though inelegant, is *not un*grammatical;" that is it is grammatical.

But, as two negatives, by destroying each other, are equivalent to an affirmative, they should not be used when we wish to convey a *negative* meaning. The following sentence therefore is inaccurate: "I can*not* by *no* means allow him what his argument must prove." It should be, "I cannot by *any* means," &c., or, "I *can* by *no* means."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Note 2d part. I don't know nothing about it.
I did not see nobody there. Nothing never affects her.
Be honest, nor take no shape nor semblance of disguise.
There cannot be nothing more insignificant than vanity.
Precept nor discipline is not so forcible as example.

RULE XXXI.

Prepositions govern the objective case; as, "He went *from* Utica to Rome, and then passed *through* Redfield."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Each is accountable for hisself.
They settled it among theirselves.
It is not I who he is displeasd with.
Who did you go with?
Who did you receive instruction from?

RULE XXXII.

Home, and nouns signifying *distance*, time *when*, *how long*, &c., are generally governed by a preposition *understood*; as, "The horse ran a *mile*;" "He came *home* last June;" "My friend lived four *years* at college;" that is, ran *through the space of* a mile; or, ran *over a space called* a mile; *to* his home *in* last June; *during* four years, &c.

NOTE 1. The prepositions *to* and *for* are often understood, chiefly before the pronouns; as, "Give [to] *me* a book; Get [for] *him* some paper."

2. *To* or *unto*, is, by some, supposed to be understood after *like* and *unlike*; as, "He is *like* [unto] his brother; She is *unlike* [to] him." Others consider this mode of expression an idiom of the language, and maintain that *like* governs the objective following it.

3. Nouns signifying extension, duration, quantity, quality, or value, are used without a governing word; as, "The Ohio is one thousand *miles* long; She is ten years old; My hat is worth ten *dollars*." These are sometimes considered anomalies. See p. 163.

RULE XXXIII.

Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case; as, "The master taught *her* and *me* to write;" "*He* and *she* are associates."

FALSE SYNTAX.

My brother and him are grammarians.
You and me enjoy great privileges.
Him and I went to the city in company; but John and him returned without me.
Between you and I there is a great disparity of years.

RULE XXXIV.

Conjunctions generally connect verbs of like moods and tenses; as, "If thou sincerely *desire, and* earnestly *pursue* virtue, she *will* assuredly *be found* by thee, *and prove* a rich reward."

NOTE 1. When different moods and tenses are connected by conjunctions, the nominative must be repeated; as, "He *may return*, but *he will* not *tarry*.

2. Conjunctions implying contingency or doubt, require the subjunctive mood after them; as, "*If* he study, he will improve." See pages 135, 145, and 155.

3. The conjunctions *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *whether*, and *lest*, generally require the subjunctive mood after them.

4. Conjunctions of a positive and absolute nature, implying no doubt, require the indicative mood; as, "*As* virtue *advances*, *so* vice *recedes*."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Did he not tell me his fault, and entreated me to forgive him?
Professing regard, and to act differently, discovers a base mind.
Note. 1. He has gone home, but may return.
The attorney executed the deed, but will write no more.
Note. 2. I shall walk to-day, unless it rains.
If he acquires riches, they will corrupt his mind.

RULE XXXV.

A noun or pronoun following the conjunction *than*, *as*, or *but*, is nominative to a verb, or governed by a verb or preposition, expressed or understood; as, "Thou art wiser *than* I [*am.*'] "I saw nobody *but* [*I saw*] him."

NOTE 1. The conjunction *as*, when it is connected with *such*, *many*, or *same*, is sometimes, though erroneously, called a *relative pronoun*;

as, "Let *such* as presume to advise others," &c.; that is, Let *them who*, &c. See page 116.

2. An ellipsis, or omission of some words, as frequently admitted, which must be supplied in the mind in order to parse grammatically; as, "Wo is me;" that is, *to* me; "To sleep all night;" i. e. *through* all *the* night; "He has gone a journey;" i. e. *on* a journey; "They walked a league;" i. e *aver a space called* a league.

3. When the omission of words would obscure the sense, or weaken its force, they must be expressed.

4. In the use of prepositions, and words that relate to each other, we should pay particular regard to the meaning of the words or sentences which they connect: all the parts of sentences should correspond to each other, and a regular and clear construction throughout should be carefully preserved.

FALSE SYNTAX.

They are much greater gainers than me.

They know how to write as well as him; but he is a better grammarian than them.

They were all well but him.

None were rewarded but him and me.

Jesus sought none but they who had gone astray.

REMARKS ON THE TENSES.

1. In the use of verbs, and other words and phrases which, *in point of time*, relate to each other, a due regard to that relation should be observed.

Instead of saying, "The Lord *hath given*, and the Lord *hath taken* away;" we should say, "The Lord *gave*, and the Lord *hath taken* away." Instead of, "I *remember* the family more than twenty years;" it should be, "I *have remembered* the family more than twenty years."

2. The best rules that can be given for the management of the tenses, and of words and phrases which, in point of time, relate to each other, is this very general one: *Observe what the sense necessarily requires.*

To say, "I *have* visited Washington last summer; I *have seen* the work more than a month ago," is not good *sense*. The constructions should be, "I *visited* Washington, &c.; I *saw* the work, &c." "This mode of expression *has been* formerly much admired;"—"*was* formerly much admired." "If I *had have* been there;" "If I *had have* seen him;" "*Had* you *have* known him," are solecisms too gross to need correction. We can say, I *have* been, I *had* been: but what sort of a tense is, *had have been?* To place *had* before the *defective* verb ought, is an error equally gross and illiterate:—"*had* ought, *hadn't* ought." This is as low a vulgarism as the use of *theirn, hern*, and *hizzen, tother, furder, baynt, this ere*, I *seed* it, I *tell'd* him.

3. When we refer to a past action or event, and no part of that time in which it took place remains, the *imperfect* tense should be used; but if there is still remaining some portion of the time in which

we declare that the thing has been done, the *perfect* tense should be employed.

Thus, we say, "Philosophers *made* great discoveries in the last century;" "He *was* much afflicted last year;" but when we refer to the present century, year, week, day, &c., we ought to use the *perfect* tense; as, "Philosophers *have made* great discoveries in the present century;" "He *has been* much afflicted this year;" "I *have read* the president's message this week;" "We *have heard* important news this morning;" because these events occurred in this century, this year, this week, and to-day, and still there remains a part of this century, year, week, and day, of which I speak.

In general, the perfect tense may be applied wherever the action is connected with the present time, by the actual existence either of the author or of the work, though it may have been performed many centuries ago; but if neither the author nor the work now remains, the perfect tense ought not to be employed. Speaking of priests in general, we may say, "They *have* in all ages *claimed* great powers;" because the general order of the priesthood still exists; but we cannot properly say, "The Druid priests *have claimed* great powers;" because that order is now extinct. We ought, therefore, to say, "The Druid priests *claimed* great powers."

The following examples may serve still farther to illustrate the proper use and application of the tenses. "My brother has recently been to Phfladelphia;" it should be, "*was* recently at Philadelphia;" because the adverb *recently* refers to a time completely past, without any allusion to the present time. "Charles has grown considerably since I have seen him the last time. Corrected, "Charles *has* grown since I *saw* him," &c. "Payment was at length made, but no reason assigned for its being so long postponed." Corrected, "for its *having been* so long postponed." "They were arrived an hour before we reached the city;"—"They *had* arrived."

"The workmen will complete the building at the time I take possession of it." It should be, "will *have completed* the building," &c. "This curious piece of workmanship was preserved, and shown to strangers for more than fifty years past:"—*has been* preserved, and *been* shown to strangers," &c. "I had rather write than beg:"—"I *would* rather write than beg."

"On the morrow, because he would have known the certainty whereof Paul was accused of the Jews, he loosed him from his bond." It ought to be, "because he *would know*; or, *being willing to know*," &c. "The blind man said, 'Lord, that I might receive my sight;'" "If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead." In both these examples, *may* would be preferable to *might*. "I feared that I should have lost the parcel, before I arrived:"—"that I should *lose*." "It would have afforded me no satisfaction, if I could perform it." It ought to be, "If I *could have performed* it;" or, "It *would afford* me no satisfaction, if I *could perform* it." "This dedication may serve for almost any book that has, is, or shall be published:"—"that *has been*, or *will be published*."

4. In order to employ the two tenses of the infinitive mood with propriety, particular attention should be paid to the meaning of what we express.

Verbs expressive of *hope*, *desire*, *intention*, or *command*, ought to be followed by the PRESENT tense of the *infinitive mood*.

"Last week I intended to *have written*," is improper. The intention of writing was then *present* with me; and, therefore, the construction should be, "I intended to *write*." The following examples are also inaccurate: "I found him better than I expected to *have found* him;" "My purpose was, after spending ten months more in commerce, *to have withdrawn* my wealth to another country." They should be, "expected *to find him*;" "*to withdraw* my wealth."

"This is a book which proves itself to be written by the person whose name it bears." It ought to be, "which proves itself *to have been written*," &c. "To see him would have afforded me pleasure all my life." Corrected, "*To have seen him*;" or, "*To see* him *would afford* me pleasure," &c. "The arguments were sufficient to have satisfied all who heard them;"—"were sufficient *to* satisfy." "History painters would have found it difficult to have invented such a species of beings;"—"*to invent* such a species."

5. General and immutable truths ought to be expressed in the *present* tense.

Instead of saying, "He did not know that eight and twenty *were* equal to twenty and eight;" "The preacher said very audibly, that whatever *was* useful, *was* good;" "My opponent would not believe that virtue *was* always advantageous;" "The constructions should be, "*are* equal to twenty;" "whatever *is* useful, *is* good;" "virtue *is* always advantageous."

EXAMPLES IN FALSE SYNTAX PROMISCUOUSLY ARRANGED.

We adore the Divine Being, he who is from eternity to eternity.

On these causes depend all the happiness or misery which exist among men.

The enemies who we have most to fear, are those of our own hearts.

Is it me or him who you requested to go?

Though great has been his disobedience and his folly, yet if he sincerely acknowledges his misconduct, he shall be forgiven.

There were, in the metropolis, much to amuse them.

By exercising of our memories, they are improved.

The property of my friend, I mean his books and furniture, were wholly consumed.

Affluence might give us respect in the eyes of the vulgar, but will not recommend us to the wise and good.

The cares of this world, they often choke the growth of virtue.

They that honour me, I will honour; and them that despise me, shall be lightly esteemed.

I intended to have called last week, but could not.
The fields look freshly and gayly since the rain.
The book is printed very neat, and on fine wove paper.
I have recently been in Washington, where I have seen Gen. Andrew Jackson, he who is now President.
Take the two first, and, if you please, the three last.
The Chinese wall is thirty foot high.
It is a union supported by a hypothesis, merely.
I have saw him who you wrote to; and he would have came back with me, if he could.
Not one in fifty of those who call themselves deists, understand the nature of the religion which they reject.
If thou studiest diligently, thou will become learned.
Education is not attended to properly in Spain.
He know'd it was his duty; and he ought, therefore, to do it.
He has little more of the great man besides the title.
Richard acted very independent on the occasion.
We have done no more than it was our duty to have done.
The time of my friend entering on business, soon arrived.
His speech is the most perfect specimen I ever saw.
Calumny and detraction are sparks which, if you do not blow, they will go out of themselves.
Those two authors have each of them their merit.
Reasons whole pleasure, all the joys of sense,
Lies in three words, health, peace, and competence.
A great mass of rocks thrown together by the hand of nature, with wildness and confusion, strike the mind with more grandeur, than if they were adjusted to one another with the accuratest symmetry.
A lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery or murder.
The side A, with the sides B and C, compose the triangle.
If some persons opportunities were never so favourable, they would be too indolent to improve.
It is reported that the governor will come here to morrow.
Beauty and innocence should be never separate.
Extravagance and folly may reduce you to a situation where you will have much to fear and little to hope.
Not one in fifty of our modern infidels are thoroughly versed in their knowledge of the Scriptures.
Virtue and mutual confidence is the soul of friendship. Where these are wanting, disgust or hatred often follow little differences.
An army present a painful sight to a feeling mind.
To do good to them that hate us, and, on no occasion, to seek revenge, is the duty of a Christian.
The polite, accomplished libertine, is but miserable amidst all his pleasures: the rude inhabitant of Lapland is happier than him.
There are principles in man, which ever have, and ever will incline him to offend.
This is one of the duties which requires great circumspection.
They that honour me, them will I honour.

Every church and sect have opinions peculiar to themselves.

Pericles gained such an ascendant over the minds of the Athenians, that he might be said to attain a monarchial power in Athens.

Thou, Lord, who hath permitted affliction to come upon us, shall deliver us from it in due time.

That writer has given us an account of the manner in which christianity has been formerly propagated among the heathens.

Though the measure be mysterious, it is not unworthy of your attention.

In his conduct was treachery, and in his words, faithless professions.

After I visited Europe, I returned to America.

I have not, nor shall not, consent to a proposal so unjust.

I had intended yesterday to have walked out, but I have been again disappointed.

Five and eight makes thirteen: five from eight leaves three.

If he goes to Saratoga next week, it will make eight times that he has visited that renowned watering place.

I could not convince him, that a forgiving disposition was nobler than a revengeful one. I consider the first, one of the brightest virtues that ever was or can be possessed by man.

The college consists of one great, and several smaller edifices.

He would not believe, that honesty was the best policy.

The edifice was erected sooner than I expected it to have been.

Surely, goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life; and I will dwell in the house of the Lord for ever.

If a man have a hundred sheep, and one of them be gone astray, doth he not leave the ninety and nine, &c.?

He might have completed his task sooner, but he could not do it better.

The most ignorant and the most savage tribes of men, when they have looked round on the earth and on the heavens, could not avoid ascribing their origin to some invisible, designing cause, and felt a propensity to adore their Creator.

Critical Notes and Observations.

Observation 1. The following absurd phrases so common in the sacred desk and elsewhere, should be carefully avoided by all who regard common sense;—"Sing the *two first* and *three last* verses." Just as if their could be more than *one* first and *one* last. They may be a *first two*, a *second two*, &c.; a *first three*, a *second three*, a *last three*. "Within the *two last* centuries;" "The second syllable of the *three first* words;" "The *three first* of these orthoepists have no rule by which their pronounciation is regulated;"—"the *last two* centuries;" "the *first three* words;" "the *first three* of these orthoephists."

2. Adjectives should not be used to express the manner of action. "The higher the river, the *swifter* it flows;" "James learns *easier* than Juliet; he sees *deeper* into the millstone than she;—"the *more swiftly* it flows;" "learns *more easily*;" "*further* into the millstone." "He conducted the *boldest* of any;"—"the *most boldly*."

3. *More* requires *than* after it. The following sentences are therefore improper: "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, *as* Cinthio;" "Richard is more active, but not so studious, *as* his companion." The legitimate mode of supplying the ellipses in these constructions, will show their gross impropriety: thus, "He was more beloved *as* Cinthio;" "Richard is more active *as* his companion," &c,

4. Adverbs, as illustrated on page 85, are generally *substitutes* for two or more words belonging to other parts of speech. "Will you accompany me to Europe next summer?" "*Yes.*" "Do you believe that the voyage will restore your health?" "*No.*" In these examples, the adverbs *yes*, and *no*, are substitutes for whole sentences, and, therefore, do not qualify any words understood. *Yes*, in this instance, literally means, "*I will accompany you to Europe next summer;*" and *no*, "*I do not believe that the voyage will restore my health*" Many other adverbs are often employed in a similar manner.

"*Firstly*," is often improperly used instead of the adverb *first*; "a *good deal*," instead of, *much*, or, a *great deal*.

5. A nice distinction should be observed in the use of *such* and *so*. The former may be employed in expressing *quality*; the latter, in expressing a *degree* of the quality; as, "*Such* a temper is seldom found;" "*So* bad a temper is seldom found." In the following examples, *so* should be used instead of *such*: "He is *such* an extravagant young man, I cannot associate with him; "I never before saw *such* large trees."

The affected use of cardinal, instead of ordinal numbers, ought not to be imitated. "On page *forty-five*;" "Look at page *nineteen*; —*forty-fifth*, *nineteenth*.

6. In the choice and application of prepositions, particular regard should be paid to their meaning as established by the idiom of our language and the best usage. "In my proceedings, I have been actuated from the conviction, that I was supporting a righteous cause;" "He should have profitted from these golden precepts;" "It is connected to John with the conjunction *and*;" "Aware that there is, in the minds of many, a strong predilection in favour of established usages;" "He was made much on at Argos;" "They are resolved on going;" "The rain has been falling of a long time;" "It is a work deserving of encouragement." These examples may be corrected thus, "actuated *by* the conviction;" "*by* those golden precepts;" "*by* the conjunction and;" "predilection *for*;" "much *of* at Argos;" "*on* going;" "falling a long time;" "deserving encouragement."

7. The preposition *to* is used before nouns of place, where they follow verbs or participles of motion; as, "I went *to* Washington." But *at* is employed after the verb to *be*; as "I have been *at* Washington;" "He has been *to* New-York, *to* home," &c., are improper. The preposition *in* is set before countries, cities, and large towns; "He lives *in* France, *in* London, *in* Philadelphia, *in* Rochester." But before single houses, and cities and villages which are in distant countries, *at* is commonly used; as, "He lives *at* Park-place;" "She resides *at* Vincennes." People in the northern states may say, "They live *in* New-Orleans, or, *at* New-Orleans."

8. Passive agents to verbs in the infinitive mood, should not be employed as active agents. The following are solecisms: "This house to let;" "Horses and carriages to let;" "Congress has much business to perform this session;" because the agents, *house horses*, and *carriages*, and *business*, which are really *passive*, are, according to these constructions, rendered as active. The expressions should be, "This house to *be* let;" "Horses and carriages to *be* let;" "much business to *be performed*."

9. AMBIGUITY.—"Nothing is more to be desired than wisdom." Not *literally* correct, for *wisdom* is certainly more to be desired than *nothing*; bnt as a figurative expression, it is well established and unexceptionable.

"A crow is a large black bird:"—a large *black—bird*.

"I saw a horse—fly through the window:"—I saw a *horsefly*.

"I saw a ship gliding under full sail through a spy glass." I saw, through a spy glass, a ship gliding under full sail.

"One may see how the world goes with half an eye." One may see, with half an eye, how the world goes

"A great stone, that I happened to find, after a long search, by the sea shore, served me for an anchor." This arrangement of the members and circumstances of this sentence, confines the speaker's *search to the sea shore*; whereas, he meant, "A *large stone, which*, after a long search, I happened *to find by the sea shore*, served me for an anchor."

"I shall only notice those called personal pronouns." I shall notice *only* those called personal pronouns.

10. TAUTOLOGY.—Avoid words which add nothing to the sense; such as, "*New* extant, *free* gratis, *slow* mope, *cold* snow, a *hot* sun, a *flowing* stream, a *dull* blockhead, *wise* sages." "I am just going to go there;" I am *about* to go.

11. ABSURDITIES and IMPROPRIETIES.—"I can learn him many things." It ought to be, "I can *teach* him." To *learn*, is to *acquire* or *receive* information; to *teach* means to *communicate* it.

"I don't think it is so." You *do think*, that it is *not* so.

Ever, always. "I have ever been of this mind." I have *always* been. *Ever* and *always* are not synonymous. *Ever* refers to *one* indefinite period of time; as, "If he *ever* becomes rich:" *always* means *at all times*.

Excuse, pardon. The former signifies to release from an obligation which refers to the future; the latter, to forgive a neglect or crime that is past. "Excuse me for neglecting to call yesterday:" *pardon* me.

Remember, recollect. We *remember* a thing which we retain in our mind; we *recollect* it, when, though having gone from the mind, we have power to call it back.

Defect, deficiency. A thing which is incomplete in any of its parts, is *defective;* a total absence of the thing, is a *deficiency.*

This subject will be resumed in the appendix to this work.

Corrections in Orthography.

—

From among those words which are often erroneously spelled, the following are selected, and corrected according to Johnson and to Cobb's Walker:—

Incorrect.	*Correct.*
Abscision	Abscission
achievment	achievement
adze	addice
agriculturalist	agriculturist
almanac	almanack
ancle	ankle
baise	baize
bason	basin
bass	base
bambazin	bombasin
boose	bouse
boult	bolt
buccaneer	bucanier
burthen	burden
bye	by
calimanco	calamanco
camblet	camlet
camphor	camphire
canvas	canvass
carcase	carcass
centinel	sentinel
chace	chase
chalibeate	chalybeate
chamelion	chameleon
chemist	chymist
chemistry	chymistry
cholic	colick
chuse	choose
cimetar	cimeter
clench	clinch
cloke	cloak
cobler	cobbler
chimnies	chimneys
chesnut	chestnut
clue	clew
connection	connexion
corset	corslet
cypher	cipher
dactyl	dactyle
diocese	diocess
dipthong	diphthong
dispatch	despatch
doat	dote
draft	draught
drouth	drought
dye	die
dyer	dier
embitter	imbitter
embody	imbody
enquire	inquire
enquirer	inquirer
enquiry	inquiry
ensnare	insnare
enterprize	enterprise
enthral	inthral
entrench	intrench
entrust	intrust
enwrap	inwrap
epaulette	epaulet
etherial	ethereal
faggot	fagot
fasset	faucet
fellon	felon
fie	fy
germ	germe
goslin	gosling
gimblet	gimlet
grey	gray
haloe	halloo
hansel	handsel
highth	height
hindrance	hinderan
impale	empale
inclose	enclose
inclosure	enclosure
indict	endict
indictment	endictment
indorse	endorse

Incorrect.	*Correct.*
indorsement	edorsement
instructor	instructer
insure	ensure
insurance	ensurance
laquey	laekey
laste	last
licence	license
loth	loath
lye	lie
malcontent	malecontent
maneuver	manœuvre
merchandize	merchandise
misprison	misprision
monies	moneys
negociate	negotiate
negociation	negotiation
noviciate	novitiate
ouse	ooze
opake	opaque
paroxism	paroxysm
partizan	partisan
patronize	patronise
phrenzy	phrensy
pinchers	pincers
plow	plough
poney	pony
potatoe	potato
pumpkin	pumpion
quere	query
recognise	recognize
reindeer	raindeer
reinforce	re-enforce
restive	restiff
ribbon	riband
rince	rinse
sadler	saddler
sallad	salad
sceptic	skeptick
scepticism	skepticism
segar	cigar
seignor	seignior
serjeant	sergeant
shoar	shore
soothe	sooth
staunch	stanch
streight	straight
substract	subtract
suitor	suiter
sythe	scythe
tatler	tattler
thresh	thrash
thwak	thwack
tipler	tippler
tranquility	tranquillity
tripthong	triphthong
trissyllable	trisyllable
valice	valise
vallies	valleys
vise	vice
waggon	wagon
warrantee	warranty
whoopingcough	hoopingcough
woe	wo
yeast	yest

Corrections in Orthoepy.

The following words being often erroneously pronounced by polite people, as well as by the vulgar, their correction, in this place, agreeably to Cobb's Walker, it is presumed, will be useful to many. Some of the mispronunciations given are provincial.

Orthography.	*Improper.*	*Pronounced.*
Again	a-gane'	a-gen
Ally	al'-le	al-li'
Are	are	ar
Azure	azh'ur	a'-zure
Bade	bade	bad
Beard	bard	beerd
Been	ben or been	bin
Bleat	blaat	bleet
Boil	bile	boil
Bonnet	bun'-net	bon'-nit
Brooch	brotsh	brootsh
Camphire	kam'-fire	kam'-fir
Canal	ka-nawl'	ka-nal'
Catch	ketsh	katsh
Causeway	kros-wa'	kawz'-wa
Chalice	kal'-is	tshal'-is
Chasten	tshas'-en	tshase'-en
Chimney	tshim'-ble	tshim'-ne
Chine	tshime	tshine
Choir	koir	kwire
Clevy	klev'-is	klev'-ve
Clinch	klensh	klinsh
Column	kol'-yum	kol'-lum
Combat	kom'-bat	kum'-bat
Comma	kom'-me	kom'-ma
Coquet	ko-kwet'	ko-ket'
Corps	korps	kore
Corpse		korps
Cover	kiv'-ur	kuv'-ur
Deaf	deef	def
Decisive	de-sis'-iv	de-si'-siv
Depot	de'-pot	de'-po'
Depute	dep'u-tize	de-pute'
Design	de-zine'	de-sine'
Dint	dent	dint
Docile	do'-sile	dos'-sil
Dis-gust	dis-gust'	dis-gust'
Dismay	dis-ma'	diz-ma'
Disown	dis-one'	diz-one'
Dost	dost	dust

Orthography.	*Improper.*	*Pronounced.*
Doth	doth	duth
Does	dooz	duz
Drain	dreen	drane
Drought	drouth	drout
Drowned	dround'-ed	dround
Ductile	duk'-tile	duk'-til
Edge	aje	edje
Either	i'-thur	e'-thur
English	eng'-lish	ing'-glish
Era	e-re'	e'-ra
Ere	ere	are
Fasten	fas'-tn	fas'-sn
Fearful	fer'-ful	feer'-ful
Figure	fig'-gur	fig'ure
Fiend	fend	feend
First	fust	furst
Foliage	foil'aje	fo'-le-aje
Fortune	for'-tshun	for'tshune
Fortnight	fort'-nit	fort'-nite
Fountain	foun'-tn	foun'-tin
Fracture	frak'-tshur	frak'-tshure
Fragrance	frag'-ranse	fra'-granse
Futile	fu'-tile	fu'-til
Gather	geth'-ur	gath'-ur
Get	git	get
Girth	gurt	gerth
Goal	gool	gole
Going	gone or go'-in	go'-ing
Gold	goold	gold
Gum	goom	gum
Grudge	be-gretsh'	grudge
Gypsum	gip' sum	jip'-sum
Has	hez	haz
Have	ha've	hav'
Heard	heerd	herd
Hearth	hurth or harth	harth
Hiss	siss	hiss
Hoist	histe	hoist
Homely	hum'-ble'	home'-le
Hoof	huf	hoof
Hostler	haws'-lur	os'-lur
Humble	hum'-bl	um'-bl
Jesting	jeest'-in	jest'-ing
Kettle	kit'-tl	ket'-tl
Lecture	lek'-tshur	lek'-tshure
Leisure	lezh'-ur	le'-zhure
Lever	lev'-ur	le'-vur
Lid	led	lid
Lilach	la'-lok	li'-lak
Loam	loom	lome
Loo	lu	loo
Maintain	mane-tane'	men'-tane

Orthography.	*Improper.*	*Pronounced.*
Mermaid	mare'-made	mer'-made
Mountain	moun'-tn	moun'-tin
Nature	na'-tshure	na'-tshure
Neither	ni'-thur	ne'-thur
Oblige	o-bleeje'	o-blije'
Oblique	o-bleek'	ob-like'
Of	of	ov
Oil	ile	oil
Only	on'-le or un'-le	one'-le
Panther	pane'-tur	pan'-thur
Parent	par'-ent	pa'-rent
Partner	pard'-nur	part'-nur
Pasture	pas'-tshur	pas'-tshure
Patron	pat'-run	pa'-trun
Pincers	pinsh'-urz	pin'-surz
Pith	peth	pith
Plait	pleet	plate
Poem	pome	po'-em
Point	pinte	point
Pother	both'-ur	puth'-ur
Precept	pres'-sept	pre'-sept
Preface	pre'-fase	pref'-fas
Prelude	pre'-lude	prel'-ude
Process	pro'-ses	pros'-ses
Product	pro'-dukt	prod'-ukt
Progress	pro-gres	prog'-res
Profile	pro'-file	pro'-feel'
Pumpion	pungk'-in	pump'-yun
Put	put (verb)	pu't
Quoit	kwate	kwoit
Raisin	ra'zn	re'-zn
Rapine	ra'-pine	rap'-in
Rear	rare	reer
Reptile	rep'-tile	rep'-til
Rid	red	rid
Rind	rine	rind
Rinse	rense	rinse
Rosin	roz'un	roz'-in
Routine	rou'-tene	roo-teen'
Roof	ruff	roof
Sacred	sak'-red	sa'-kred
Said	sade	sed
Sat	set	sat
Says	saze	sez
Scarce	skarse	ska'rse
Schedule	sked'-ule	sed'-jule
Shut	shet	shut
Since	sense	sinse
Sit	set	sit
Sleek	slik	sleek
Sliver	sliv'-vur	sli'-vur
Slothful	slawth'-ful	sloth'-ful

Orthography.	*Improper.*	*Pronounced.*
Soot	sut	soot
Spikenard	spig'-nut	spike'-nard
Spoil	spile	spoil
Steelyard	stil'-yurdz	steel'-yard
Stamp	stomp	stamp
Stint	stent	stint
Sword	sword	so'rd
Synod	si'-nod	sin-ud
Therefore	thare'-fore	ther'-fore
Thil	fil	thill
To	to	too
Tour	tour	toor
Treble	trib'-bl	treb'-bl
Towards	to-wards	to-urdz
Trophy	trof-fe	trofe
Tuesday	tshuz-de	tuze-de
Verdure	ver'-jur	ver'-jure
Vizier	vi'-zhur	viz'-yeer
Volume	vol'-lum	vol'-yume
Were	ware	wer
Yea	ya	ye
Yes	yes	yis
Yest	yeest or eest	yest
Yet	yit	yet
You	yu	yoo
Youth	yuth	yooth

Ague and fever	fe'vern-a'gur	a'-gu and fe'-vur
Alternate	awl-ter'-nate	al-ter'-nate
Annunciate	an-nun'-shate	an-nun'-she-ate
Andiron	hand'-i-urn	and'-i-ron
Antipodes	an'-te-podz	an-tip'-o-deez
Apparent	ap-par'-ent	ap-pa'-rent
Architecture	artsh'-e-tek-tshur	ar'-ke-tek-tshure
Assumption	as-sump'-shun	as-sum'-shun
Auxiliary	awks il'-a-re	awg-zil'-ya-re
Certiorari	sasa-ur-ar'-ur	ser-she-o-ra'-ri
Christianity	kris-tshan'-e-te	kris-tshe-an'-e-te
Clandestine	klan-des'-tine	klan-des'-tin
Coadjutor	ko-ad'-ju-tur	ko-ad-ju'-tur
Compendium	kom-pen'-de-um	kom-pen'-je-um
Connoisseur	kon-nis-sure'	kon-nes-sare'
Courteous	kore'-te-us	kur'-tshe-us
Coverlet	kuv'-ur-lid	kuv'-ur-let
Cowardice	kou'-urd-ise	kou'-urd-is
Decrepit	de-krip'id	de-krep'-it
Demonstrate	dem'-on-strate	de-mon'-strate
Desideratum	de-sid-er-at'-um	de-sid-e-ra'-tum
Diamond	di'-mund	di'-a-mund
Discrepance	dis-krep'-an-se	dis'kre-panse.

Orthography.	*Improper.*	*Pronounced.*
Disfranchise	dis-fran'-tshize	dis-fran'-tshiz
Dishonest	dis-on'-est	diz-on'-est
Disorder	dis-or'-dur	diz-or'-dur
Electrify	e-lek'-tur-ize	e-lek'tre-fi
Emaciate	e-ma'-shate	e-ma'she-ate
Expiatory	eks-pi'-a-to-ry	eks'-pe-a-tur-re
Extempore	eks-tem'-pore	eks-tem'-po-re
Extraordinary	eks-tra-or'-de-na-re	eks-tror'-de-na-re
Feminine	fem'-e-nine	fem'-e-nin
Frequently	frek'-went-le	fre'-kwent-le
Genuine	jen'-u-ine	jen'-u-in
Guardian	gar-deen'	gyar'-de-an
Gymnastic	gim-nas'-tik	jim-nas'-tik
Hallelujah	hal-le-lu'-ja	hal-le-loo'-ya
Hospital	hos'-pit-al	os'-pe-tal
Humorous	hu'-mur-us	yu'-mur-us
Idea	i-de'	i-de'-a
Ignoramus	ig-no-ram'-us	ig-no-ra'-mus
Indecorous	in-dek'-o-rus	in-de-ko'-rus
Irradiate	ir-rad'-e-ate	ir-ra'-de-ate
Literati	lit-or-at'-i	lit-er-a'-ti
Maintenance	mane-tane'-anse	men'-te-nance
Masculine	mas'-ku-line	mas'-ku-lin
Mercantile	mur'-kan-tile mur-kan-teel' mur-kan'-til	mer'-kan-til
Meliorate	me-li'-o-rate	me-le'-o-rate
Museum	mu'-ze-um	mu-ze'-um
National	na'-shun-al	nash'-un-al
Nomenclature	no-men'-kla-ture	nom-en-kla'-tshure
Nominative	nom'-e-tiv	nom'-e-na-tiv
Obedience	o-be'-de-ence	o-be'-je-ense
Obstreperous	ob-strop'-pu-lus	ob-strep'-er-us
Octavo	ok'-ta-vo	ok-ta'-vo
Oratory	or'-a-to-re	or'-a-tur-re
Parentage	pa'-rent-ajé	par'-ent-aje
Partiality	par-shal'-le-te	par-she-al'-le-té
Patronage	pa'-trun-aje	pat'-run-ije
Patriarch	pat're-ark	pa'-tre-ark
Patriot	pat'-re-ut	pa'-tre-ut
Patriotism	pat'-re-ut-ism	pa'-tre-ut-izm
Philologist	fi-lol'-lo-jist	fe-lol'-lo-jist
Philosophy	fi-los'-o-fe	fe-los'-o-fe
Philosophical	fi-lo-sof'-ik-al	fil-o-zof'-e-kal
Plagiarism	pla'-ga-rizm	pla'-ja-rizm
Possess	pos-ses	poz-zes'
Possessive	pos-ses'-siv	poz-zes'-siv
Possession	pos-sesh'-un	poz-zesh'un
Preventive	Pre-vent'-a-tiv	pre-vent'-iv
Pronunciation	pro-nun-se-a'-shun	pro-nun-she-a'shun
Propitiation	pro-pis-e-a'-shun	pro-pish-e-a'-shun
Prophecy	prov'-e-si (noun)	prof'-e-se (noun)

Orthography.	*Improper.*	*Pronounced.*
Prophesy	prov'-e-sy (verb)	prof'-e-s (verb)
Radiance	rad'-e-anse	ra'-de-ance
Ratio	ra'-sho	ra'-she-o
Rational	ra'-shun-al	rash'-un-al
Sacrament	sa'-kra-ment	sak'-ra-ment
Sacrifice	sa'-kre-fize (or fis)	sak'-ra-fize
Stereotype	ster'-o-tipe	ste'-re-o-tipe
Stupendous	stu-pen'-du-us stu-pen'-jus	stu-pen'-dus
Synonyme	se-non'-e-me	sin'-o-nim
Synonyma	se-non'-e-miz	se-non'-e-ma
Transparent	trans-par'-ent	trans-pa'-rent
Transparency	trons-par'-en-se	trans-pa'-ren-se
Verbatim	ver-bat'-im	ver-ba'-tim
Volcano	vol-kan'-o	vol-ka'-no
Whiffletree	hwip'pl-tree	hwif'-fl-tree

NOTE 1. When the words *learned*, *blessed*, *loved*, &c., are used as particpal adjectives, the termination *ed* should generally be pronounced as a separate syllable; as, "A *learn-ed* man; The *bless-ed* Redeemer;" but when they are employed as verbs, the *ed* is contracted in pronunciation; as, "He *learn'd* his lesson; They are *lov'd*; I have *walk'd*."

2. The accent of the following words falls on those syllables expressed in the *italic* characters:—Eu-ro-*pe*-an, hy-me-*ne*-al, Ce-sa-*re*-a co-ad-*ju*-tor, e-pi-cu-*re*-an, *in*-ter-est-ed, *in*-ter-est-ing, *rep*-ar-a-ble *rec*-og-nise, *leg*-is-lature, *ob*-li-ga-tory, in-*com*-par-a-ble, ir-*rep*-ar-a-ble in-*ex*-o-ra-ble. In a large class of words, the vowels *a*, *e*, and *ai* should be pronounced like long *a* in *late*; such as *fare*, *rare*, *there*, *their*, *where*, *air*, *chair*, *compare*, *declare*, &c. In the words *person*, *perfect*, *mercy*, *interpret*, *determine*, and the like, the vowel *e* before *r* is often erroneously sounded like short *u*. Its proper sound is that of *e* in *met*, *pet*, *imperative*.

3. With respect to the pronunciation of the words *sky*, *kind*, *guide*, &c., it appears that a mistake extensively prevails, It is believed that their common pronunciation by the vulgar is the *correct* one, and agreeable to the pronunciation intended by Mr. John Walker. The proper diphthongal sounds in skei, kyind, gyide, are adopted by the common mass, and *perverted* by those who, in their unna ural and affected pronunciation of these words, say ske-i, ke-inde, ge-ide. This latter mode of pronouncing them in two syllables is as incorrect and ridiculous as to pronounce the words *boil*, *toil* in two syllables; thus, bo-il, to-il.

4. *My*, *wind*, *pour*. When *my* is contrasted with *thy*, *his*, *her your*, &c., it is pronounced *mi*, in all other situations it is pronounced *me*; as, "*My* [*me*] son, give ear to *my* [*me*] counsel." When *wind* ends a line in poetry, and is made to rhyme with *mind*, *bind*, *kind*, &c., it is prodounced wi'nd, but in other situations it is pronounced wind.

"Lo, the poor Indian! whose untutored mind
"Sees God in clouds, or hears him in the *wind*."

Pour. Analogically, the diphthong *ou*, in this word, has its proper sound, as in hour, sour.

"Ye heavens! from high the dewy nectar *pour*,
"And in soft silence shed the kindly shower."

Provincialisms.

Contractions, Vulgarisms, and other improprieties.

As each of the following provincialisms and vulgarisms has its locality in some one section or other of North America, it is hoped that these corrections will be found useful in the districts to which the various phrases respectively belong.

Improper.	*Correct.*
Aint	Are not
haint	have not
taint	'tis not
baint	are not
maint	may not
wont	will not
wer'nt	were not
waunt	was not
woodent	would not
mussent	must not
izzent	is not
wazzent	was not
hezzent	has not
doozzent	does not
tizzent	'tis not
whool	who will
	don't
	can't
	I'll
	'tis

Common in New England or New York.

Akst	askt
ben	bin
hul	whole
hum	home
stun	stone
dooz	duz
gla'ss	glass
ma'ss	mass
bra'ss	brass
pa'ss	pass
flawnt	flant

Improper.	*Correct.*
hiz-zn	hiz
hou-zn	houz'-iz
an'-shent	ane'-tshent
an'-jel	ane'-jel
dan'-jur	dane'-jur
stran'-jur	strane'-jur
tsham'-bur	tshame'-bur
na'-tur	na'-tshure
nat'-ur-el	natch'-u-ral
for'-tin	for'-tshune
for'-tew-nate	for'-tshu-nate
vur'-tew	ver'-tshu
vur'-tew-us	ver'-tshu-us
ak'-tew-el	ak'tshu-al
ed'-ew-kate	ed'-ju-kate
fath'-ur	fa'-thur
heft	weight
stoop	porch
stent	task
helve	handle
muss	disorder
dump	unload
scup	swing
chase	gig or chaise
cutter	one-horse sleigh
staddle	sapling
foxy	reddish
suple	spry or supple

In Pennsylvania.

Strength	strength
lenth	length
brenth	breadth
ort	ought

Improper.	*Correct.*
nan	what
wisht	wish
wunst	once
ouch	oh
cheer	chair
spook	ghost
furnentz	opposite
wanity	vanity
in wain	in vain
ornary	ordinary
for by	to spare
we bit	small piece
disremember	do not remember

Irish.

Do'or	dore
flo'or	flore
a'nd	and
loss	looz
koorse	korse
soorse	sorse

Improper.	*Correct.*
till	too
put	pot
fu't	fut
a-koont'	ak-kount'
pu'l-pit	pul'-pit
pare'-sun	par'-sn

Md., Va., Ky., Miss., &c.

Thar	thare
whar	hware
bar [bear]	bare
war	wer
mout	mite [might]
gwine	go'-ing
shet or shut	rid
tote or fotch	karie, fetch, or bring
hop'd	helpt
ca-hoot'	part'-nur-ship
mar'-bl	moov off

NOTE. *Clever, pretty, ugly, curious, expect, guess,* and *reckon,* though correct English words, have, among the common people of New England and New York, a provincial application and meaning. With them, a *clever* man is one of a gentle and obliging disposition; instead of a man of distinguished talents and profound acquirements. *Pretty* and *ugly,* they apply to the *disposition* of a person, instead of to his *external appearance.* In these States one will often hear "I *guess* it rains," when the speaker *knows* this to be a fact; and, therefore, *guessing* is uncalled for. "I *expect* I can go;" or, "I *reckon* I can;" instead of, "I *suppose* or *presume.*" In New England a clergyman is often called a *minister;* in New York, a *priest;* and south of New York, a *parson.* The last is preferable.

New England or New York	*Corrected.*
I be goin. He lives to hum.	I *am* going. He lives *at* home.
Hese ben to hum this two weeks.	*He has ben at home these* 2 *weeks.*
You haddent ought to do it. Yes I had ought.	You ought *not* to do it. *Certainly* I ought.
Taint no better than hizzen.	*'Tis* no better than *his.*
Izzent that are line writ well?	*Is not* that line well *written?*
Tizzent no better than this ere.	*It is* no better, or, it is *not any* better than this.
The keows be gone to hum, neow, and I'mer going arter um	The *cows are* gone *home,* and *I am going after them.*
He'll be here, derights, and bring yourn and thairn.	He will be here, directly, and bring yours and theirs.
He touch'd the stun which I shew him, an di guess it made him sithe, for 'twas cissing hot.	He touched the *stone* which I *showed* him, and it made him *sigh,* for *it was hissing* hot.

New England or New York.	*Corrected.*
Run, Thanel, and cut a staddle, for to make a lever on. Ize jest agoneter go, daudy.	Go, Nathaniel, and cut a *sapling*, to make a *lever of*. I *was about* to go, or, *intending to go immediately*, father.
Where shall I dump my cart, squire? Dump it yender. Whats the heft of your load.	Where *shall* I *unload* my cart? *Yonder*. *What is the weight* of your load.
When ju git hum from Hafford? A fortnit ago. You diddent, did ye? Ju see my Daniel, whose sot up a tavern there? No. He had gone afore I got there. O, the pesky critter! He'le soon be up a stump.	When *did you return from Hartford?* A *fortnight* ago. *Is it possible!* *Did* you see my *son Daniel, who has opened a public house* there? No. *He had left before* I *arrived* there. O, the *paltry fellow!* *He will* soon *come to nought.*
My friend's superb mansion is delightfully sitewated on a nate-eral mound of considerable hithe. It hez a long stoop in front; but it is furder from the city than I'de like my hum.	My *friend's* superb mansion is delightfully *situated* on a *natural* mound of considerable *height*. It *has* a long *porch* in front; but it is *farther* from the city than *I would* like to *reside*.
I know'd the gal was drownded, and I tell'd the inquisitioners that ize nither geestin nor jokin about it; but if they'd permit me to giv em my ideze, they'd obleege me. So I parsevered, and carried my pinte. You don't say so. Be you from Barkshire? I be. Neow I swan! if *I* aint clean beat.	I *knew* the *girl had been drowned*, and I *told* the *jury of inquest* that *I was not jesting* about it; but, *by permitting* me to *give them* my *view of the subject*, they *would oblige* me. So, I *persevered*, and *gained* my *point*. *Indeed!* *Are* you from *Berkshire?* I *am*. *Really!* I *am surprised*.
You baint from the Jarseys, be ye? Yes. Gosh! then I guess you kneow heow to tend tarvern.	*Are* you from *New Jersey?* *Yes*. Then I *presume* you *know how* to tend *a tavern*.

In Pennsylvania.	*Corrected.*
I seen him. Have you saw him? Yes, I have saw him wunst; and that was before you seed him.	I *saw* him. Have you *seen* him? Yes, *once;* and that was before you *saw* him.
I done my task. Have you did yours? No, but I be to do it.	I *have* done my task. Have you *done* yours? No, but I *must*.
I be to be there. He know'd me.	I *shall* be there; or, I *must* be there. He *knew* me.
Leave me be, for Ime afear'd	*Let* me be, for I *am afraid*.
I never took notice to it.	I never took notice *of* it; or, better thus, I never *noticed* it.
I wish I haddent did it; howsumever, I dont keer; they cant skeer me.	I wish I *had not done* it; *however, I disregard them*. They *cannot scare* me.

In Pennsylvania.	*Corrected.*
Give me them there books.	Give me *those* books.
He ort to go; so he ort.	He *ought* to go, *really*.
No he orten.	He *ought* not.
Dont scrouge me.	Don't *crowd* me.
I diddent go to do it.	I *did not intend* to do it.
Aint that a good hand write?	*Is not* that *beautiful writing?*
Nan? I know'd what he meant, but I never let on.	*What?* I *knew* what he meant, but I *kept that to myself.*
It is a long mile to town. Ah! I thought 'twas unle a short mile.	It is *a little over* a mile to town. Ah! *I supposed it to be less than* a mile.

Irish.	*Corrected.*
Not here the day; he went till Pittsburgh.	*He is* not here *to*-day. He went *to* Pittsburgh.
Let us be after pairsing a wee bit.	Let us *parse a little.*
Where did you loss it?	Where did you *lose* it.

Md., Va., Ky., or Miss.	*Corrected.*
Carry the horse to water.	*Lead* the horse to water; or, water the horse.
Tote the wood to the river.	*Carry* the wood to the river.
Have you focht the water?	Have you *fetched*, or *brought*, the water?
I've made 200 bushels of corn this year.	I *have raised* 200 bushels of corn this year.
He has run against a snag.	He has *got into difficulty.*
Is that your plunder, stranger?	Is that your *baggage, sir?*
He will soon come ot that habit.	He will soon *overcome*, or *get rid of*, that habit.
I war thar, and I seen his boat was onelend too heavy.	I *was there*, and I *saw that* his boat was too *heavily laden*, or *loaded.*
What you gwine?	*Where are* you *going?*
Hese in cohoot with me.	*He is* in *partnership* with me.
Did you get shet of your tobacco?	Did you *get rid*, or *dispose* of, your *tobacco?*
Who hoped you to sell it.	Who *helped* you to sell it?

PROSODY.

PROSODY treats of the modulations of the voice, according to the usages of the language we speak, and the sentiments we wish to express: hence, in its most extensive sense, it comprises all the laws of elocution.

Prosody is commonly divided into two parts; the first teaches the true pronunciation of words, comprising *accent, quality, emphasis, pause,* and *tone;* and the second, the laws of *versification.*

Accent. Accent is the laying of a peculiar stress of the voice on a particular letter or syllable in a word, that it may be better heard than the rest, or distinguished from them; as, in the word *presu'me,* the stress of the voice must be on the letter *u,* and the second syllable, *sume,* which syllable takes the accent.

Every word of more syllables than one has one accented syllable. For the sake of euphony or distinctness in a long word, we frequently give a secondary accent to another syllable beside the one which takes the principal accent; as, *tes'-ti-mo-ni-ˈal, a-ban'-don-ˈing.*

Quantity. The quantity of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. It is considered as long or short.

A vowel or syllable is long when the accent is on the vowel; which causes it to be slowly joined in pronunciation with the following letters; as, "Fāll, bāle, mōōd, hōūse, fēature.

A syllable is short when the accent is on the consonant, which causes the vowel to be quickly joined to the succeeding letter; as, "ănt, bŏnnĕt, hŭngĕr."

A long syllable generally requires double the time of a short one in pronouncing it; thus, "māte" and "nōte" should be pronounced as slowly again as "măt" and "nŏt."

Emphasis. By emphasis is meant a stronger and fuller sound of the voice, by which we distinguish some word or words on which we design to lay particular stress, and to show how they affect the rest of the sentence. Sometimes the emphatic words must be distinguished by a particular tone of voice, as well as by a greater stress.

Emphasis will be more fully explained under the head of Elocution.

Pauses. Pauses or rests, in reading or speaking, are a total cessation of the voice during a perceptible, and, in many cases, a measurable space of time.

Tones. Tones are different both from emphasis and pauses; consist-

ing in the modulations of the voice, or the notes or variations of sound which we employ in the expression of our sentiments.

Emphasis affects particular words and phrases: but tones affect sentences, paragraphs, and sometimes a whole discourse.

Punctuation.

PUNCTUATION is the art of dividing written composition into sentences or parts of sentences, by points or stops, in order to mark the different pauses which the sense and an accurate pronunciation require.

The *Comma* represents the shortest pause; the *Semicolon*, a pause double that of the comma; the *Colon*, double that of the semicolon; and the *Period* double that of the colon.

Punctuation is a modern art. The ancients were entirely unacquainted with the use of points; and wrote, not only without any distinction of members and periods, but also without any distinction of words. This custom continued till the year 360 before Christ. How the ancients read their works, written in this manner, it is not easy to conceive. After the practice of joining words together had ceased, notes of distinction were placed at the end of every word. This practice continued a considerable time.

As it appears that the present usage of points did not take place whilst manuscripts and monumental inscriptions were the only known methods of conveying knowledge, we must conclude, that it was introduced with the art of printing. The introduction was, however, gradual: all the points did not appear at once. The colon, semicolon, and note of admiration, were produced some time after the others. The whole set, as they are now used, became established, when learning and refinement had made considerable progress.

As the rules of punctuation are founded altogether on the grammatical construction of sentences, their application presupposes, on the part of the student, a knowledge of Syntax. Although they admit of exceptions, and require a continual exercise of judgment and literary taste in applying them properly, they are of great utility, and justly merit our particular attention.

The great importance of acquiring a thorough knowledge of punctuation, and of attending strictly to the application of its rules, is established by the single fact, that *the meaning of a sentence is often totally perverted by the omission or misapplication of points.* To illustrate the correctness of this remark, numerous examples might be selected. The following border on the ridiculous: "Mr. Jared

Hurton having gone to sea his wife, desires the prayers of this church;" "Tryon, who escaped from the jail on Friday last, is 22 years of age, has sandy hair, light eyes, thin visage, with a short nose turned up about six feet high, &c." Corrected; "Mr. John Hurton, having gone to sea, his wife desires the prayers of this church;" "thin visage, with a short nose turned up, about six feet high," &c.

Before one enters upon the study of punctuation, it is necessary for him to understand what is meant by an *adjunct*, a *simple sentence*, and a *compound sentence*.

An *adjunct* or *imperfect phrase* contains no assertion, or does not amount to a proposition or sentence; as, "Therefore;" "studious of praise;" "in the pursuit of commerce."—For the definition of a sentence, and a compound sentence, turn to page 119.

When two or more adjuncts are connected with the verb in the same manner, and by the same preposition or conjunction, the sentence is compound, and may be resolved into as many simple ones as there are adjuncts; "They have sacrificed their *health* and *fortune*, at the shrine of *vanity*, *pride*, and *extravagance*." But when the adjuncts are connected with the verb in a different manner, the sentence is simple; as, "Grass of an excellent *quality* is produced in great *abundance* in the northern regions of our country."

COMMA.

RULE 1. The members of a simple sentence should not, in general, be separated by a comma; as, "Every part of matter swarms with living creatures."

Exercises in Punctuation.—Idleness is the great fomenter of all corruptions in the human heart. The friend of order has made half his way to virtue. All finery is a sign of littleness.

RULE 2. When a simple sentence is long, and the nominative is accompanied with an inseperable adjunct of importance, it may admit a comma immediately before the verb; as, "The good taste *of the present age*, has not allowed us to neglect the cultivation of the English language;" "Too many *of the pretended friendships of youth*, are mere combinations of pleasure."

Exercises.—The indulgence of a harsh disposition is the introduction to future misery. To be totally indifferent to praise or censure is a real defect in character. The intermixture of evil in human society serves to exercise the suffering graces and virtues of the good.

RULE 3. When the connexion of the different parts of a simple sentence is interrupted by an adjunct of importance, the adjunct must be distinguished by a comma before and after it; as, "His work is, *in many respects*, very imperfect. It is, *therefore*, not much approved." But when these interruptions are slight and unimportant,

it is better to omit the comma ; as, "Flattery is *certainly* pernicious;" "There is *surely* a pleasure in benificence."

Exercises.—Charity like the sun brightens all its objects. Gentleness is in truth the great avenue to mutual enjoyment. You too have your failings. Humility and knowledge with poor apparel excel pride and ignorance under costly attire. The best men often experience disappointments. Advice should be seasonably administered. No assumed behavior can always hide the real character.

RULE 4. The nominative case independent, and nouns in apposition when accompanied with adjuncts, must be distinguished by commas; as, "My *son*, give me thine heart;" "Dear *Sir*, I write to express my gratitude for your many kindnesses;" "I am obliged to you, my *friends*, for your many favours;" "*Paul*, the *apostle* of the Gentiles, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge; "The *butterfly*, *child* of the summer, flutters in the sun." But if *two* nouns in apposition are unattended with adjuncts, or if they form only a proper name, they should not be separated; as, "*Paul* the *apostle*, suffered martyrdom;" "The *statesman Jefferson*, wrote the declaration of Independence."

Exercises.—Lord thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations. Continue my dear child to make virtue thy chief study. Canst thou expect thou betrayer of innocence to escape the hand of vengeance? Death the king of terrors chose a prime minister. Hope the balm of life sooths us under every misfortune. Confucius the great Chinese philosopher was eminently good as well as wise. The patriarch Joseph is an illustrious example of true piety.

RULE 5. The nominative case absolute and the infinitive mood absolute with their adjuncts, a participle with words depending on it, and, generally, any imperfect phrase which may be resolved into a simple sentence, must be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, "*His father dying*, he succeeded to the estate;" "*To confess the truth*, I was in fault;" "The king, *approving the plan*, put it in execution;" "He, *having finished his academical course*, has returned home, *to prosecute his professional studies.*"

Exercises.—Peace of mind being secured we may smile at misfortune. To enjoy present pleasures he sacrificed his future ease and reputation. His talents formed for great enterprises could not fail of rendering him conspicuous. The path of piety and virtue pursued with a firm and constant spirit will assuredly lead to happiness. All mankind compose one family assembled under the eye of one common Father.

RULE 6. A compound sentence must be resolved into simple ones by placing commas between its members; as, "The decay, the waste, and the dissolution of a plant, may affect our spirits, and suggest a train of serious reflections."

Three or more nouns, verbs, adjectives, participles, or adverbs, connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, must be sepa-

rated by commas; as, "The husband, wife,* and children,† suffer extremely;" "In a letter, we may advise, exhort, comfort, request, and discuss;" "David was a brave, wise, and pious man;" "A man, fearing, serving, and loving his Creator, lives for a noble purpose;" "Success generally depends on acting prudently, steadily, and vigorously, in what we undertake."

Two or more nouns, verbs, adjectives, participles, or adverbs, occuring in the same construction, with their conjunctions understood, must be separated by commas; as, "Reason, virtue, answer one great aim;" "Virtue supports in adversity, moderates in prosperity;" "Plain, honest truth needs no artificial covering;" "We are fearfully, wonderfully framed."

Exercises.—We have no reason to complain of the lot of man nor of the mutability of the world. Sensuality coontaminates the body depresses the understanding deadens the moral feelings of the heart and degrades man from his rank in creation.

Self-conceit presumption and obstinacy blast the prospects of many a youth. He is alternately supported by his father his uncle and his elder brother. The man of virtue and honour will be trusted relied upon and esteemed. Concious guilt renders one mean-spirited timorous and base. An upright mind will never be at a loss to discern what is just and true lovely honest and of good report. Habits of reading writing and thinking are the indispensable qualifications of a good student. The great business of life is to be employed in doing justly loving mercy and walking humbly with our Creator. To live soberly righteously and piously comprehends the whole of our duty.

In our health life possessions connexions pleasures there are causes of decay imperceptibly working. Deliberate slowly execute promptly.

---

* The correctness and importance of this rule appear to be so obvious, as to render it not a little surprising, that any *writer*, possessing the least degree of rhetorical taste, should reject it. I am bold to affirm, that it is observed by every correct reader and speaker; and yet, as strange as it may seem, it is generally violated by those printers who punctuate by the ear, and all others who are influenced by their pernicious example; thus, "The head, the heart and the hands, should be constantly and actively employed in doing good." Why do they not omit the comma where the conjunction is understood? It would be doing no greater violence to the principles of elocution; thus, "The head the heart and the hands, should be," &c., or thus, "The head the heart, and the hands, should be employed," &c. Who does not perceive that the latter pause, where the conjunction is expressed, is as necessary to the former, where the conjunction is understood? And, since this is the case, what fair objection can be made to the following method of punctuation? "The head, the heart, and the hands, should be constantly and actively employed in doing good;" "She is a woman, gentle, sensible, well-educated, and religious.

† As a considerable pause in pronunciation is necessary between the last noun and the verb, a comma should be inserted to denote it; but as no pause is allowable between the last adjective and the noun, or between the last adverb and the verb, the comma, in such instances, is properly omitted; thus, David was a brave, wise, and *pious* man."

An idle trifling society is near akin to such as is corrupting. This unhappy person had been seriously affectionately admonished but in vain.

RULE 7. Comparative sentences whose members are short, and sentences connected with relative pronouns the meaning of whose antecedents is restricted or limited to a particular sense, should not be separated by a comma; as, "Wisdom is better than riches;" "No preacher is so successful as time;" "He accepted *what* I had rejected;" "Self-denial is the sacrifice *which virtue* must make;" "Subtract from many modern poets *all that* may be found in Shakspeare, and trash will remain;" "Give it to the *man whom* you most esteem." In this last example, the assertion is not of "man in general," but of "the man whom you most esteem."

But when the antecedent is used in a general sense, a comma is properly inserted before the relative; as, "*Man, who* is born of a woman, is of few days and full of trouble;" "There is no *charm* in the female sex, *which* can supply the place of virtue."

This rule is equally applicable to constructions in which the relative is understood; as, "Value duly the privileges you enjoy;" that is, "privileges *which* you enjoy."

Exercises.—How much better is it to get wisdom than gold? The friendship of the world can exist no longer than interest cements them. Eat what is set before you. They who excite envy will easily incur censure. A man who is of a detracting spirit will misconstrue the most innocent words that can be put together. Many of the evils which occasion our complaints of the world are wholly imaginary.

The gentle mind is like the smooth stream which reflects every object in its just proportion and in its fairest colours. In that unaffected civility which springs from a gentle mind there is an incomparable charm. The Lord whom I serve is eternal. This is the man we saw yesterday.

RULE 8. When two words of the same sort, are connected by a conjunction expressed, they must not be separated; as, "Libertines call religion, bigotry *or* superstition;" "True worth is modest *and* retired;" "The study of natural history, expands *and* elevates the mind;" "Some men sin deliberately *and* presumptuously." When words are connected in pairs, the pairs only should be separated; as "There is a natural difference between merit *and* demerit, virtue *and* vice, wisdom *and* folly; "Whether we eat *or* drink, labour *or* sleep, we should be temperate."

But if the parts connected by a conjunction are not short, they may be separated by a comma; as, "Romances may be said to be miserable rhapsodies, *or* dangerous incentives to evil."

Exercises.—Idleness brings forward and nourishes many bad passions. True friendship will at all times avoid a rough or careless behaviour. Health and peace a moderate fortune and a few friends sum up all the undoubted articles of temporal felicity. Truth is fair

and artless simple and sincere uniform and consistent. Intemperance destroys the strength of our bodies and the vigour of our minds.

RULE 9. Where the verb of a simple member is understood, a comma may, in some instances, be inserted; as, "From law arises security; from security, curiosity; from curiosity, knowledge." But in others, it is better to omit the comma; "No station is so high, no power so great, no character so unblemished, as to exempt men from the attacks of rashness, malice, and envy."

Exercises.—As a companion he was severe and satirical; as a friend captious and dangerous. If the spring put forth no blossoms in summer there will be no beauty and in autumn no fruit. So if youth be trifled away without improvement manhood will be contemptible and old age miserable.

RULE 10. When a simple member stands as the object of a preceding verb, and its verb may be changed into the infinite mood, the comma is generally omitted; as, "I suppose *he is at rest;*" changed, "I suppose *him to be at rest.*"

But when the verb *to be* is followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, which, by transposition, may be made the nominative case to it, the verb *to be* is generally separated from the infinitive by a comma; as, "The most obvious remedy is, *to withdraw from all associations with bad men;*" "The first and most obvious remedy against the infection is, to withdraw from associations with bad men."

Exercises.—They believed he was dead. He did not know that I was the man. I knew she was still alive. The greatest misery is to be condemned by our own hearts. The greatest misery that we can endure is to be condemned by our own hearts.

NOTES.

1. When a conjunction is separated by a phrase or member from the member to which it belongs, such intervening phrase appears to require a comma at each extremity; as, "They set out early, *and*, before the close of the day, arrived at the destined place." This rule, however, is not generally followed by our best writers; as, "If thou seek the Lord, he will be found of thee; *but* if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever;" "*But* if the parts connected are not short, a comma may be inserted."

2. Several verbs succeeding each other in the infinitive mood, and having a common dependance, may be divided by commas; as, "To relieve the indigent, to comfort the afflicted, to protect the innocent, to reward the deserving, are humane and noble employments."

3. A remarkable expression, or a short observation, somewhat in the form of a quotation, may be properly marked with a comma; as, "It hurts a man's pride to say, *I do not know;*" "Plutarch calls lying, *the vice of slaves.*"

4. When words are placed in opposition to each other, or with some marked variety, they must be distinguished by a comma; as,

"Tho' *deep*, yet *clear*; tho' *gentle*, yet not *dull*;
"*Strong*, without *rage*; without *o'erflowing*, full."

"Good men, in this frail, imperfect state, are often found, not only in union *with*, but in opposition *to*, the views and conduct of each other."

Sometimes when the word with which the last preposition agrees, is single the comma may be omitted; as, "Many states were in alliance *with* and under the protection *of* Rome."

The same rule and restrictions apply, when two or more nouns refer to the same preposition; as, "He was composed both under the *threatening*, and at the *approach*, *of* a cruel and lingering death;" "He was not only the *king*, but the *father*, *of* his people."

5. The words, "as, thus, nay, so, hence, again, first, secondly, formerly, now, lastly, once more, above all, on the contrary, in the next place, in short," and all other words and phrases of a similar kind, must generally be separated from the context by a comma; as, "Remember thy best friend; *formerly*, the supporter of thy infancy; *now*, the guardian of thy youth;" "He feared want; *hence*, he overvalued riches;" "*So*, if youth be trifled away," &c. "*Again*, we must have food and clothing;" "*Finally*, let us conclude."

The foregoing rules and examples are sufficient, it is presumed, to suggest to the learner, in all ordinary instances, the proper place for inserting the comma; but in applying these rules, great regard must be paid to the length and meaning of the clauses, and the proportion which they bear to one another.

SEMICOLON.

The Semicolon is using for dividing a compound sentence into two or more parts, not so closely connected as those which are separated by a comma, nor yet so little dependent on each other, as those which are distinguished by a colon.

Rule 1. When the the preceding member of *a* sentence does of itself give complete sense, but depends on the following clause, and sometimes when the sense of that member would be complete without the concluding one, the semicolon is used; as in the following examples: "As the desire of approbation, when it works according to reason, improves the amiable portion of our species; so, nothing is more destructive to them, when it is governed by vanity and folly;" "The wise man is happy, when he gains his own approbation; the fool, when he gains the applause of those around him;" "Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

Exercises.—The path of truth is a plain and safe path that of falsehood a perplexing maze. Heaven is the region of gentleness and friendship hell of fierceness and animosity. As there is a worldy happiness which God perceives to be no other than disguised misery

as there are worldly honours which in his estimation are reproach so there is a worldly wisdom which in his sight is foolishness.

But all subsists by elemental strife
And passions are the elements of life.

RULE 2. When an example is introduced to illustrate a rule or proposition, the semicolon may be used before the conjunction *as*; as in the following instance: Prepositions govern the objective case; as, "She gave the book *to* him."

NOTE.—In instances like the foregoing, many respectable punctuists employ the colon, instead of the semicolon.

—

COLON.

The Colon is used to divide a sentence into two or more parts, less connected than those which are separated by a semicolon; but not so independent as separate, distinct sentences.

RULE 1. When a member of a sentence is complete in itself, but followed by some supplemental remark, or further illustration of the subject, the colon may be properly employed; as, "Nature felt her inability to extricate herself from the consequences of guilt: the gospel revealed the plan of divine interposition and aid." "Great works are performed, not by strength, but by perseverance: yonder palace was raised by single stones; yet you see its height and spaciousness.

Exercises.—The three great enemies to tranquillity are vice superstition and idleness vice which poisons and disturbs the mind with bad passions superstition which fills it with imaginary terrors idleness which loads it with tediousness and disgust.

When we look forward into the year which is beginning what do we behold there? All my brethern is a blank to our view a dark unknown presents itself.

RULE 2. When a semicolon has preceded, or more than one and a still greater pause is necessary, in order to mark the connecting or concluding sentiment, the colon should be applied; as, "A divine legislator, uttering his voice from heaven; an almighty governor, stretching forth his arm to punish or reward; informing us of perpetual rest prepared for the righteous hereafter, and of indignation and wrath awaiting the wicked: these are the considerations which overawe the world, which support integrity, and check guilt."

—

PERIOD.

When a sentence is complete, and so independent as not to be connected with the one which follows it, a period should be inserted at its close; as, "Fear God." "Honour the king." "Respect virtue."

In the use of many of the pauses, there is a diversity of practices among our best writers and grammarians. Compound sentences

connected by conjunctions, are sometimes divided by the period; as, "Recreations, though they may be of an innocent kind, require steady government to keep them within a due and limited province. *But* such as are of an irregular and vicious nature, are not to be governed, but to be banished from every well-regulated mind."

The period should follow every abbreviated word; as, "A. D., N. B., U. S., Va., Md., Viz., Col., Mr."

—

DASH.

The Dash, though often used improperly by hasty and incoherent writers, may be introduced with propriety, where the sentence breaks off abruptly; where a significant pause is required; or where there is an unexpected turn in the sentiment; as, "If thou art he, so much respected once—but, oh! how fallen! how degraded!" "If acting conformably to the will of our Creator;—if promoting the welfare of mankind around us;—if securing our own happiness;—are objects of the highest moment: then we are loudly called upon to cultivate and extend the great interests of religion and virtue."

A dash following a stop, denotes that the pause is to be greater than if the stop were alone; and when used by itself, requires a pause of such length as the sense only can determine.

"Here lies the great—False marble, where?
"Nothing but sordid dust lies here."

—

INTERROGATORY POINT.

The note of interrogation is used at the end of an interrogative sentence; as, "Who adorned the heavens with such exquisite beauty?"

NOTE.—The interrogative point should not be employed in cases where it is only said, that a question has been asked; as, "The Cyprians asked me why I wept."

—

EXCLAMATORY POINT.

The note of exclamation is applied to expressions of sudden emotion, surprise, joy, grief, &c., and sometimes to invocations and addresses; as, "How much vanity in the pursuits of men!" "What is more amiable than virtue!" "My friend! this conduct amazes me!" "Hear me, O Lord! for thy loving kindness is great!"

—

PARENTHESIS.

A parenthesis is a clause containing some useful remark, which may be omitted without injuring the grammatical construction; as, "To gain a posthumous reputation, is to save a few letters (for what is a name besides?) from oblivion."

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,)
"Virtue alone is happiness below."

NOTE.—The parenthesis generally denotes a moderate depression of the voice; and, as the parenthetical marks do not supply the place of a point, the clause should be accompanied with every stop which the sense would require, if the parenthetical characters were not used. It ought to terminate with the same kind of point which the member has that precedes it; as, "He loves nobly, (I speak of friendship,) who is not jealous when he has partners of love.

"Or why so long (in life if long can be)
"Lent Heav'n a parent to the poor and me?"

Parenthesis, however, containing interrogations or exclamations, form an exception to this rule; as, "If I grant his request, (and who could refuse it?) I shall secure his esteem and attachment."

—

APOSTROPHE AND QUOTATION.

The apostrophe is used to abbreviate a word, and also to mark the possessive case of a noun; as, "*'tis*, for *it is; tho'*, for *though; o'er*, for *over*;" "A *man's poverty*."

A Quotation marks a sentence taken in the author's own language; as, "The proper study of mankind is man."

When an author represents a person as speaking, the language of that person should be designated by a quotation; as, At my coming in, he said, "you and the physician are come too late." A quotation contained within another, should be distinguished by two *single* commas; as, "Always remember this ancient maxim: 'Know thyself.'"

—

DIRECTIONS FOR USING CAPITAL LETTERS.

It is proper to begin with a capital.

1. The first word of every sentence.

2. Proper names, the appellation of the Deity, &c.; as, "James, Cincinnati, the Andes, Huron;" "God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being, Providence, the Holy Spirit."

3. Adjectives derived from proper names, the titles of books, nouns which are used as the subject of discourse, the pronoun *I* and the interjection O, and every line in poetry; as, "American, Grecian, English, French; Irving's Sketch Book, Percival's Poems; I write Hear, O earth!"

APPENDIX.

VERSIFICATION.

POETRY is the language of passion, or of enlivened imagination.

VERSIFICATION, in English, is the harmonious arrangement of a particular number and variety of accented and unaccented syllables, according to particular laws.

RHYME is the correspondence of the sound of the last syllable in one line, to the sound of the last syllable in another; as,

"O'er the glad waters of the dark-blue *sea*,
"Our thoughts as boundless and our souls as *free*."

BLANK VERSE consists in poetical thoughts expressed in regular numbers, but without the correspondence of sound at the end of the lines which constitute rhyme.

POETICAL FEET consist in a particular arrangement and connexion of a number of accented and unaccented syllables. They are called *feet* because, it is by their aid that the voice, as it were, *steps* along through the verse in a measured pace.

All poetical feet consist either of two, or of three syllables; and are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syliables, and four of three, as follows:—

Dissyllable.	*Trisyllable.*
A Trochee – ∪	A Dactyle – ∪ ∪
An Iambus ∪ –	An Amphibrach ∪ – ∪
A Spondee – –	An Anapaest ∪ ∪ –
A Pyrrhick ∪ ∪	A Tribrach ∪ ∪ ∪

A Trochee has the first syllable accented, and the last unaccented; as Hāteful, pēttish:

Rēstlĕss mōrtāls tōil fŏr nōught.

An Iambus has the first syllable unaccented, and the last accented; as, Bĕtrāy, consist:

Thĕ sēas shāll wāste, thĕ skīes ĭn smōke dĕcāy.

A Dactyle has the first syllable accented, and the two latter unaccented; as, Lābŏurĕr, pŏssible:—

Frŏm thĕ lŏw plĕasūres ŏf thĭs fāllĕn nātŭre.

An Anapaest has the first two syllables unaccented, and the last accented; as, Cŏntrăvēne, acquiésce:

At thĕ clōse ŏf thĕ dāy, whĕn thĕ hāmlĕt ĭs stĭll.

A Spondee, as, The pāle mōon. A Pyrrhick, as, ŏn thĕ tall tree. An Amphibrach, as Dēlĭghtfŭl. A Tribrach, as, Numĕrāblĕ.

RHETORIC.

—

GRAMMAR instructs us how to express our thoughts correctly.

RHETORIC teaches us to express them with force and elegance.

The former is generally confined to the correct application of words in constructing single sentences. The latter treats of the proper choice of words, of the happiest method of constructing sentences, of their most advantageous arrangement in forming a discourse, and of the various kinds and qualities of composition. The principles of rhetoric are principally based on those unfolded and illustrated in the science of grammar. Hence, an acquaintance with the latter, and, indeed, with the liberal arts, is a pre-requisite to the study of rhetoric and belles-lettres.

COMPOSITION.

It may be laid down as a maxim of eternal truth, that *good sense* is the foundation of all good writing. One who understands a subject well will scarcely write ill upon it.

Rhetoric, or the art of persuasion, requires in a writer the union of good sense and a lively and chaste imagination. It is, then, her province to teach him to embellish his thoughts with elegant and appropriate language, vivid imagery, and an agreeable variety of expression. It ought to be his aim

"To mark the point where sense and dullness meet."

—

STYLE—PERSPICUITY AND PRECISION.

STYLE is the peculiar manner in which we express our conceptions by means of language. It is a picture of the ideas which arise in our minds, and of the order in which they are produced.

The qualities of a good style may be ranked under two heads, *perspicuity* and *ornament*.

PERSPICUITY, which is considered the fundamental quality of a good style, claims attention, first, to single words and phrases; and, secondly, to the construction of sentences. When considered with respect to words and phrases, it requires these three qualities, *purity*, *propriety*, and *precision*.

Purity of language consists in the use of such words and such constructions as belong to the language which we speak, in opposition to words and phrases belonging to other languages, or which are obsolete or new-coined, or employed without proper authority.

Propriety is the choice of those words which the best usage has appropriated to the ideas which we intend to express by them. It implies their correct and judicious application, in opposition to low expressions, and to words and phrases which would be less significant of the ideas which we wish to convey. It is the union of purity and propriety which renders style graceful and prespicuous.

Precision, from *præcidere*, to cut off, signifies retrenching all superfluities, and pruning the expression in such a manner as to exhibit neither more nor less than an exact copy of the ideas intended to be conveyed.

—

STRUCTURE OF SENTENCES.

A proper construction of sentences is of so great importance in every species of composition, that we cannot be too strict or minute in our attention to it.

Elegance of style requires us generally to *avoid* many short or long sentences in succession; a monotonous correspondence of one member to another; and the commencing of a piece, section, or paragraph with a long sentence.

The qualities most essential to a perfect sentence are *Unity*, *Clearness*, *Strength*, and *Harmony*.

UNITY is an indispensable property of a correct sentence. A sentence implies an arrangement of words in which only *one* proposition is expressed. It may, indeed, consist of parts; but these parts ought to be so closely bound together, as to make on the mind the impression, not of many objects, but of only one. In order to preserve this unity, the following rules may be useful.

1. ***In the course of the sentence, the scene should be changed as little as possible.*** In every sentence there is

some leading or governing word, which, if possible, ought to be continued so from the beginning to the end of it. The following sentence is not constructed according to this rule:—"After we came to anchor, they put me on shore, where I was saluted by all my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness." In this sentence, though the objects are sufficiently connected, yet, by shifting so frequently the place and the person, the *vessel*, the *shore*, *we*, *they*, *I*, and *who*, they appear in so disunited a view, that the mind is led to wander for the sense. The sentence is restored to its proper unity by constructing it thus: "Having come to anchor, I was put on shore, where I was saluted by all my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness."

2. *Never crowd into one sentence things which have so little connexion that they would bear to be divided into two or more sentences.* The violation of this rule produces so unfavourable an effect, that it is safer to err rather by too many short sentences, than by one that is overloaded and confused.

3. *Avoid all unnecessary parentheses.*

CLEARNESS. *Ambiguity*, which is opposed to clearness, may arise from a bad choice, or a bad arrangement of words.

A leading rule in the arrangement of sentences is, that *those words or members most nearly related should be placed in the sentence as near to each other as possible, so as thereby to make their mutual relation clearly appear.* This rule ought to be observed.

1. *In the position of adverbs.* "By greatness," says Mr. Addison, "I do not only mean the bulk of any single object, but the largeness of a whole view." The improper situation of the adverb *only*, in this sentence, renders it a limitation of the verb *mean*, whereas the author intended to have it qualify the phrase *a single object;* thus, "By greatness, I do not mean the bulk of any single object *only*, but the largeness of a whole view."

2. *In the position of phrases and members.* "Are these designs which any man who is born a Briton, in any circumstances, in any situation, ought to be ashamed or afraid to avow?" Corrected: "Are these designs which any man who is born a Briton ought to be ashamed or afraid, *in any circumstances, in any situation* to avow?"

3. *In the position of pronouns.* The reference of a pro-

noun to its noun should always be *so clear that we cannot possibly mistake it:* otherwise, the noun ought to be repeated. "It is folly to pretend to arm ourselves against the accidents of life, by heaping up treasures, which nothing can protect us against but the good providence of our Heavenly Father." *Which*, in this sentence, grammatically refers to *treasures;* and this would convert the whole period into nonsense. The sentence should have been thus constructed, "It is folly to pretend, by heaping up treasures, to arm ourselves against the *accidents* of life, against *which* nothing can protect us but the good providence of our Heavenly Father.

STRENGTH. By the *strength* of a sentence is meant such an arrangement of its several words and members as exhibits the sense to the best advantage, and gives every word and member its due weight and force.

1. The first rule for promoting the strength of a sentence is, to *take from it all redundant words and members.* Whatever can be easily supplied in the mind should generally be omitted; thus, "Content with deserving a triumph, he refused the honour of it," is better than to say, "*Being* content with deserving a triumph," &c. "They returned back again to the same city from whence they came forth." If we expunge from this short sentence *five* words, which are mere expletives, it will be much more neat and forcible; thus, "They returned to the city whence they came." But we should be cautious of pruning so closely as to give a hardness and dryness to the style. Some leaves must be left to shelter and adorn the fruit.

2. *Particular attention to the use of copulatives, relatives and all the participles employed for transition and connexion, is required.* In compositions of an elevated character, the *relative* should generally be inserted. An injudicious repetition of *and* enfeebles style; but when enumerating objects which we wish to have appear as distinct from each other as possible, it may be repeated with peculiar advantage. "Such a man may fall a victim to power; but truth, *and* reason, *and* liberty, would fall with him."

3. *Dispose of the capital word or words in that part of the sentence in which they will make the most striking impression.*

4. *Cause the members of a sentence to go on rising in their importance one above another.* In a sentence of two members, the longer should generally be the concluding one.

5. *Avoid concluding a sentence with an adverb, a preposition, or any inconsiderable word, unless it be emphatical.*

6. *Where two things are compared or contrasted with each other, a resemblance in the language and construction should be observed.*

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

Figures of Speech may be described as that language which is prompted either by the imagination, or by the passions. They generally imply some departure from simplicity of expression; and exhibit ideas in a manner more vivid and impressive, than could be done by plain language. Figures have been commonly divided into two great classes; Figures of *Words*, and Figures of *Thought*.

Figures of Words are called *Tropes*, and consist in a word's being employed to signify something that is different from the original meaning; so that by altering the word, we destroy the figure.

When we say of a person, that he has a fine *taste* in wines, the word taste is used in its common, literal sense; but when we say, he has a fine *taste* for painting, poetry, or music, we use the word figuratively. "A good man enjoys comfort in the midst of adversity," is simple language; but when it is said, "To the upright there ariseth *light* in *darkness*," the same sentence is expressed in a figurative style, *light* is put in the place of *comfort*, and *darkness* is used to suggest the idea of *adversity*.

The following are the most important figures:

1. A METAPHOR is founded on the resemblance which one object bears to another; or, it is a comparison in an abridged form.

When I say of some great minister, "That he upholds the state like a *pillar* which supports the weight of the whole edifice," I fairly make a comparison; but when I say of such a minister, "That he is the *pillar* of state," the word pillar becomes a metaphor. In the latter construction, the comparison between the minister and the pillar, is made in the mind; but it is expressed without any of the words that denote comparison.

Metaphors abound in all writings. In the scriptures they

may be found in vast variety. Thus, our blessed Lord is called a vine, a lamb, a lion, &c.; and men, according to their different dispositions, are styled wolves, sheep, dogs, serpents, vipers, &c.

Washington Irving, in speaking of the degraded state of the American Aborigines who linger on the borders of the "white settlements," employs the following beautiful metaphor: "The proud *pillar* of their independence has been shaken down, and the whole moral *fabric* lies in ruins.

2. AN ALLEGORY may be regarded as a metaphor continued; or, it is several metaphors so connected together in sense, as frequently to form a kind of parable or fable. It differs from a single metaphor, in the same manner that a cluster on the vine differs from a single grape.

The following is a fine example of an allegory, taken from the 60th Psalm; wherein the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine: "Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it; and didst cause it to take deep root, and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it; and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars. She sent out her boughs into the sea, and her branches into the river."

3. A SIMILE or COMPARISON is when the resemblance between two objects, whether real or imaginary, is expressed in form.

Thus, we use a simile, when we say, "The actions of princes are like those great rivers, the course of which every one beholds, but their springs have been seen by few." "As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the Lord is round about his people." "The music of Caryl was like the memory of joys that are past, pleasant and mournful to the soul." "Our Indians are like those wild plants which thrive best in the shade, but which wither when exposed to the influence of the sun."

> "The Assyrian came down, like the wolf on the fold,
> And his cohorts were gleaming with purple and gold;
> And the sheen of their spears were like stars on the sea,
> When the blue wave rolls nightly on deep Galilee."

4. A METONYMY is where the cause is put for the effect, or the effect for the cause; the container for the thing contained; or the sign for the thing signified.

When we say, "They read *Milton*," the cause is put for the effect, meaning "Milton's *works*." "Gray hairs should be respected;" here the effect is put for the cause; meaning by "gray hairs," *old age*, which produces gray hairs. In the phrase, "The kettle boils," the container is substituted for the thing contained. "He addressed the *chair*;" that is, the person in the chair.

5. A SYNECDOCHE or COMPREHENSION. When the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole; a genus for a species, or a species for a genus; in general, when any thing less, or anything more, is put for the precise object meant, the figure is called a synecdoche.

Thus, "A fleet of twenty *sail*, instead of, *ships*." "The *horse* is a noble animal;" The *dog* is a faithful creature:" here an individual is put for the species. We sometimes use the "head" for the *person*, and the "waves" for the *sea*. In like manner, an attribute may be put for a subject; as, "Youth" for the *young*, the "deep" for the *sea*.

6. PERSONIFICATION or PROSOPOPŒIA is that figure by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects. When we say, "the ground *thirsts* for rain," or, "the earth *smiles* with plenty;" when we speak of "ambition's being *restless*," or, "a disease's being *deceitful*; such expressions show the facility, with which the mind can accommodate the properties of living creatures to things that are inanimate.

The following are fine examples of this figure:

"Cheer'd with the grateful smell, old *Ocean smiles*;"

"The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice and blossom as the rose."

7. AN APOSTROPHE is an address to some person, either absent or dead, as if he were present and listening to us. The address is frequently made to a personified object; as, "Death is swallowed up in victory. O *death!* where is thy sting? O *grave!* where is thy victory?"

"Weep on the rocks of roaring winds, O *maid* of Inistore: bend thy fair head over the waves, thou fairer than the ghost of the hills, when it moves in a sunbeam at noon over the silence of Morven."

8. ANTITHESIS. Comparison is founded on the resemblance, antithesis, on the contrast or opposition, of two objects.

Example. "If you wish to enrich a person, study not to *increase* his *stores*, but to *diminish* his *desires*."

9. HYPERBOLE or EXAGGERATION consists in magnifying an object beyond its natural bounds. "As swift as the wind; as white as the snow; as slow as a snail; and the like, are extravagant hyperboles.

"I saw their chief, tall as a rock of ice; his spear, the blasted fir; his shield, the rising moon; he sat on the shore, like a cloud of mist on the hills."

10. VISION is produced, when, in relating something that is past, we use the present tense, and describe it as actually passing before our eyes.

11. INTERROGATION. The literal use of an interrogation, is to ask a question; but when men are strongly moved; whatever they would affirm or deny with great earnestness, they naturally put in the form of a question.

Thus Balaam expressed himself to Balak: "The Lord is not man, that he should lie, nor the son of man, that he should repent. Hath he said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?" "Hast thou an arm like God? or canst thou thunder with a voice like him?"

12. EXCLAMATIONS are the effect of strong emotions, such as surprise, admiration, joy, grief, and the like.

"O that I had in the wilderness a lodging place of wayfaring men!" "O that I had wings like a dove! for then would I fly away, and be at rest!"

13. IRONY is expressing ourselves in a manner contrary to our thoughts; not with a view to deceive, but to add force to our remarks. We can reprove one for his negligence, by saying, "You have taken great care, indeed."

The prophet Elijah adopted this figure, when he challenged the priests of Baal to prove the truth of their deity. "He mocked them, and said, Cry aloud, for he is a god: either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is on a journey, or, peradventure, he sleepeth, and must be waked."

14. AMPLIFICATION or CLIMAX consists in heightening all the circumstances of an object or action, which we desire to place in a strong light.

Cicero gives a lively instance of this figure, when he says, "It is a crime to put a Roman citizen in bonds; it is the height of guilt to scourge him; little less than parricide to put him to death: what name, then, shall I give to the act of crucifying him?"

KEY.

—

Corrections of the False Syntax arranged under the Rules and Notes.

RULE 4. Frequent commission of sin *hardens* men in it. Great pains *have* been taken, &c.—*is* seldom found. The sincere *are*, &c.—*is* happy. What *avail*, &c.—Disappointments *sink*—the renewal of hope gives, &c.—*is* without limit—*has* been conferred upon us—Thou *canst* not heal—but thou *mayst* do, &c.—*consists* the happiness, &c.—Who *touchedst*, or *didst touch* Isaiah's hallowed lips with fire.

Note 1. And *wilt thou* never be to Heaven resigned?—And *who* had great abilities, &c.

Note 2. *Are* peace and honour.—*was* controversy.

RULE 7. *Them* that you visited.—*him* that was mentioned.—*he* who preached repentence, &c.—*they* who died.—*he* who succeeded.

RULE 8. Time and tide *wait*, &c.—*remove* mountains—*are* both uncertain.—*dwell* with, &c.—*affect* the mind, &c.—What *signify* the counsel and care, &c.—*are* now perished.—Why *are* whiteness and coldness, &c.—bind *them* continually, &c.—render *their* possessor, &c.—There *are* error and discrepance.—which *show*, &c.

RULE 9. *Is* the same in idea.—*is* in the porphyry.—*is* remarkable, &c.—which *moves* merely as *it is* moved.—*affects* us, &c.—Man's happiness or misery *is*, in a great measure, &c.—for *it* may be, &c.—*was* blameworthy.

RULE 10. The nation *is* powerful —*The fleet* was seen, &c.—The church *has*, &c.—*is*, or ought to be, the *object*, &c.—*it* is feeble.

RULE 11. My people *do*, &c.—The multitude eagerly *pursue* pleasure as *their*, &c.—*were* divided in *their* sentiments, and *they have* referred, &c.—The people *rejoice*.—give *hem* sorrow.

RULE 12. *Homer's* works are, &c.—*Asa's* heart. *James Hart's* book.

Note 1. It was the *men, women*, and children's lot, &c.; or, *It was the lot of* the men, women, and children.—*Peter, John*, and Andrew's &c.

Note 2. This is *Campbell* the poet's production; or, *The production of Campbell*, &c.—The silk was purchased at Brown's, the *mercer* and *haberdasher*.

Note 4. The *pupil's* composing, &c.—*rule's* being observed.—of the *president's* neglecting to lay it before the council.

RULE 13. Of *his* audience.—put it on Jacob.—sprinkle *them*.—and *they* shall, &c.—of *his* reputation.

Note. You *were* blamed; you *were* worthy.—where *were* you?—how far *were* you?

RULE 14. Who *hast* been, &c.—*who* is the sixth *that has* lost *his life* by this means.

Who all my sense *confinedst;* or, *didst confine*.

Note. And *who broughtest* him forth out of Ur.

RULE 15. *Who* shall be sent, &c.—This is the man who, &c.

RULE 16. They *to whom* much is given, &c.—*with whom* you associate, &c.—*whom* I greatly respect, &c.—*whom* we ought to love, and *to whom*, &c.—They *whom* conscience, &c.—With *whom* did you walk?—*Whom* did you see?—To *whom* did you give the book?

RULE 17. Who gave John those books? *We*.—*him* who lives in Pearl-street—My brother and *he*.—*She* and *I*.

RULE 18. *Note* 2. Thirty *tuns*.—twenty *feet*.—one hundred *fathoms*.

NOTE 6. He bought a pair of *new* shoes—piece of *elegant* furniture.—pair of *fine* horses—tract of *poor* land.

Note 7. Are still more *difficult to be comprehended*—most *doubtful* or *precarious* way, &c.—*This model comes nearer perfection than any I*, &c.

RULE 19. *Note. That* sort—*these* two hours.—*This* kind, &c.—He saw one *person*, or more *than one*, enter the garden.

Note 2. Better than *himself*.—*is* so small.—*his* station may be, *is* bound by the laws.

Note 3. On *each* side, &c.—took *each* his censer.

RULE 20. *Whom* did they, &c.—They *whom* opulence.—

whom luxury, &c.—*Him* and *them* we know, &c.—*Her* that is negligent, &c.—my brother and *me*, &c.—*Whom* did they send, &c.—*Them whom* he, &c.

RULE 21. It is *I*.—If I were *he*.—it is *he*, indeed.—*Whom* do you, &c.—*Who* do men say, &c.—and *who* say ye, &c.—*whom* do you imagine it to have been?—it was *I;* but you knew that it was *he*.

RULE 25.—Bid him *come*.—durst not *do* it.—Hear him read, &c.—makes us *approve* and *reject*, &c.—better *to* live—than *to* outlive, &c.—*to* wrestle.

RULE 26. *Note*. The taking *of* pains; or, without taking pains, &c.—The changing *of* times,—the removing and setting up *of* kings.

RULE 28. *Note* 3. He *did* me—I had written—he *came* home.—*befallen* my cousin.—he would have *gone*.—already *risen*.—is *begun*.—is spoken.—would have *written*—had they *written*, &c.

RULE 29. *Note* 1. It cannot, *therefore*, be, &c.—he was *not often* pleasing.—should *never* be separated.—We may live *happily*, &c.

RULE 30. *Note*. I don't know *anything;* or, I *know* nothing, &c.—I did not see *anybody;* or, I saw *nobody*, &c.—Nothing ever *affects* her.—*and* take no shape *or* semblance, &c.—There *can* be nothing, &c.—*Neither* precept *nor* discipline is so forcible as example.

RULE 31. For *himself*.—among *themselves*.—*with whom* he is, &c.—*With whom* did, &c.—*From whom* did you receive instruction?

RULE 33. My brother and *he*, &c.—You and *I*, &c.—*He* and I.—John and *he*, &c.—Between you and *me*, &c.

RULE 34. And *entreat me*, &c.—and *acting* differently, &c.
Note 1. But *he* may return—but *he* will write no more.
Note 2. Unless it *rain*.—If he *acquire* riches, &c.

RULE 35. Than *I*.—as well as he, than *they*.—but *he*.—but *he* and *I*.—but *them* who had gone astray.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.—*Him* who is from eternity, &c.—*depends* all the happiness,—which exists, &c.—the enemies *whom*, &c.—Is it *I* or *he whom* you requested?—Though great *have* been,—sincerely *acknowledge*.—There *was*, in the metropolis.—exercising *our* memories.—*was* consumed.—Affluence *may* give—but *it* will not.—of this world often

choke.—*Them* that honour,—and *they* that despise.—I intended to *call* last week.—the fields look *fresh* and *gay*.—very *neatly*, *finely woven* paper.—where I *saw* Gen. Andrew Jackson, *him* who.—Take the *first two*,—*last three*.—thirty *feet* high.—*a* union.—*a* hypothesis.—I have *seen* him *to whom* you wrote, he would have *come* back, or *returned*.—*understands* the nature,—he *rejects*.—If thou *study*.—thou *wilt* become.—is not *properly* attended to.—He *knew*.—therefore, to *have* done it.—*than* the title.—very *independently*.—duty to *do*.—my *friend's* entering.—is the *best* specimen, or it *comes nearer* perfection *than any*, &c.—blow *them*, will go, &c.—*Each of those two authors has his* merit.—*Reason's* whole,—*lie* in.—*strikes* the mind,—than if *the parts had been adjusted*,—with *perfect* symmetry.

Satire *does* not carry in *it*.—*composes* the triangle.—*person's* opportunities were *ever*.—It *has been* reported.—should *never* be.—situation in *which*.—*is* thoroughly versed in *his*.—*are* the soul,—*follows* little.—An army *presents*.—*are* the *duties* of a christian.—happier than *he*.—*always* have *inclined*, and *which always* will incline him to offend.—which *require* great.—*Them* that honour me, will I.—*has* opinions peculiar to *itself*.—that *it may* be said *he attained* monarchical.—*hast* permitted,—*wi'l* deliver.—*was formerly* propagated.—The measure *is*,—unworthy your.—*were* faithless.—After I *had* visited.—nor shall *I* consent.—Yesterday, I intended to *walk* out, but *was*.—*make* or *are* thirteen,—*leave* three.—If he *go*,—make *the eighth time* that he *will have* visited.—*is* nobler.—was possessed, or *that ever* can be.—one great *edifice*,—smaller *ones*.—honesty *is*.—it to *be*.—*will* follow me,—I *shall* dwell.—*is* gone astray.—he could not *have done*.—*feeling* a propensity.

PUNCTUATION.

COMMA.

CORRECTIONS OF THE EXERCISES IN PUNCTUATION.

RULE 1. Idleness is the great fomenter of all corruptions in the human heart. The friend of order has made half his way to virtue. All finery is a sign of littleness.

RULE 2. The indulgence of a harsh disposition, is the introduction to future misery. To be totally indifferent to praise or censure, is a real defect in character. The intermixture of evil in human society, serves to exercise the suffering graces and virtues of the good.

RULE 3. Charity, like the sun, brightens all its objects. Gentleness is, in truth, the great avenue to mutual enjoyment. You, too, have your failings. Humility and knowledge, with poor apparel, excel pride and ignorance, under costly attire. The best men often experience disappointments. Advice should be seasonably administered. No assumed behaviour can always hide the real character.

RULE 4. Lord, thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations. Continue, my dear child, to make virtue thy chief study. Canst thou expect, thou betrayer of innocence, to escape the hand of vengeance? Death, the king of terrors, chose a prime minister. Hope, the balm of life, sooths us under every misfortune. Confucius, the great Chinese philosopher, was eminently good, as well as wise. The patriarch Joseph is an illustrious example of true piety.

RULE 5. Peace of mind being secured, we may smile at misfortune. To enjoy present pleasure, he sacrificed his future ease and reputation. His talents formed for great enterprises, could not fail of rendering him conspicuous. The path of piety and virtue, pursued with a firm and constant spirit, will assuredly lead to happiness. All mankind compose one family, assembled under the eye of one common Father.

RULE 6. We have no reason to complain of the lot of man, nor of the mutability of the world. Sensuality contaminates

the body, depresses the understanding, deadens the moral feelings of the heart, and degrades man from his rank in creation.

Self-conceit, presumption, and obstinacy, blast the prospects of many a youth. He is alternately supported by his father, his uncle, and his elder brother. The man of virtue and honour, will be trusted, relied upon, and esteemed. Conscious guilt renders one mean-spirited, timorous, and base. An upright mind will never be at a loss to discern what is just and true, lovely, honest, and of good report. Habits of reading, writing, and thinking, are the indispensable qualifications of a good student. The great business of life is, to be employed in doing justly, loving mercy, and walking humbly with our God. To live soberly, righteously, and piously, comprehends the whole of our duty.

In our health, life, possessions, connexions, pleasures, there are causes of decay imperceptibly working. Deliberate slowly, execute promptly. An idle, trifling society, is near akin to such as is corrupting. This unhappy person had been seriously, affectionately admonished, but in vain.

RULE 7. How much better it is to get wisdom than gold! The friendships of the world can exist no longer than interest cements them. Eat what is set before you. They who excite envy, will easily incur censure. A man who is of a detracting spirit, will misconstrue the most innocent words that can be put together. Many of the evils which occasion our complaints of the world, are wholly imaginary.

The gentle mind is like the smooth stream, which reflects every object in its just proportion, and in its fairest colours. In that unaffected civility which springs from a gentle mind, there is an incomparable charm. The Lord, whom I serve, is eternal. This is the man we saw yesterday.

RULE 8. Idleness brings forward and nourishes many bad passions. True friendship will, at all times, avoid a rough or careless behaviour. Health and peace, a moderate fortune, and a few friends, sum up all the undoubted articles of temporal felicity. Truth is fair and artless, simple and sincere, uniform and consistent. Intemperance destroys the strength of our bodies, and the vigour of our minds.

RULE 9. As a companion, he was severe and satirical; as a friend, captious and dangerous. If the spring put forth no blossoms, in summer there will be no beauty, and in autumn no fruit. So, if youth be trifled away without improvement, manhood will be contemptible, and old age, miserable.

RULE 10. They believed he was dead. He did not know that I was the man. I knew she was still alive. The greatest misery is, to be condemned by our own hearts. The greatest misery that we can endure, is, to be condemned by our own hearts.

—

SEMICOLON.

RULE 1. The path of truth is a plain and safe path; that of falsehood is a perplexing maze. Heaven is the region of gentleness and friendship; hell, of fierceness and animosity. As there is a worldly happiness, which God perceives to be no other than disguised misery; as there are worldly honours, which, in his estimation, are a reproach; so there is a worldly wisdom, which, in his sight, is foolishness.

But all subsists by elemental strife;
And passions are the elements of life.

—

COLON.

RULE 1. The three great enemies to tranquility, are vice, superstition, and idleness: vice, which poisons and disturbs the mind with bad passions: superstition, which fills it with imaginary terrors; idleness, which loads it with tediousness and disgust.